Engineering Mechanics

STATICS & DYNAMICS

Fourteenth Edition

R. C. Hibbeler

ENGINEERING MECHANICS

STATICS AND DYNAMICS

FOURTEENTH EDITION

ENGINEERING MECHANICS

STATICS AND DYNAMICS

FOURTEENTH EDITION

R. C. HIBBELER

PEARSON

Hoboken Boston Columbus San Francisco New York Indianapolis
London Toronto Sydney Singapore Tokyo Montreal Dubai Madrid
Hong Kong Mexico City Munich Paris Amsterdam Cape Town

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data on File

Vice President and Editorial Director, ECS: Marcia Horton
Senior Editor: Norrin Dias
Editorial Assistant: Michelle Bayman
Program and Project Management Team Lead: Scott Disanno
Program Manager: Sandra L. Rodriguez
Project Manager: Rose Kernan
Cover Designer: Black Horse Designs
Art Editor: Gregory Dulles
Senior Digital Producer: Felipe Gonzalez
Operations Specialist: Maura Zaldivar-Garcia
Product Marketing Manager: Bram Van Kempen
Field Marketing Manager: Demetrius Hall
Marketing Assistant: Jon Bryant

Cover Image: Fotog/Getty Images

Published by Pearson Prentice Hall
Pearson Education, Inc.
Hoboken, New Jersey 07030

Pearson Education Ltd., *London*
Pearson Education Australia Pty. Ltd., *Sydney*
Pearson Education Singapore, Pte. Ltd.
Pearson Education North Asia Ltd., *Hong Kong*
Pearson Education Canada, Inc., *Toronto*
Pearson Educación de Mexico, S.A. de C.V.
Pearson Education—Japan, *Tokyo*
Pearson Education Malaysia, Pte. Ltd.
Pearson Education, Inc., *Hoboken, New Jersey*

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

PEARSON

ISBN-10: 0-13-391542-5
ISBN-13: 978-0-13-391542-6

To the Student

With the hope that this work will stimulate
an interest in Engineering Mechanics
and provide an acceptable guide to its understanding.

PREFACE

The main purpose of this book is to provide the student with a clear and thorough presentation of the theory and application of engineering mechanics. To achieve this objective, this work has been shaped by the comments and suggestions of hundreds of reviewers in the teaching profession, as well as many of the author's students.

New to this Edition

Preliminary Problems. This new feature can be found throughout the text, and is given just before the Fundamental Problems. The intent here is to test the student's conceptual understanding of the theory. Normally the solutions require little or no calculation, and as such, these problems provide a basic understanding of the concepts before they are applied numerically. All the solutions are given in the back of the text.

Expanded Important Points Sections. Summaries have been added which reinforce the reading material and highlights the important definitions and concepts of the sections.

Re-writing of Text Material. Further clarification of concepts has been included in this edition, and important definitions are now in boldface throughout the text to highlight their importance.

End-of-Chapter Review Problems. All the review problems now have solutions given in the back, so that students can check their work when studying for exams, and reviewing their skills when the chapter is finished.

New Photos. The relevance of knowing the subject matter is reflected by the real-world applications depicted in the over 60 new or updated photos placed throughout the book. These photos generally are used to explain how the relevant principles apply to real-world situations and how materials behave under load.

New Problems. There are approximately 30% new problems that have been added to this edition, which involve applications to many different fields of engineering.

Hallmark Features

Besides the new features mentioned above, other outstanding features that define the contents of the text include the following.

Organization and Approach. Each chapter is organized into well-defined sections that contain an explanation of specific topics, illustrative example problems, and a set of homework problems. The topics within each section are placed into subgroups defined by boldface titles. The purpose of this is to present a structured method for introducing each new definition or concept and to make the book convenient for later reference and review.

Chapter Contents. Each chapter begins with an illustration demonstrating a broad-range application of the material within the chapter. A bulleted list of the chapter contents is provided to give a general overview of the material that will be covered.

Emphasis on Free-Body Diagrams. Drawing a free-body diagram is particularly important when solving problems, and for this reason this step is strongly emphasized throughout the book. In particular, special sections and examples are devoted to show how to draw free-body diagrams. Specific homework problems have also been added to develop this practice.

Procedures for Analysis. A general procedure for analyzing any mechanical problem is presented at the end of the first chapter. Then this procedure is customized to relate to specific types of problems that are covered throughout the book. This unique feature provides the student with a logical and orderly method to follow when applying the theory. The example problems are solved using this outlined method in order to clarify its numerical application. Realize, however, that once the relevant principles have been mastered and enough confidence and judgment have been obtained, the student can then develop his or her own procedures for solving problems.

Important Points. This feature provides a review or summary of the most important concepts in a section and highlights the most significant points that should be realized when applying the theory to solve problems.

Fundamental Problems. These problem sets are selectively located just after most of the example problems. They provide students with simple applications of the concepts, and therefore, the chance to develop their problem-solving skills before attempting to solve any of the standard problems that follow. In addition, they can be used for preparing for exams, and they can be used at a later time when preparing for the Fundamentals in Engineering Exam.

Conceptual Understanding. Through the use of photographs placed throughout the book, theory is applied in a simplified way in order to illustrate some of its more important conceptual features and instill the physical meaning of many of the terms used in the equations. These simplified applications increase interest in the subject matter and better prepare the student to understand the examples and solve problems.

Homework Problems. Apart from the Fundamental and Conceptual type problems mentioned previously, other types of problems contained in the book include the following:

- **Free-Body Diagram Problems.** Some sections of the book contain introductory problems that only require drawing the free-body diagram for the specific problems within a problem set. These assignments will impress upon the student the importance of mastering this skill as a requirement for a complete solution of any equilibrium problem.

- **General Analysis and Design Problems.** The majority of problems in the book depict realistic situations encountered in engineering practice. Some of these problems come from actual products used in industry. It is hoped that this realism will both stimulate the student's interest in engineering mechanics and provide a means for developing the skill to reduce any such problem from its physical description to a model or symbolic representation to which the principles of mechanics may be applied.

  Throughout the book, there is an approximate balance of problems using either SI or FPS units. Furthermore, in any set, an attempt has been made to arrange the problems in order of increasing difficulty except for the end of chapter review problems, which are presented in random order.

- **Computer Problems.** An effort has been made to include some problems that may be solved using a numerical procedure executed on either a desktop computer or a programmable pocket calculator. The intent here is to broaden the student's capacity for using other forms of mathematical analysis without sacrificing the time needed to focus on the application of the principles of mechanics. Problems of this type, which either can or must be solved using numerical procedures, are identified by a "square" symbol (■) preceding the problem number.

The many homework problems in this edition, have been placed into two different categories. Problems that are simply indicated by a problem number have an answer and in some cases an additional numerical result given in the back of the book. An asterisk (*) before every fourth problem number indicates a problem without an answer.

Accuracy. As with the previous editions, apart from the author, the accuracy of the text and problem solutions has been thoroughly checked by four other parties: Scott Hendricks, Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University; Karim Nohra, University of South Florida; Kurt Norlin, Bittner Development Group; and finally Kai Beng, a practicing engineer, who in addition to accuracy review provided suggestions for problem development.

Contents

Statics

The book is divided into 11 chapters, in which the principles are first applied to simple, then to more complicated situations. In a general sense, each principle is applied first to a particle, then a rigid body subjected to a coplanar system of forces, and finally to three-dimensional force systems acting on a rigid body.

Chapter 1 begins with an introduction to mechanics and a discussion of units. The vector properties of a concurrent force system are introduced in Chapter 2. This theory is then applied to the equilibrium of a particle in Chapter 3. Chapter 4 contains a general discussion of both concentrated and distributed force systems and the methods used to simplify them. The principles of rigid-body equilibrium are developed in Chapter 5 and then applied to specific problems involving the equilibrium of trusses, frames, and machines in Chapter 6, and to the analysis of internal forces in beams and cables in Chapter 7. Applications to problems involving frictional forces are discussed in Chapter 8, and topics related to the center of gravity and centroid are treated in Chapter 9. If time permits, sections involving more advanced topics, indicated by stars (★), may be covered. Most of these topics are included in Chapter 10 (area and mass moments of inertia) and Chapter 11 (virtual work and potential energy). Note that this material also provides a suitable reference for basic principles when it is discussed in more advanced courses. Finally, Appendix A provides a review and list of mathematical formulas needed to solve the problems in the book.

Alternative Coverage. At the discretion of the instructor, some of the material may be presented in a different sequence with no loss of continuity. For example, it is possible to introduce the concept of a force and all the necessary methods of vector analysis by first covering Chapter 2 and Section 4.2 (the cross product). Then after covering the rest of Chapter 4 (force and moment systems), the equilibrium methods of Chapters 3 and 5 can be discussed.

Dynamics

The book is divided into 11 chapters, in which the principles are first applied to simple, then to more complicated situations.

The kinematics of a particle is discussed in Chapter 12, followed by a discussion of particle kinetics in Chapter 13 (Equation of Motion), Chapter 14 (Work and Energy), and Chapter 15 (Impulse and Momentum). The concepts of particle dynamics contained in these four chapters are then summarized in a "review" section, and the student is given the chance to identify and solve a variety of problems. A similar sequence of presentation is given for the planar motion of a rigid body: Chapter 16 (Planar Kinematics), Chapter 17 (Equations of Motion), Chapter 18 (Work and Energy), and Chapter 19 (Impulse and Momentum), followed by a summary and review set of problems for these chapters.

If time permits, some of the material involving three-dimensional rigid-body motion may be included in the course. The kinematics and kinetics of this motion are discussed in Chapters 20 and 21, respectively. Chapter 22 (Vibrations) may be included if the student has the necessary mathematical background. Sections of the book that are considered to be beyond the scope of the basic dynamics course are indicated by a star (★) and may be omitted. Note that this material also provides a suitable reference for basic principles when it is discussed in more advanced courses. Finally, Appendix A provides a list of mathematical formulas needed to solve the problems in the book, Appendix B provides a brief review of vector analysis, and Appendix C reviews application of the chain rule.

Alternative Coverage. At the discretion of the instructor, it is possible to cover Chapters 12 through 19 in the following order with no loss in continuity: Chapters 12 and 16 (Kinematics), Chapters 13 and 17 (Equations of Motion), Chapter 14 and 18 (Work and Energy), and Chapters 15 and 19 (Impulse and Momentum).

Acknowledgments

The author has endeavored to write this book so that it will appeal to both the student and instructor. Through the years, many people have helped in its development, and I will always be grateful for their valued suggestions and comments. Specifically, I wish to thank all the individuals who have contributed their comments relative to preparing the fourteenth edition of this work, and in particular, R. Bankhead of Highline Community College, K. Cook-Chennault of Rutgers, the State University of New Jersey, E. Erisman, College of Lake County Illinois, M. Freeman of the University of Alabama, A. Itani of the University of Nevada, Y. Laio of Arizona State University, H. Lu of University of Texas at Dallas, T. Miller of Oregon State University, J. Morgan of Texas A & M University, R. Neptune of the University of Texas, I. Orabi of the University of New Haven, M. Reynolds of the University of Arkansas, N. Schulz of the University of Portland, C. Sulzbach of the Colorado School of Mines, T. Tan, University of Memphis, R. Viesca of Tufts University, G. Young, Oklahoma State University, and P. Ziehl of the University of South Carolina.

There are a few other people that I also feel deserve particular recognition. These include comments sent to me by J. Dix, H. Kuhlman, S. Larwood, D. Pollock, and H. Wenzel. A long-time friend and associate, Kai Beng Yap, was of great help to me in preparing and checking problem solutions. A special note of thanks also goes to Kurt Norlin of Bittner Development Group in this regard. During the production process I am thankful for the assistance of Martha McMaster, my copy editor, and Rose Kernan, my production editor as well as my wife, Conny, who have helped prepare the manuscript for publication.

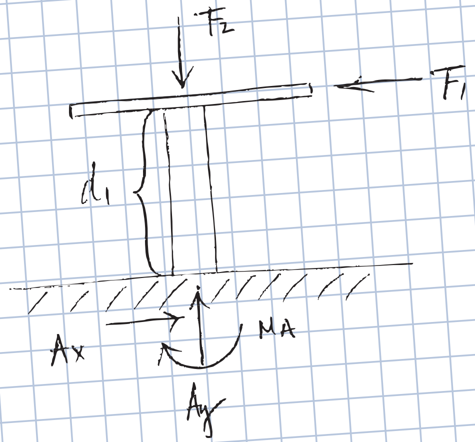
Lastly, many thanks are extended to all my students and to members of the teaching profession who have freely taken the time to e-mail me their suggestions and comments. Since this list is too long to mention, it is hoped that those who have given help in this manner will accept this anonymous recognition.

I would greatly appreciate hearing from you if at any time you have any comments, suggestions, or problems related to any matters regarding this edition.

Russell Charles Hibbeler
hibbeler@bellsouth.net

your work...

PART A



Given: $F_1 = 55.0\text{ lb}$, $F_2 = 170\text{ lb}$, $M_A = 160\text{ lb}\cdot\text{ft}$

$$\sum M_A = 0 \Rightarrow (F_1 + F_2) \times d_1 - M_A = 0$$

$$(F_1 + F_2) \times d_1 = M_A$$

$$d_1 = \frac{M_A}{F_1 + F_2}$$

$$= \frac{160\text{ lb}\cdot\text{ft}}{55.0\text{ lb} + 170\text{ lb}}$$

$$\boxed{d_1 = 0.711\text{ ft}}$$

Resources for Instructors

- **MasteringEngineering.** This online Tutorial Homework program allows you to integrate dynamic homework with automatic grading and adaptive tutoring. MasteringEngineering allows you to easily track the performance of your entire class on an assignment-by-assignment basis, or the detailed work of an individual student.

- **Instructor's Solutions Manual.** This supplement provides complete solutions supported by problem statements and problem figures. The fourteenth edition manual was revised to improve readability and was triple accuracy checked. The Instructor's Solutions Manual is available on Pearson Higher Education website: www.pearsonhighered.com.

- **Instructor's Resource.** Visual resources to accompany the text are located on the Pearson Higher Education website: www.pearsonhighered.com. If you are in need of a login and password for this site, please contact your local Pearson representative. Visual resources include all art from the text, available in PowerPoint slide and JPEG format.

- **Video Solutions.** Developed by Professor Edward Berger, Purdue University, video solutions are located in the study area of MasteringEngineering and offer step-by-step solution walkthroughs of representative homework problems from each section of the text. Make efficient use of class time and office hours by showing students the complete and concise problem-solving approaches that they can access any time and view at their own pace. The videos are designed to be a flexible resource to be used however each instructor and student prefers. A valuable tutorial resource, the videos are also helpful for student self-evaluation as students can pause the videos to check their understanding and work alongside the video. Access the videos at www.masteringengineering.com.

Resources for Students

- **MasteringEngineering.** Tutorial homework problems emulate the instructor's office-hour environment, guiding students through engineering concepts with self-paced individualized coaching. These in-depth tutorial homework problems are designed to coach students with feedback specific to their errors and optional hints that break problems down into simpler steps.

- **Statics Study Pack.** This supplement contains chapter-by-chapter study materials and a Free-Body Diagram Workbook.

- **Dynamics Study Pack.** This supplement contains chapter-by-chapter study materials and a Free-Body Diagram Workbook.

- **Video Solutions.** Complete, step-by-step solution walkthroughs of representative homework problems from each section. Videos offer fully worked solutions that show every step of representative homework problems—this helps students make vital connections between concepts.

- **Statics Practice Problems Workbook.** This workbook contains additional worked problems. The problems are partially solved and are designed to help guide students through difficult topics.

- **Dynamics Practice Problems Workbook.** This workbook contains additional worked problems. The problems are partially solved and are designed to help guide students through difficult topics.

Ordering Options

The *Statics and Dynamics Study Packs* and MasteringEngineering resources are available as stand-alone items for student purchase and are also available packaged with the texts. The ISBN for each valuepack is as follows:

- *Engineering Mechanics: Statics* with Study Pack: ISBN 0134136683
- *Engineering Mechanics: Statics* Plus MasteringEngineering with Pearson eText—Access Card Package: ISBN: 0134160681
- *Engineering Mechanics: Dynamics* with Study Pack: ISBN: 0134116658
- *Engineering Mechanics: Dynamics* Plus MasteringEngineering with Pearson eText — Access Card Package: ISBN: 0134116992

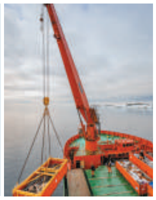
Custom Solutions

Please contact your local Pearson Sales Representative for more details about custom options or visit

www.pearsonlearningsolutions.com, keyword: Hibbeler.

CONTENTS

1 General Principles 3

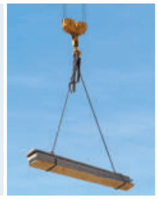


Chapter Objectives 3
1.1 Mechanics 3
1.2 Fundamental Concepts 4
1.3 Units of Measurement 7
1.4 The International System of Units 9
1.5 Numerical Calculations 10
1.6 General Procedure for Analysis 12

2 Force Vectors 17

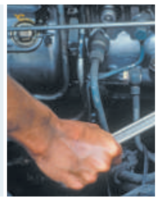
Chapter Objectives 17
2.1 Scalars and Vectors 17
2.2 Vector Operations 18
2.3 Vector Addition of Forces 20
2.4 Addition of a System of Coplanar Forces 33
2.5 Cartesian Vectors 44
2.6 Addition of Cartesian Vectors 47
2.7 Position Vectors 56
2.8 Force Vector Directed Along a Line 59
2.9 Dot Product 69

3 Equilibrium of a Particle 87



Chapter Objectives 87
3.1 Condition for the Equilibrium of a Particle 87
3.2 The Free-Body Diagram 88
3.3 Coplanar Force Systems 91
3.4 Three-Dimensional Force Systems 106

4 Force System Resultants 121



Chapter Objectives 121
4.1 Moment of a Force—Scalar Formulation 121
4.2 Cross Product 125
4.3 Moment of a Force—Vector Formulation 128
4.4 Principle of Moments 132
4.5 Moment of a Force about a Specified Axis 145
4.6 Moment of a Couple 154
4.7 Simplification of a Force and Couple System 166
4.8 Further Simplification of a Force and Couple System 177
4.9 Reduction of a Simple Distributed Loading 190

5 Equilibrium of a Rigid Body 207

Chapter Objectives 207

5.1 Conditions for Rigid-Body Equilibrium 207

5.2 Free-Body Diagrams 209

5.3 Equations of Equilibrium 220

5.4 Two- and Three-Force Members 230

5.5 Free-Body Diagrams 245

5.6 Equations of Equilibrium 250

5.7 Constraints and Statical Determinacy 251

6 Structural Analysis 273

Chapter Objectives 273

6.1 Simple Trusses 273

6.2 The Method of Joints 276

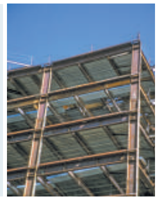
6.3 Zero-Force Members 282

6.4 The Method of Sections 291

6.5 Space Trusses 301

6.6 Frames and Machines 305

7 Internal Forces 343



Chapter Objectives 343

7.1 Internal Loadings Developed in Structural Members 343

7.2 Shear and Moment Equations and Diagrams 361

7.3 Relations between Distributed Load, Shear, and Moment 370

7.4 Cables 381

8 Friction 401

Chapter Objectives 401

8.1 Characteristics of Dry Friction 401

8.2 Problems Involving Dry Friction 406

8.3 Wedges 430

8.4 Frictional Forces on Screws 432

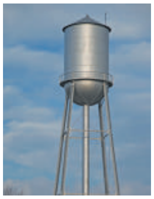
8.5 Frictional Forces on Flat Belts 439

8.6 Frictional Forces on Collar Bearings, Pivot Bearings, and Disks 447

8.7 Frictional Forces on Journal Bearings 450

8.8 Rolling Resistance 452

9 Center of Gravity and Centroid 465

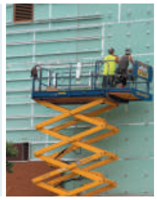


Chapter Objectives 465
9.1 Center of Gravity, Center of Mass, and the Centroid of a Body 465
9.2 Composite Bodies 488
9.3 Theorems of Pappus and Guldinus 502
9.4 Resultant of a General Distributed Loading 511
9.5 Fluid Pressure 512

10 Moments of Inertia 529

Chapter Objectives 529
10.1 Definition of Moments of Inertia for Areas 529
10.2 Parallel-Axis Theorem for an Area 530
10.3 Radius of Gyration of an Area 531
10.4 Moments of Inertia for Composite Areas 540
10.5 Product of Inertia for an Area 548
10.6 Moments of Inertia for an Area about Inclined Axes 552
10.7 Mohr's Circle for Moments of Inertia 555
10.8 Mass Moment of Inertia 563

11 Virtual Work 581



Chapter Objectives 581
11.1 Definition of Work 581
11.2 Principle of Virtual Work 583
11.3 Principle of Virtual Work for a System of Connected Rigid Bodies 585
11.4 Conservative Forces 597
11.5 Potential Energy 598
11.6 Potential-Energy Criterion for Equilibrium 600
11.7 Stability of Equilibrium Configuration 601

Appendix

A. Mathematical Review and Expressions 616

Fundamental Problems Partial Solutions and Answers 620

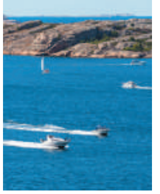
Preliminary Problems Statics Solutions 638

Review Problem Solutions 648

Answers to Selected Problems 658

Index 671

12 Kinematics of a Particle 3



Chapter Objectives 3
12.1 Introduction 3
12.2 Rectilinear Kinematics: Continuous Motion 5
12.3 Rectilinear Kinematics: Erratic Motion 20
12.4 General Curvilinear Motion 34
12.5 Curvilinear Motion: Rectangular Components 36
12.6 Motion of a Projectile 41
12.7 Curvilinear Motion: Normal and Tangential Components 56
12.8 Curvilinear Motion: Cylindrical Components 71
12.9 Absolute Dependent Motion Analysis of Two Particles 85
12.10 Relative-Motion of Two Particles Using Translating Axes 91

13 Kinetics of a Particle: Force and Acceleration 113

Chapter Objectives 113
13.1 Newton's Second Law of Motion 113
13.2 The Equation of Motion 116
13.3 Equation of Motion for a System of Particles 118
13.4 Equations of Motion: Rectangular Coordinates 120
13.5 Equations of Motion: Normal and Tangential Coordinates 138
13.6 Equations of Motion: Cylindrical Coordinates 152
*13.7 Central-Force Motion and Space Mechanics 164

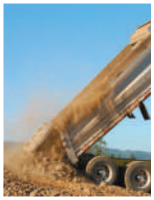
14 Kinetics of a Particle: Work and Energy 179

Chapter Objectives 179
14.1 The Work of a Force 179
14.2 Principle of Work and Energy 184
14.3 Principle of Work and Energy for a System of Particles 186
14.4 Power and Efficiency 204
14.5 Conservative Forces and Potential Energy 213
14.6 Conservation of Energy 217

15 Kinetics of a Particle: Impulse and Momentum 237

Chapter Objectives 237
15.1 Principle of Linear Impulse and Momentum 237
15.2 Principle of Linear Impulse and Momentum for a System of Particles 240
15.3 Conservation of Linear Momentum for a System of Particles 254
15.4 Impact 266
15.5 Angular Momentum 280
15.6 Relation Between Moment of a Force and Angular Momentum 281
15.7 Principle of Angular Impulse and Momentum 284
15.8 Steady Flow of a Fluid Stream 295
*15.9 Propulsion with Variable Mass 300

16
Planar Kinematics of a Rigid Body 319



Chapter Objectives 319

16.1 Planar Rigid-Body Motion 319

16.2 Translation 321

16.3 Rotation about a Fixed Axis 322

16.4 Absolute Motion Analysis 338

16.5 Relative-Motion Analysis: Velocity 346

16.6 Instantaneous Center of Zero Velocity 360

16.7 Relative-Motion Analysis: Acceleration 373

16.8 Relative-Motion Analysis using Rotating Axes 389

17
Planar Kinetics of a Rigid Body: Force and Acceleration 409

Chapter Objectives 409

17.1 Mass Moment of Inertia 409

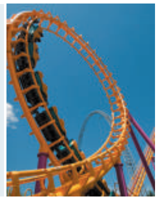
17.2 Planar Kinetic Equations of Motion 423

17.3 Equations of Motion: Translation 426

17.4 Equations of Motion: Rotation about a Fixed Axis 441

17.5 Equations of Motion: General Plane Motion 456

18
Planar Kinetics of a Rigid Body: Work and Energy 473



Chapter Objectives 473

18.1 Kinetic Energy 473

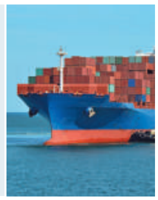
18.2 The Work of a Force 476

18.3 The Work of a Couple Moment 478

18.4 Principle of Work and Energy 480

18.5 Conservation of Energy 496

19
Planar Kinetics of a Rigid Body: Impulse and Momentum 517



Chapter Objectives 517

19.1 Linear and Angular Momentum 517

19.2 Principle of Impulse and Momentum 523

19.3 Conservation of Momentum 540

***19.4** Eccentric Impact 544

20 Three-Dimensional Kinematics of a Rigid Body 561

Chapter Objectives 561
20.1 Rotation About a Fixed Point 561
*20.2 The Time Derivative of a Vector Measured from Either a Fixed or Translating-Rotating System 564
20.3 General Motion 569
*20.4 Relative-Motion Analysis Using Translating and Rotating Axes 578

21 Three-Dimensional Kinetics of a Rigid Body 591

Chapter Objectives 591
*21.1 Moments and Products of Inertia 591
21.2 Angular Momentum 601
21.3 Kinetic Energy 604
*21.4 Equations of Motion 612
*21.5 Gyroscopic Motion 626
21.6 Torque-Free Motion 632

22 Vibrations 643

Chapter Objectives 643
*22.1 Undamped Free Vibration 643
*22.2 Energy Methods 657
*22.3 Undamped Forced Vibration 663
*22.4 Viscous Damped Free Vibration 667
*22.5 Viscous Damped Forced Vibration 670
*22.6 Electrical Circuit Analogs 673

Appendix

A. Mathematical Expressions 682
B. Vector Analysis 684
C. The Chain Rule 689

Fundamental Problems Partial Solutions and Answers 692

Preliminary Problems Dynamics Solutions 713

Review Problem Solutions 723

Answers to Selected Problems 733

Index 745

CREDITS

Chapter opening images are credited as follows:

Chapter 1, Andrew Peacock/Lonely Planet Images/Getty Images
Chapter 2, Vasiliy Koval/Fotolia
Chapter 3, Igor Tumarkin/ITPS/Shutterstock
Chapter 4, Rolf Adlercreutz/Alamy
Chapter 5, YuryZap/Shutterstock
Chapter 6, Tim Scrivener/Alamy
Chapter 7, Tony Freeman/Science Source
Chapter 8, Pavel Polkovnikov/Shutterstock
Chapter 9, Heather Reeder/Shutterstock
Chapter 10, Michael N. Paras/AGE Fotostock/Alamy
Chapter 11, John Kershaw/Alamy
Chapter 12, Lars Johansson/Fotolia
Chapter 13, Migel/Shutterstock
Chapter 14, Oliver Furrer/Ocean/Corbis
Chapter 15, David J. Green/Alamy
Chapter 16, TFoxFoto/Shutterstock
Chapter 17, Surasaki/Fotolia
Chapter 18, Arinahabich/Fotolia
Chapter 19, Hellen Sergeyeva/Fotolia
Chapter 20, Philippe Psaila/Science Source
Chapter 21, Derek Watt/Alamy
Chapter 22, Daseaford/Fotolia

ENGINEERING MECHANICS

STATICS

FOURTEENTH EDITION

Chapter 1

(© Andrew Peacock/Lonely Planet Images/Getty Images)

Large cranes such as this one are required to lift extremely large loads. Their design is based on the basic principles of statics and dynamics, which form the subject matter of engineering mechanics.

General Principles

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

- To provide an introduction to the basic quantities and idealizations of mechanics.
- To give a statement of Newton's Laws of Motion and Gravitation.
- To review the principles for applying the SI system of units.
- To examine the standard procedures for performing numerical calculations.
- To present a general guide for solving problems.

1.1 Mechanics

Mechanics is a branch of the physical sciences that is concerned with the state of rest or motion of bodies that are subjected to the action of forces. In general, this subject can be subdivided into three branches: *rigid-body mechanics, deformable-body mechanics*, and *fluid mechanics*. In this book we will study rigid-body mechanics since it is a basic requirement for the study of the mechanics of deformable bodies and the mechanics of fluids. Furthermore, rigid-body mechanics is essential for the design and analysis of many types of structural members, mechanical components, or electrical devices encountered in engineering.

Rigid-body mechanics is divided into two areas: statics and dynamics. ***Statics*** deals with the equilibrium of bodies, that is, those that are either at rest or move with a constant velocity; whereas ***dynamics*** is concerned with the accelerated motion of bodies. We can consider statics as a special case of dynamics, in which the acceleration is zero; however, statics deserves separate treatment in engineering education since many objects are designed with the intention that they remain in equilibrium.

Historical Development. The subject of statics developed very early in history because its principles can be formulated simply from measurements of geometry and force. For example, the writings of Archimedes (287–212 B.C.) deal with the principle of the lever. Studies of the pulley, inclined plane, and wrench are also recorded in ancient writings—at times when the requirements for engineering were limited primarily to building construction.

Since the principles of dynamics depend on an accurate measurement of time, this subject developed much later. Galileo Galilei (1564–1642) was one of the first major contributors to this field. His work consisted of experiments using pendulums and falling bodies. The most significant contributions in dynamics, however, were made by Isaac Newton (1642–1727), who is noted for his formulation of the three fundamental laws of motion and the law of universal gravitational attraction. Shortly after these laws were postulated, important techniques for their application were developed by other scientists and engineers, some of whom will be mentioned throughout the text.

1.2 Fundamental Concepts

Before we begin our study of engineering mechanics, it is important to understand the meaning of certain fundamental concepts and principles.

Basic Quantities. The following four quantities are used throughout mechanics.

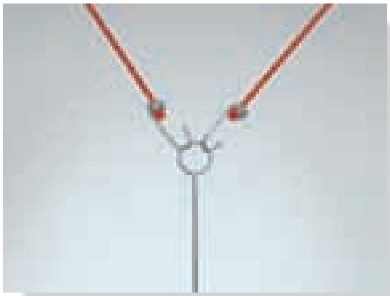
Length. ***Length*** is used to locate the position of a point in space and thereby describe the size of a physical system. Once a standard unit of length is defined, one can then use it to define distances and geometric properties of a body as multiples of this unit.

Time. ***Time*** is conceived as a succession of events. Although the principles of statics are time independent, this quantity plays an important role in the study of dynamics.

Mass. ***Mass*** is a measure of a quantity of matter that is used to compare the action of one body with that of another. This property manifests itself as a gravitational attraction between two bodies and provides a measure of the resistance of matter to a change in velocity.

Force. In general, ***force*** is considered as a "push" or "pull" exerted by one body on another. This interaction can occur when there is direct contact between the bodies, such as a person pushing on a wall, or it can occur through a distance when the bodies are physically separated. Examples of the latter type include gravitational, electrical, and magnetic forces. In any case, a force is completely characterized by its magnitude, direction, and point of application.

Idealizations. Models or idealizations are used in mechanics in order to simplify application of the theory. Here we will consider three important idealizations.

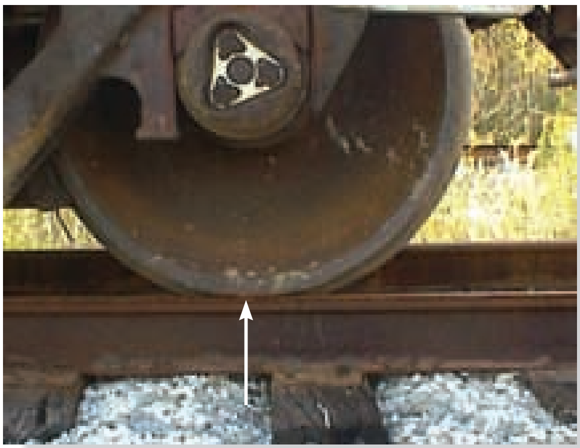


Three forces act on the ring. Since these forces all meet at a point, then for any force analysis, we can assume the ring to be represented as a particle. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Particle. A ***particle*** has a mass, but a size that can be neglected. For example, the size of the earth is insignificant compared to the size of its orbit, and therefore the earth can be modeled as a particle when studying its orbital motion. When a body is idealized as a particle, the principles of mechanics reduce to a rather simplified form since the geometry of the body *will not be involved* in the analysis of the problem.

Rigid Body. A ***rigid body*** can be considered as a combination of a large number of particles in which all the particles remain at a fixed distance from one another, both before and after applying a load. This model is important because the body's shape does not change when a load is applied, and so we do not have to consider the type of material from which the body is made. In most cases the actual deformations occurring in structures, machines, mechanisms, and the like are relatively small, and the rigid-body assumption is suitable for analysis.

Concentrated Force. A ***concentrated force*** represents the effect of a loading which is assumed to act at a point on a body. We can represent a load by a concentrated force, provided the area over which the load is applied is very small compared to the overall size of the body. An example would be the contact force between a wheel and the ground.



Steel is a common engineering material that does not deform very much under load. Therefore, we can consider this railroad wheel to be a rigid body acted upon by the concentrated force of the rail. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Newton's Three Laws of Motion. Engineering mechanics is formulated on the basis of Newton's three laws of motion, the validity of which is based on experimental observation. These laws apply to the motion of a particle as measured from a *nonaccelerating* reference frame. They may be briefly stated as follows.

First Law. A particle originally at rest, or moving in a straight line with constant velocity, tends to remain in this state provided the particle is *not* subjected to an unbalanced force, Fig. 1–1*a*.

Second Law. A particle acted upon by an *unbalanced force* **F** experiences an acceleration **a** that has the same direction as the force and a magnitude that is directly proportional to the force, Fig. 1–1*b*.* If **F** is applied to a particle of mass *m*, this law may be expressed mathematically as

$$\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a} \tag{1–1}$$

Third Law. The mutual forces of action and reaction between two particles are equal, opposite, and collinear, Fig. 1–1*c*.

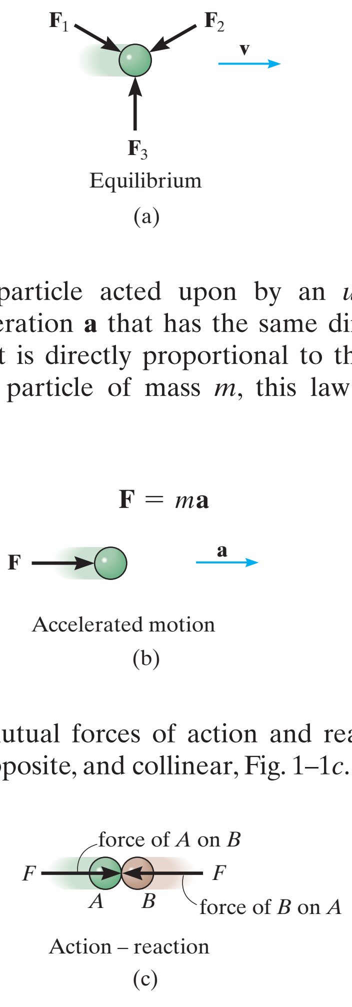


Fig. 1–1

*Stated another way, the unbalanced force acting on the particle is proportional to the time rate of change of the particle's linear momentum.

Newton's Law of Gravitational Attraction. Shortly after formulating his three laws of motion, Newton postulated a law governing the gravitational attraction between any two particles. Stated mathematically,

$$F = G\frac{m_1 m_2}{r^2} \tag{1–2}$$

where

F = force of gravitation between the two particles

G = universal constant of gravitation; according to experimental evidence, $G = 66.73(10^{-12})\ \mathrm{m^3/(kg \cdot s^2)}$

m_1, m_2 = mass of each of the two particles

r = distance between the two particles

The astronaut's weight is diminished since she is far removed from the gravitational field of the earth. (© NikoNomad/Shutterstock)

Weight. According to Eq. 1–2, any two particles or bodies have a mutual attractive (gravitational) force acting between them. In the case of a particle located at or near the surface of the earth, however, the only gravitational force having any sizable magnitude is that between the earth and the particle. Consequently, this force, termed the ***weight***, will be the only gravitational force considered in our study of mechanics.

From Eq. 1–2, we can develop an approximate expression for finding the weight W of a particle having a mass $m_1 = m$. If we assume the earth to be a nonrotating sphere of constant density and having a mass $m_2 = M_e$, then if r is the distance between the earth's center and the particle, we have

$$W = G\frac{mM_e}{r^2}$$

Letting $g = GM_e/r^2$ yields

$$\boxed{W = mg} \tag{1–3}$$

By comparison with $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$, we can see that g is the acceleration due to gravity. Since it depends on r, then the weight of a body is *not* an absolute quantity. Instead, its magnitude is determined from where the measurement was made. For most engineering calculations, however, g is determined at sea level and at a latitude of 45°, which is considered the "standard location."

1.3 Units of Measurement

The four basic quantities—length, time, mass, and force—are not all independent from one another; in fact, they are *related* by Newton's second law of motion, $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$. Because of this, the *units* used to measure these quantities cannot *all* be selected arbitrarily. The equality $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$ is maintained only if three of the four units, called ***base units***, are *defined* and the fourth unit is then *derived* from the equation.

Fig. 1–2

SI Units. The International System of units, abbreviated SI after the French "Système International d'Unités," is a modern version of the metric system which has received worldwide recognition. As shown in Table 1–1, the SI system defines length in meters (m), time in seconds (s), and mass in kilograms (kg). The unit of force, called a ***newton*** (N), is *derived* from $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$. Thus, 1 newton is equal to a force required to give 1 kilogram of mass an acceleration of 1 m/s^2 ($\text{N} = \text{kg} \cdot \text{m/s}^2$).

If the weight of a body located at the "standard location" is to be determined in newtons, then Eq. 1–3 must be applied. Here measurements give $g = 9.806\,65\ \text{m/s}^2$; however, for calculations, the value $g = 9.81\ \text{m/s}^2$ will be used. Thus,

$$W = mg \qquad (g = 9.81\ \text{m/s}^2) \tag{1–4}$$

Therefore, a body of mass 1 kg has a weight of 9.81 N, a 2-kg body weighs 19.62 N, and so on, Fig. 1–2*a*.

U.S. Customary. In the U.S. Customary system of units (FPS) length is measured in feet (ft), time in seconds (s), and force in pounds (lb), Table 1–1. The unit of mass, called a ***slug***, is *derived* from $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$. Hence, 1 slug is equal to the amount of matter accelerated at 1 ft/s^2 when acted upon by a force of 1 lb ($\text{slug} = \text{lb} \cdot \text{s}^2/\text{ft}$).

Therefore, if the measurements are made at the "standard location," where $g = 32.2\ \text{ft/s}^2$, then from Eq. 1–3,

$$m = \frac{W}{g} \qquad (g = 32.2\ \text{ft/s}^2) \tag{1–5}$$

And so a body weighing 32.2 lb has a mass of 1 slug, a 64.4-lb body has a mass of 2 slugs, and so on, Fig. 1–2*b*.

TABLE 1–1 Systems of Units

Name	Length	Time	Mass	Force
International System of Units SI	meter m	second s	kilogram kg	$\boxed{\text{newton*}}$ N $\left(\frac{\text{kg} \cdot \text{m}}{\text{s}^2}\right)$
U.S. Customary FPS	foot ft	second s	$\boxed{\text{slug*}}$ $\left(\frac{\text{lb} \cdot \text{s}^2}{\text{ft}}\right)$	pound lb

*Derived unit.

Conversion of Units. Table 1–2 provides a set of direct conversion factors between FPS and SI units for the basic quantities. Also, in the FPS system, recall that 1 ft = 12 in. (inches), 5280 ft = 1 mi (mile), 1000 lb = 1 kip (kilo-pound), and 2000 lb = 1 ton.

TABLE 1–2 Conversion Factors

Quantity	Unit of Measurement (FPS)	Equals	Unit of Measurement (SI)
Force	lb		4.448 N
Mass	slug		14.59 kg
Length	ft		0.3048 m

1.4 The International System of Units

The SI system of units is used extensively in this book since it is intended to become the worldwide standard for measurement. Therefore, we will now present some of the rules for its use and some of its terminology relevant to engineering mechanics.

Prefixes. When a numerical quantity is either very large or very small, the units used to define its size may be modified by using a prefix. Some of the prefixes used in the SI system are shown in Table 1–3. Each represents a multiple or submultiple of a unit which, if applied successively, moves the decimal point of a numerical quantity to every third place.* For example, 4 000 000 N = 4 000 kN (kilo-newton) = 4 MN (mega-newton), or 0.005 m = 5 mm (milli-meter). Notice that the SI system does not include the multiple deca (10) or the submultiple centi (0.01), which form part of the metric system. Except for some volume and area measurements, the use of these prefixes is to be avoided in science and engineering.

TABLE 1–3 Prefixes

	Exponential Form	Prefix	SI Symbol
Multiple			
1 000 000 000	10^9	giga	G
1 000 000	10^6	mega	M
1 000	10^3	kilo	k
Submultiple			
0.001	10^{-3}	milli	m
0.000 001	10^{-6}	micro	μ
0.000 000 001	10^{-9}	nano	n

*The kilogram is the only base unit that is defined with a prefix.

Rules for Use. Here are a few of the important rules that describe the proper use of the various SI symbols:

- Quantities defined by several units which are multiples of one another are separated by a *dot* to avoid confusion with prefix notation, as indicated by $\mathrm{N} = \mathrm{kg} \cdot \mathrm{m/s^2} = \mathrm{kg} \cdot \mathrm{m} \cdot \mathrm{s^{-2}}$. Also, $\mathrm{m} \cdot \mathrm{s}$ (meter-second), whereas ms (milli-second).
- The exponential power on a unit having a prefix refers to both the unit *and* its prefix. For example, $\mu\mathrm{N}^2 = (\mu\mathrm{N})^2 = \mu\mathrm{N} \cdot \mu\mathrm{N}$. Likewise, mm^2 represents $(\mathrm{mm})^2 = \mathrm{mm} \cdot \mathrm{mm}$.
- With the exception of the base unit the kilogram, in general avoid the use of a prefix in the denominator of composite units. For example, do not write N/mm, but rather kN/m; also, m/mg should be written as Mm/kg.
- When performing calculations, represent the numbers in terms of their *base or derived units* by converting all prefixes to powers of 10. The final result should then be expressed using a *single prefix*. Also, after calculation, it is best to keep numerical values between 0.1 and 1000; otherwise, a suitable prefix should be chosen. For example,

$$\begin{aligned}(50\ \mathrm{kN})(60\ \mathrm{nm}) &= \left[50(10^3)\ \mathrm{N}\right]\left[60(10^{-9})\ \mathrm{m}\right]\\ &= 3000(10^{-6})\ \mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m} = 3(10^{-3})\ \mathrm{N} \cdot \mathrm{m} = 3\ \mathrm{mN} \cdot \mathrm{m}\end{aligned}$$

1.5 Numerical Calculations

Computers are often used in engineering for advanced design and analysis. (© Blaize Pascall/Alamy)

Numerical work in engineering practice is most often performed by using handheld calculators and computers. It is important, however, that the answers to any problem be reported with justifiable accuracy using appropriate significant figures. In this section we will discuss these topics together with some other important aspects involved in all engineering calculations.

Dimensional Homogeneity. The terms of any equation used to describe a physical process must be ***dimensionally homogeneous***; that is, each term must be expressed in the same units. Provided this is the case, all the terms of an equation can then be combined if numerical values are substituted for the variables. Consider, for example, the equation $s = vt + \frac{1}{2}at^2$, where, in SI units, s is the position in meters, m, t is time in seconds, s, v is velocity in m/s and a is acceleration in $\mathrm{m/s^2}$. Regardless of how this equation is evaluated, it maintains its dimensional homogeneity. In the form stated, each of the three terms is expressed in meters $\left[\mathrm{m}, (\mathrm{m}/\cancel{\mathrm{s}})\cancel{\mathrm{s}}, (\mathrm{m}/\cancel{\mathrm{s}^2})\cancel{\mathrm{s}^2}\right]$ or solving for a, $a = 2s/t^2 - 2v/t$, the terms are each expressed in units of $\mathrm{m/s^2}$ $\left[\mathrm{m/s^2}, \mathrm{m/s^2}, (\mathrm{m/s})/\mathrm{s}\right]$.

Keep in mind that problems in mechanics always involve the solution of dimensionally homogeneous equations, and so this fact can then be used as a partial check for algebraic manipulations of an equation.

Significant Figures. The number of significant figures contained in any number determines the accuracy of the number. For instance, the number 4981 contains four significant figures. However, if zeros occur at the end of a whole number, it may be unclear as to how many significant figures the number represents. For example, 23 400 might have three (234), four (2340), or five (23 400) significant figures. To avoid these ambiguities, we will use *engineering notation* to report a result. This requires that numbers be rounded off to the appropriate number of significant digits and then expressed in multiples of (10^3), such as (10^3), (10^6), or (10^{-9}). For instance, if 23 400 has five significant figures, it is written as $23.400(10^3)$, but if it has only three significant figures, it is written as $23.4(10^3)$.

If zeros occur at the beginning of a number that is less than one, then the zeros are not significant. For example, 0.008 21 has three significant figures. Using engineering notation, this number is expressed as $8.21(10^{-3})$. Likewise, 0.000 582 can be expressed as $0.582(10^{-3})$ or $582(10^{-6})$.

Rounding Off Numbers. Rounding off a number is necessary so that the accuracy of the result will be the same as that of the problem data. As a general rule, any numerical figure ending in a number greater than five is rounded up and a number less than five is not rounded up. The rules for rounding off numbers are best illustrated by examples. Suppose the number 3.5587 is to be rounded off to *three* significant figures. Because the fourth digit (8) is *greater than* 5, the third number is rounded up to 3.56. Likewise 0.5896 becomes 0.590 and 9.3866 becomes 9.39. If we round off 1.341 to three significant figures, because the fourth digit (1) is *less than* 5, then we get 1.34. Likewise 0.3762 becomes 0.376 and 9.871 becomes 9.87. There is a special case for any number that ends in a 5. As a general rule, if the digit preceding the 5 is an *even number*, then this digit is *not* rounded up. If the digit preceding the 5 is an *odd number*, then it is rounded up. For example, 75.25 rounded off to three significant digits becomes 75.2, 0.1275 becomes 0.128, and 0.2555 becomes 0.256.

Calculations. When a sequence of calculations is performed, it is best to store the intermediate results in the calculator. In other words, do not round off calculations until expressing the final result. This procedure maintains precision throughout the series of steps to the final solution. In this text we will generally round off the answers to three significant figures since most of the data in engineering mechanics, such as geometry and loads, may be reliably measured to this accuracy.

When solving problems, do the work as neatly as possible. Being neat will stimulate clear and orderly thinking, and vice versa. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

1.6 General Procedure for Analysis

Attending a lecture, reading this book, and studying the example problems helps, but **the most effective way of learning the principles of engineering mechanics is to *solve problems*.** To be successful at this, it is important to always present the work in a *logical* and *orderly manner*, as suggested by the following sequence of steps:

- Read the problem carefully and try to correlate the actual physical situation with the theory studied.
- Tabulate the problem data and *draw to a large scale* any necessary diagrams.
- Apply the relevant principles, generally in mathematical form. When writing any equations, be sure they are dimensionally homogeneous.
- Solve the necessary equations, and report the answer with no more than three significant figures.
- Study the answer with technical judgment and common sense to determine whether or not it seems reasonable.

Important Points

- Statics is the study of bodies that are at rest or move with constant velocity.
- A particle has a mass but a size that can be neglected, and a rigid body does not deform under load.
- A force is considered as a "push" or "pull" of one body on another.
- Concentrated forces are assumed to act at a point on a body.
- Newton's three laws of motion should be memorized.
- Mass is measure of a quantity of matter that does not change from one location to another. Weight refers to the gravitational attraction of the earth on a body or quantity of mass. Its magnitude depends upon the elevation at which the mass is located.
- In the SI system the unit of force, the newton, is a derived unit. The meter, second, and kilogram are base units.
- Prefixes G, M, k, m, μ, and n are used to represent large and small numerical quantities. Their exponential size should be known, along with the rules for using the SI units.
- Perform numerical calculations with several significant figures, and then report the final answer to three significant figures.
- Algebraic manipulations of an equation can be checked in part by verifying that the equation remains dimensionally homogeneous.
- Know the rules for rounding off numbers.

EXAMPLE 1.1

Convert 2 km/h to m/s How many ft/s is this?

SOLUTION

Since 1 km = 1000 m and 1 h = 3600 s, the factors of conversion are arranged in the following order, so that a cancellation of the units can be applied:

$$2\text{ km/h} = \frac{2\ \cancel{\text{km}}}{\cancel{\text{h}}}\left(\frac{1000\text{ m}}{\cancel{\text{km}}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{\text{h}}}{3600\text{ s}}\right)$$

$$= \frac{2000\text{ m}}{3600\text{ s}} = 0.556\text{ m/s} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

From Table 1–2, 1 ft = 0.3048 m. Thus,

$$0.556\text{ m/s} = \left(\frac{0.556\ \cancel{\text{m}}}{\text{s}}\right)\left(\frac{1\text{ ft}}{0.3048\ \cancel{\text{m}}}\right)$$

$$= 1.82\text{ ft/s} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

NOTE: Remember to round off the final answer to three significant figures.

EXAMPLE 1.2

Convert the quantities 300 lb · s and 52 slug/ft^3 to appropriate SI units.

SOLUTION

Using Table 1–2, 1 lb = 4.448 N.

$$300\text{ lb}\cdot\text{s} = 300\ \cancel{\text{lb}}\cdot\text{s}\left(\frac{4.448\text{ N}}{1\ \cancel{\text{lb}}}\right)$$

$$= 1334.5\text{ N}\cdot\text{s} = 1.33\text{ kN}\cdot\text{s} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Since 1 slug = 14.59 kg and 1 ft = 0.3048 m, then

$$52\text{ slug/ft}^3 = \frac{52\ \cancel{\text{slug}}}{\cancel{\text{ft}^3}}\left(\frac{14.59\text{ kg}}{1\ \cancel{\text{slug}}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \cancel{\text{ft}}}{0.3048\text{ m}}\right)^3$$

$$= 26.8(10^3)\text{ kg/m}^3$$

$$= 26.8\text{ Mg/m}^3 \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

1

EXAMPLE 1.3

Evaluate each of the following and express with SI units having an appropriate prefix: (a) (50 mN)(6 GN), (b) (400 mm)(0.6 MN)^2, (c) 45 MN^3/900 Gg.

SOLUTION

First convert each number to base units, perform the indicated operations, then choose an appropriate prefix.

Part (a)

$$
\begin{aligned}
(50\text{ mN})(6\text{ GN}) &= \left[50(10^{-3})\text{ N}\right]\left[6(10^{9})\text{ N}\right] \\
&= 300(10^{6})\text{ N}^2 \\
&= 300(10^{6})\,\cancel{\text{N}^2}\left(\frac{1\text{ kN}}{10^3\,\cancel{\text{N}}}\right)\left(\frac{1\text{ kN}}{10^3\,\cancel{\text{N}}}\right) \\
&= 300\text{ kN}^2 \qquad \textit{Ans.}
\end{aligned}
$$

NOTE: Keep in mind the convention $\text{kN}^2 = (\text{kN})^2 = 10^6\text{ N}^2$.

Part (b)

$$
\begin{aligned}
(400\text{ mm})(0.6\text{ MN})^2 &= \left[400(10^{-3})\text{ m}\right]\left[0.6(10^{6})\text{ N}\right]^2 \\
&= \left[400(10^{-3})\text{ m}\right]\left[0.36(10^{12})\text{ N}^2\right] \\
&= 144(10^{9})\text{ m}\cdot\text{N}^2 \\
&= 144\text{ Gm}\cdot\text{N}^2 \qquad \textit{Ans.}
\end{aligned}
$$

We can also write

$$
\begin{aligned}
144(10^{9})\text{ m}\cdot\text{N}^2 &= 144(10^{9})\text{ m}\cdot\cancel{\text{N}^2}\left(\frac{1\text{ MN}}{10^6\,\cancel{\text{N}}}\right)\left(\frac{1\text{ MN}}{10^6\,\cancel{\text{N}}}\right) \\
&= 0.144\text{ m}\cdot\text{MN}^2 \qquad \textit{Ans.}
\end{aligned}
$$

Part (c)

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{45\text{ MN}^3}{900\text{ Gg}} &= \frac{45(10^{6}\text{ N})^3}{900(10^{6})\text{ kg}} \\
&= 50(10^{9})\text{ N}^3/\text{kg} \\
&= 50(10^{9})\,\cancel{\text{N}^3}\left(\frac{1\text{ kN}}{10^3\,\cancel{\text{N}}}\right)^3\frac{1}{\text{kg}} \\
&= 50\text{ kN}^3/\text{kg} \qquad \textit{Ans.}
\end{aligned}
$$

PROBLEMS

The answers to all but every fourth problem (asterisk) are given in the back of the book.

1–1. What is the weight in newtons of an object that has a mass of (a) 8 kg, (b) 0.04 kg, and (c) 760 Mg?

1–2. Represent each of the following combinations of units in the correct SI form: (a) kN/μs, (b) Mg/mN, and (c) MN/(kg · ms).

1–3. Represent each of the following combinations of units in the correct SI form: (a) Mg/ms, (b) N/mm, (c) mN/(kg · μs).

***1–4.** Convert: (a) 200 lb · ft to N · m, (b) 350 lb/ft^3 to kN/m^3, (c) 8 ft/h to mm/s. Express the result to three significant figures. Use an appropriate prefix.

1–5. Represent each of the following as a number between 0.1 and 1000 using an appropriate prefix: (a) 45 320 kN, (b) 568(10^5) mm, and (c) 0.00563 mg.

1–6. Round off the following numbers to three significant figures: (a) 58 342 m, (b) 68.534 s, (c) 2553 N, and (d) 7555 kg.

1–7. Represent each of the following quantities in the correct SI form using an appropriate prefix: (a) 0.000 431 kg, (b) 35.3(10^3) N, (c) 0.005 32 km.

***1–8.** Represent each of the following combinations of units in the correct SI form using an appropriate prefix: (a) Mg/mm, (b) mN/μs, (c) μm · Mg.

1–9. Represent each of the following combinations of units in the correct SI form using an appropriate prefix: (a) m/ms, (b) μkm, (c) ks/mg, and (d) km · μN.

1–10. Represent each of the following combinations of units in the correct SI form: (a) GN · μm, (b) kg/μm, (c) N/ks^2, and (d) kN/μs.

1–11. Represent each of the following with SI units having an appropriate prefix: (a) 8653 ms, (b) 8368 N, (c) 0.893 kg.

***1–12.** Evaluate each of the following to three significant figures and express each answer in SI units using an appropriate prefix: (a) (684 μm)/(43 ms), (b) (28 ms)(0.0458 Mm)/(348 mg), (c) (2.68 mm)(426 Mg).

1–13. The density (mass/volume) of aluminum is 5.26 slug/ft^3. Determine its density in SI units. Use an appropriate prefix.

1–14. Evaluate each of the following to three significant figures and express each answer in SI units using an appropriate prefix: (a) (212 mN)^2, (b) (52 800 ms)^2, and (c) [548(10^6)]$^{1/2}$ ms.

1–15. Using the SI system of units, show that Eq. 1–2 is a dimensionally homogeneous equation which gives F in newtons. Determine to three significant figures the gravitational force acting between two spheres that are touching each other. The mass of each sphere is 200 kg and the radius is 300 mm.

***1–16.** The *pascal* (Pa) is actually a very small unit of pressure. To show this, convert $1 \text{ Pa} = 1 \text{ N/m}^2$ to lb/ft^2. Atmosphere pressure at sea level is 14.7 lb/in^2. How many pascals is this?

1–17. Water has a density of 1.94 slug/ft^3. What is the density expressed in SI units? Express the answer to three significant figures.

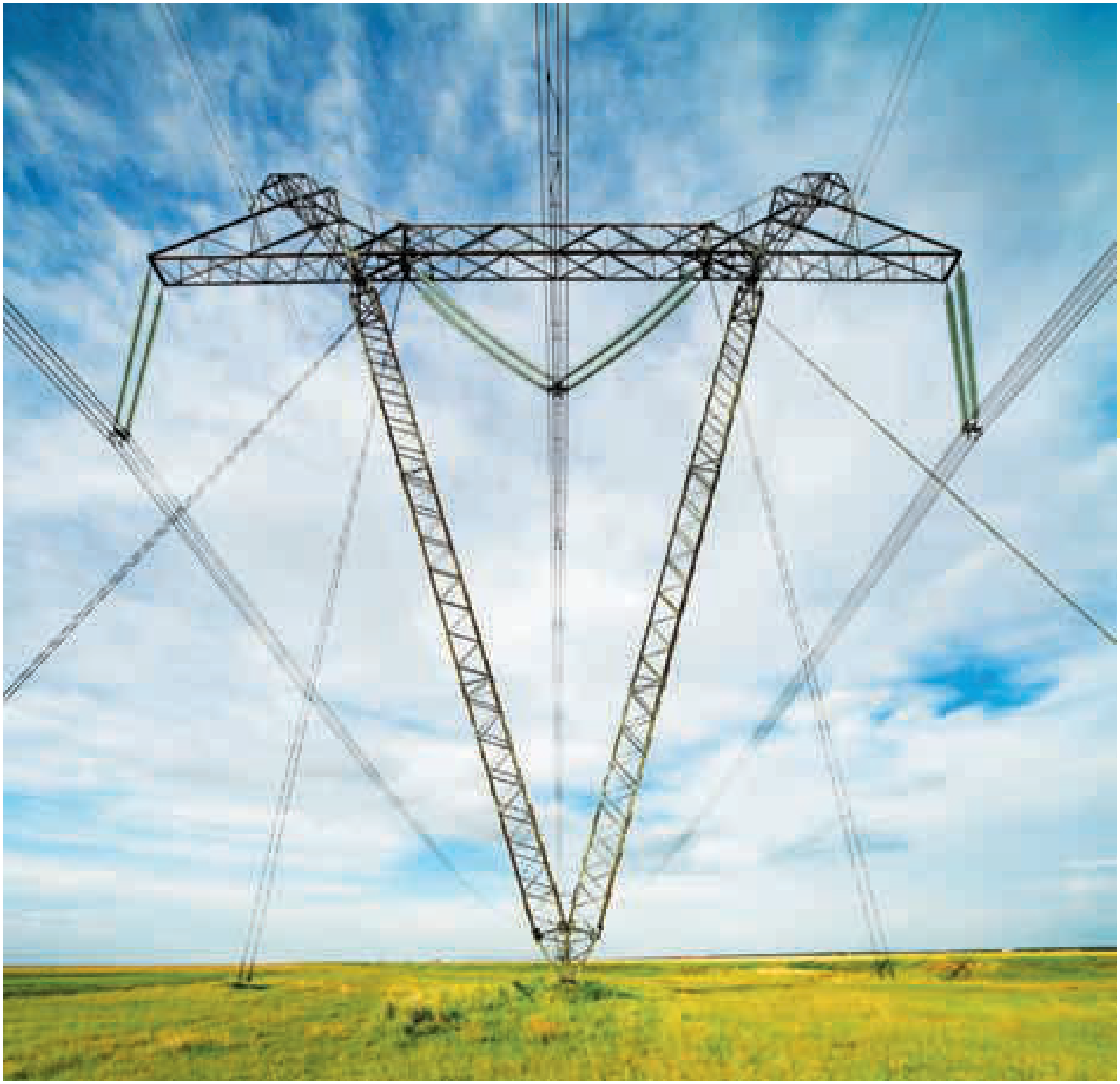
1–18. Evaluate each of the following to three significant figures and express each answer in SI units using an appropriate prefix: (a) 354 mg(45 km)/(0.0356 kN), (b) (0.004 53 Mg)(201 ms), (c) 435 MN/23.2 mm.

1–19. A concrete column has a diameter of 350 mm and a length of 2 m. If the density (mass/volume) of concrete is 2.45 Mg/m^3, determine the weight of the column in pounds.

***1–20.** If a man weighs 155 lb on earth, specify (a) his mass in slugs, (b) his mass in kilograms, and (c) his weight in newtons. If the man is on the moon, where the acceleration due to gravity is $g_m = 5.30 \text{ ft/s}^2$, determine (d) his weight in pounds, and (e) his mass in kilograms.

1–21. Two particles have a mass of 8 kg and 12 kg, respectively. If they are 800 mm apart, determine the force of gravity acting between them. Compare this result with the weight of each particle.

Chapter 2



(© Vasiliy Koval/Fotolia)

This electric transmission tower is stabilized by cables that exert forces on the tower at their points of connection. In this chapter we will show how to express these forces as Cartesian vectors, and then determine their resultant.

Force Vectors

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

- To show how to add forces and resolve them into components using the Parallelogram Law.
- To express force and position in Cartesian vector form and explain how to determine the vector's magnitude and direction.
- To introduce the dot product in order to use it to find the angle between two vectors or the projection of one vector onto another.

2.1 Scalars and Vectors

Many physical quantities in engineering mechanics are measured using either scalars or vectors.

Scalar. A ***scalar*** is any positive or negative physical quantity that can be completely specified by its *magnitude*. Examples of scalar quantities include length, mass, and time.

Vector. A ***vector*** is any physical quantity that requires both a *magnitude* and a *direction* for its complete description. Examples of vectors encountered in statics are force, position, and moment. A vector is shown graphically by an arrow. The length of the arrow represents the *magnitude* of the vector, and the angle θ between the vector and a fixed axis defines the *direction of its line of action*. The head or tip of the arrow indicates the *sense of direction* of the vector, Fig. 2–1.

In print, vector quantities are represented by boldface letters such as $\mathbf{A}$, and the magnitude of a vector is italicized, A. For handwritten work, it is often convenient to denote a vector quantity by simply drawing an arrow above it, $\vec{A}$.

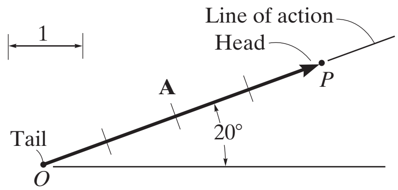
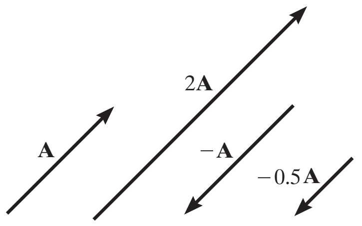


Fig. 2–1

2.2 Vector Operations



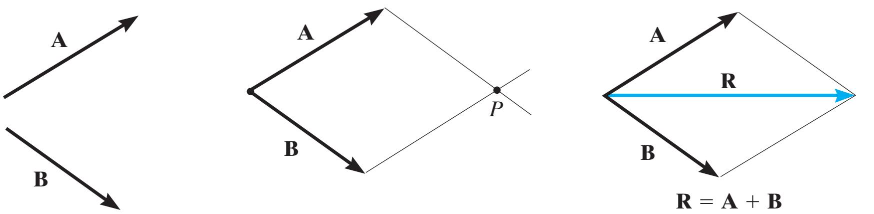
Scalar multiplication and division

Fig. 2–2

Multiplication and Division of a Vector by a Scalar. If a vector is multiplied by a positive scalar, its magnitude is increased by that amount. Multiplying by a negative scalar will also change the directional sense of the vector. Graphic examples of these operations are shown in Fig. 2–2.

Vector Addition. When adding two vectors together it is important to account for both their magnitudes and their directions. To do this we must use the ***parallelogram law of addition***. To illustrate, the two ***component vectors*** **A** and **B** in Fig. 2–3*a* are added to form a ***resultant vector*** **R** = **A** + **B** using the following procedure:

- First join the tails of the components at a point to make them concurrent, Fig. 2–3*b*.
- From the head of **B**, draw a line parallel to **A**. Draw another line from the head of **A** that is parallel to **B**. These two lines intersect at point *P* to form the adjacent sides of a parallelogram.
- The diagonal of this parallelogram that extends to *P* forms **R**, which then represents the resultant vector **R** = **A** + **B**, Fig. 2–3*c*.



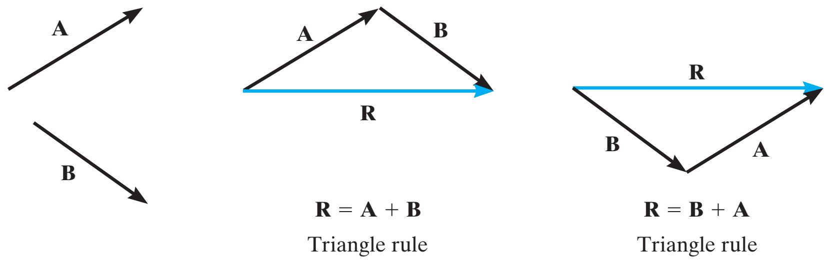
R = **A** + **B**

Parallelogram law

(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 2–3

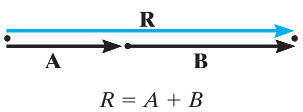
We can also add **B** to **A**, Fig. 2–4*a*, using the ***triangle rule***, which is a special case of the parallelogram law, whereby vector **B** is added to vector **A** in a "head-to-tail" fashion, i.e., by connecting the head of **A** to the tail of **B**, Fig. 2–4*b*. The resultant **R** extends from the tail of **A** to the head of **B**. In a similar manner, **R** can also be obtained by adding **A** to **B**, Fig. 2–4*c*. By comparison, it is seen that vector addition is commutative; in other words, the vectors can be added in either order, i.e., **R** = **A** + **B** = **B** + **A**.



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 2–4

As a special case, if the two vectors **A** and **B** are ***collinear***, i.e., both have the same line of action, the parallelogram law reduces to an *algebraic* or *scalar addition* $R = A + B$, as shown in Fig. 2–5.



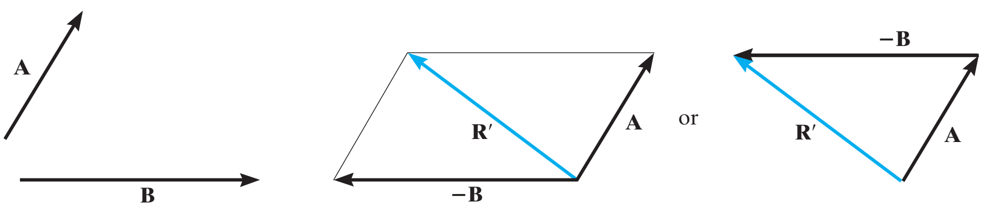
Addition of collinear vectors

Fig. 2–5

Vector Subtraction. The resultant of the *difference* between two vectors **A** and **B** of the same type may be expressed as

$$\mathbf{R}' = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{A} + (-\mathbf{B})$$

This vector sum is shown graphically in Fig. 2–6. Subtraction is therefore defined as a special case of addition, so the rules of vector addition also apply to vector subtraction.



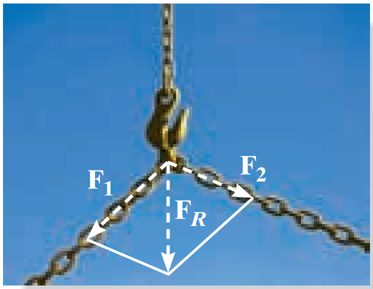
Parallelogram law

Triangle construction

Vector subtraction

Fig. 2–6

2.3 Vector Addition of Forces



The parallelogram law must be used to determine the resultant of the two forces acting on the hook. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Experimental evidence has shown that a force is a vector quantity since it has a specified magnitude, direction, and sense and it adds according to the parallelogram law. Two common problems in statics involve either finding the resultant force, knowing its components, or resolving a known force into two components. We will now describe how each of these problems is solved using the parallelogram law.

Finding a Resultant Force. The two component forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ acting on the pin in Fig. 2–7*a* can be added together to form the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$, as shown in Fig. 2–7*b*. From this construction, or using the triangle rule, Fig. 2–7*c*, we can apply the law of cosines or the law of sines to the triangle in order to obtain the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction.

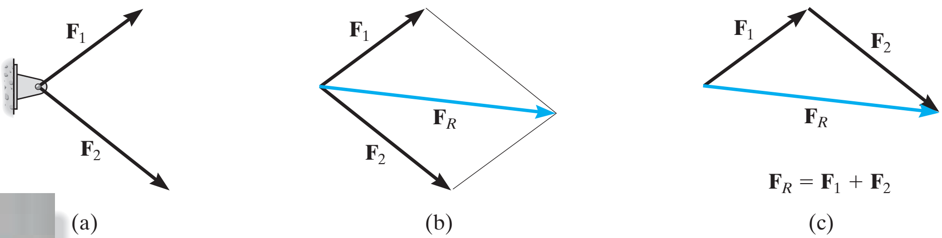
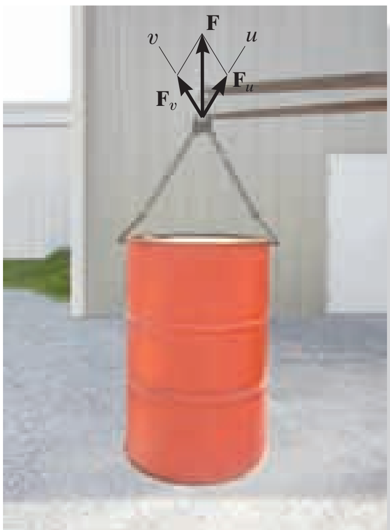


Fig. 2–7



Using the parallelogram law the supporting force $\mathbf{F}$ can be resolved into components acting along the u and v axes. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Finding the Components of a Force. Sometimes it is necessary to resolve a force into two *components* in order to study its pulling or pushing effect in two specific directions. For example, in Fig. 2–8*a*, $\mathbf{F}$ is to be resolved into two components along the two members, defined by the u and v axes. In order to determine the magnitude of each component, a parallelogram is constructed first, by drawing lines starting from the tip of $\mathbf{F}$, one line parallel to u, and the other line parallel to v. These lines then intersect with the v and u axes, forming a parallelogram. The force components $\mathbf{F}_u$ and $\mathbf{F}_v$ are then established by simply joining the tail of $\mathbf{F}$ to the intersection points on the u and v axes, Fig. 2–8*b*. This parallelogram can then be reduced to a triangle, which represents the triangle rule, Fig. 2–8*c*. From this, the law of sines can then be applied to determine the unknown magnitudes of the components.

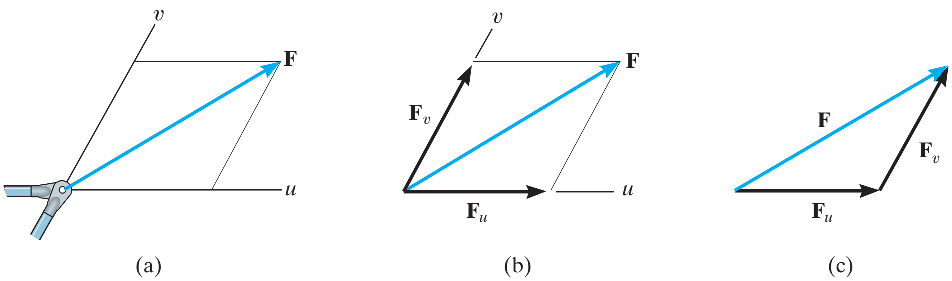


Fig. 2–8

Addition of Several Forces. If more than two forces are to be added, successive applications of the parallelogram law can be carried out in order to obtain the resultant force. For example, if three forces $\mathbf{F}_1, \mathbf{F}_2, \mathbf{F}_3$ act at a point O, Fig. 2–9, the resultant of any two of the forces is found, say, $\mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$—and then this resultant is added to the third force, yielding the resultant of all three forces; i.e., $\mathbf{F}_R = (\mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2) + \mathbf{F}_3$. Using the parallelogram law to add more than two forces, as shown here, often requires extensive geometric and trigonometric calculation to determine the numerical values for the magnitude and direction of the resultant. Instead, problems of this type are easily solved by using the "rectangular-component method," which is explained in Sec. 2.4.

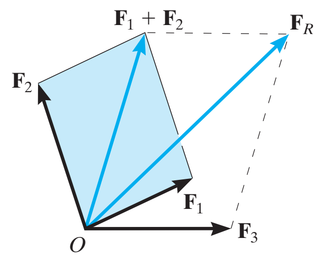
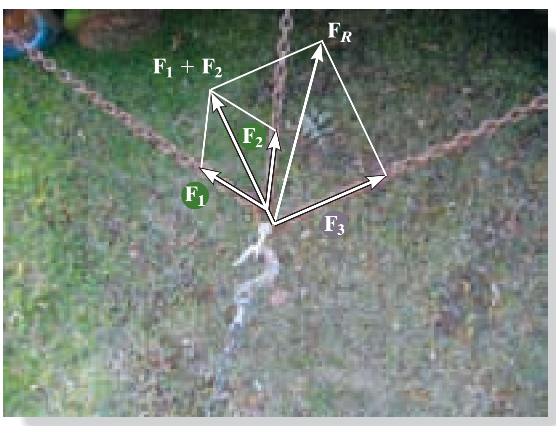


Fig. 2–9



The resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ on the hook requires the addition of $\mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$, then this resultant is added to $\mathbf{F}_3$. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Important Points

- A scalar is a positive or negative number.
- A vector is a quantity that has a magnitude, direction, and sense.
- Multiplication or division of a vector by a scalar will change the magnitude of the vector. The sense of the vector will change if the scalar is negative.
- As a special case, if the vectors are collinear, the resultant is formed by an algebraic or scalar addition.

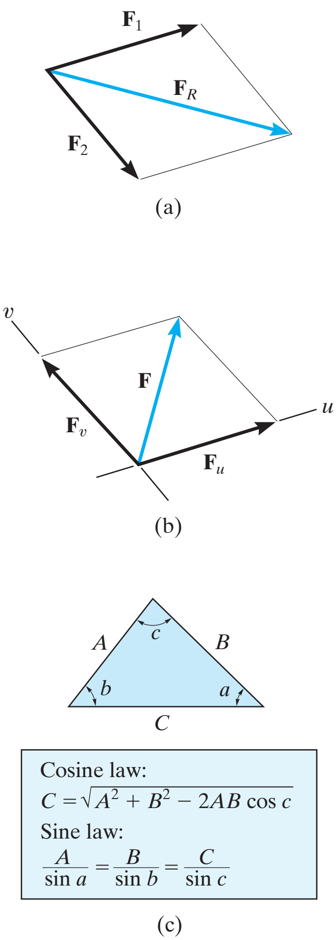


Fig. 2–10

Procedure for Analysis

Problems that involve the addition of two forces can be solved as follows:

Parallelogram Law.

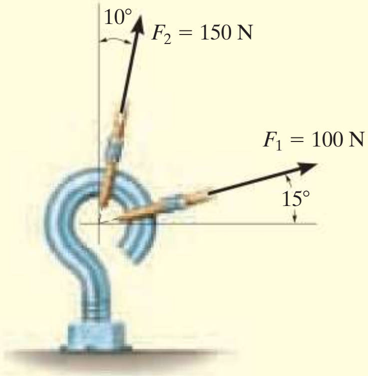
- Two "component" forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ in Fig. 2–10*a* add according to the parallelogram law, yielding a *resultant* force $\mathbf{F}_R$ that forms the diagonal of the parallelogram.
- If a force $\mathbf{F}$ is to be resolved into *components* along two axes u and v, Fig. 2–10*b*, then start at the head of force $\mathbf{F}$ and construct lines parallel to the axes, thereby forming the parallelogram. The sides of the parallelogram represent the components, $\mathbf{F}_u$ and $\mathbf{F}_v$.
- Label all the known and unknown force magnitudes and the angles on the sketch and identify the two unknowns as the magnitude and direction of $\mathbf{F}_R$, or the magnitudes of its components.

Trigonometry.

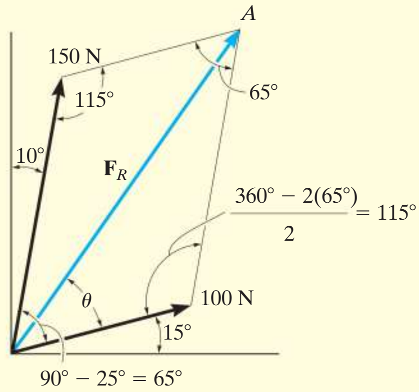
- Redraw a half portion of the parallelogram to illustrate the triangular head-to-tail addition of the components.
- From this triangle, the magnitude of the resultant force can be determined using the law of cosines, and its direction is determined from the law of sines. The magnitudes of two force components are determined from the law of sines. The formulas are given in Fig. 2–10*c*.

EXAMPLE 2.1

The screw eye in Fig. 2–11*a* is subjected to two forces, $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$. Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant force.



(a)

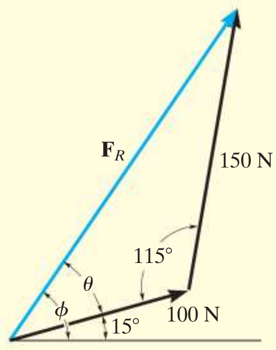


(b)

SOLUTION

Parallelogram Law. The parallelogram is formed by drawing a line from the head of $\mathbf{F}_1$ that is parallel to $\mathbf{F}_2$, and another line from the head of $\mathbf{F}_2$ that is parallel to $\mathbf{F}_1$. The resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ extends to where these lines intersect at point A, Fig. 2–11*b*. The two unknowns are the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_R$ and the angle θ (theta).

Trigonometry. From the parallelogram, the vector triangle is constructed, Fig. 2–11*c*. Using the law of cosines



(c)

Fig. 2–11

$$F_R = \sqrt{(100\text{ N})^2 + (150\text{ N})^2 - 2(100\text{ N})(150\text{ N})\cos 115°}$$
$$= \sqrt{10\,000 + 22\,500 - 30\,000(-0.4226)} = 212.6\text{ N}$$
$$= 213\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Applying the law of sines to determine θ,

$$\frac{150\text{ N}}{\sin\theta} = \frac{212.6\text{ N}}{\sin 115°} \qquad \sin\theta = \frac{150\text{ N}}{212.6\text{ N}}(\sin 115°)$$
$$\theta = 39.8°$$

Thus, the direction ϕ (phi) of $\mathbf{F}_R$, measured from the horizontal, is

$$\phi = 39.8° + 15.0° = 54.8° \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

NOTE: The results seem reasonable, since Fig. 2–11*b* shows $\mathbf{F}_R$ to have a magnitude larger than its components and a direction that is between them.

2

EXAMPLE 2.2

Resolve the horizontal 600-lb force in Fig. 2–12*a* into components acting along the *u* and *v* axes and determine the magnitudes of these components.

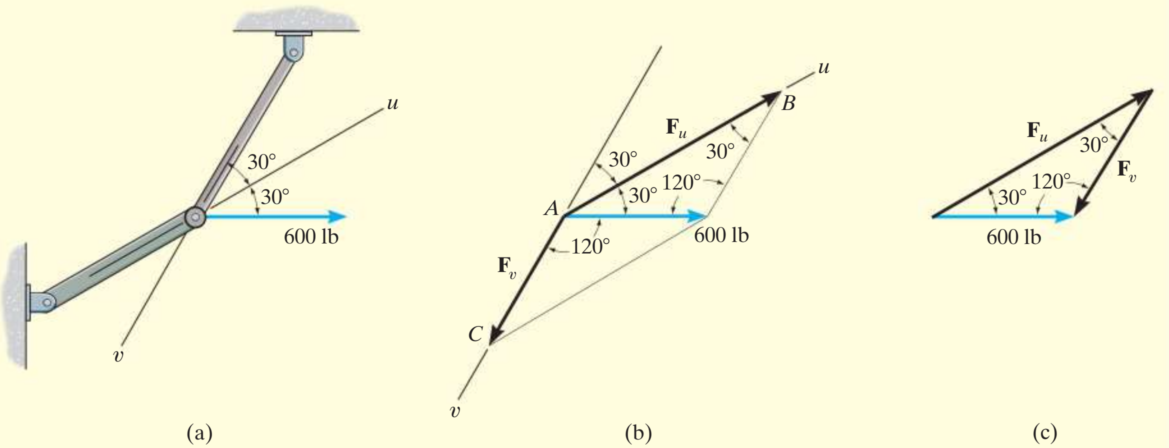


Fig. 2–12

SOLUTION

The parallelogram is constructed by extending a line from the *head* of the 600-lb force parallel to the *v* axis until it intersects the *u* axis at point *B*, Fig. 2–12*b*. The arrow from *A* to *B* represents $\mathbf{F}_u$. Similarly, the line extended from the head of the 600-lb force drawn parallel to the *u* axis intersects the *v* axis at point *C*, which gives $\mathbf{F}_v$.

The vector addition using the triangle rule is shown in Fig. 2–12*c*. The two unknowns are the magnitudes of $\mathbf{F}_u$ and $\mathbf{F}_v$. Applying the law of sines,

$$\frac{F_u}{\sin 120^\circ} = \frac{600 \text{ lb}}{\sin 30^\circ}$$

$$F_u = 1039 \text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$\frac{F_v}{\sin 30^\circ} = \frac{600 \text{ lb}}{\sin 30^\circ}$$

$$F_v = 600 \text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

NOTE: The result for F_u shows that sometimes a component can have a greater magnitude than the resultant.

EXAMPLE 2.3

Determine the magnitude of the component force **F** in Fig. 2–13*a* and the magnitude of the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ if $\mathbf{F}_R$ is directed along the positive *y* axis.

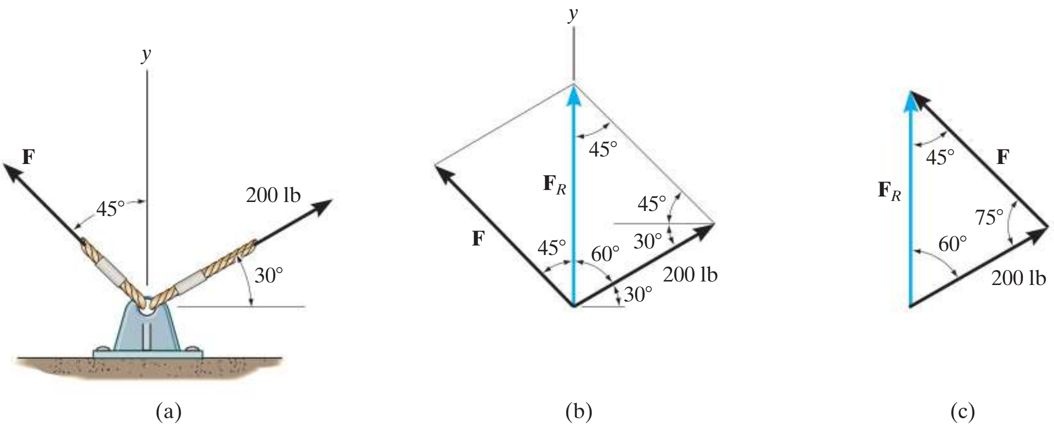


Fig. 2–13

SOLUTION

The parallelogram law of addition is shown in Fig. 2–13*b*, and the triangle rule is shown in Fig. 2–13*c*. The magnitudes of $\mathbf{F}_R$ and **F** are the two unknowns. They can be determined by applying the law of sines.

$$\frac{F}{\sin 60^\circ} = \frac{200 \text{ lb}}{\sin 45^\circ}$$

$$F = 245 \text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$\frac{F_R}{\sin 75^\circ} = \frac{200 \text{ lb}}{\sin 45^\circ}$$

$$F_R = 273 \text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

EXAMPLE 2.4

It is required that the resultant force acting on the eyebolt in Fig. 2–14*a* be directed along the positive x axis and that $\mathbf{F}_2$ have a *minimum* magnitude. Determine this magnitude, the angle θ, and the corresponding resultant force.

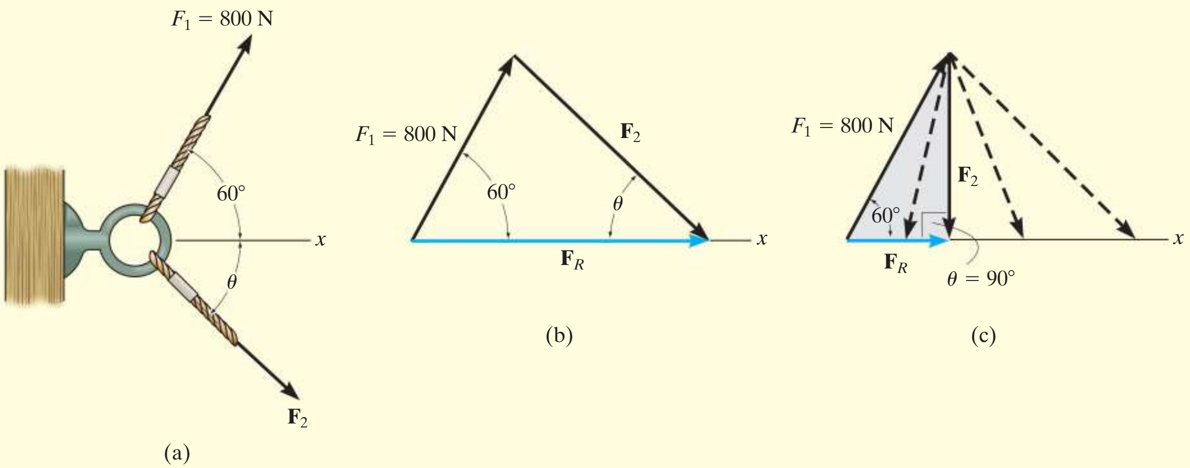


Fig. 2–14

SOLUTION

The triangle rule for $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$ is shown in Fig. 2–14*b*. Since the magnitudes (lengths) of $\mathbf{F}_R$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ are not specified, then $\mathbf{F}_2$ can actually be any vector that has its head touching the line of action of $\mathbf{F}_R$, Fig. 2–14*c*. However, as shown, the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_2$ is a *minimum* or the shortest length when its line of action is *perpendicular* to the line of action of $\mathbf{F}_R$, that is, when

$$\theta = 90° \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Since the vector addition now forms the shaded right triangle, the two unknown magnitudes can be obtained by trigonometry.

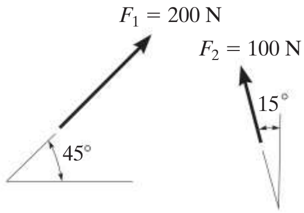
$$F_R = (800\text{ N})\cos 60° = 400\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$
$$F_2 = (800\text{ N})\sin 60° = 693\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

It is strongly suggested that you test yourself on the solutions to these examples, by covering them over and then trying to draw the parallelogram law, and thinking about how the sine and cosine laws are used to determine the unknowns. Then before solving any of the problems, try to solve the Preliminary Problems and some of the Fundamental Problems given on the next pages. The solutions and answers to these are given in the back of the book. Doing this throughout the book will help immensely in developing your problem-solving skills.

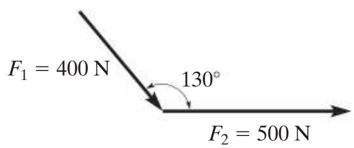
PRELIMINARY PROBLEMS

Partial solutions and answers to all Preliminary Problems are given in the back of the book.

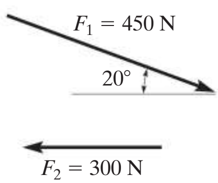
P2–1. In each case, construct the parallelogram law to show $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$. Then establish the triangle rule, where $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$. Label all known and unknown sides and internal angles.



(a)



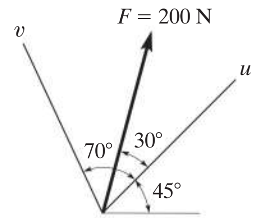
(b)



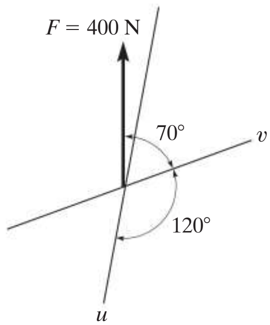
(c)

Prob. P2–1

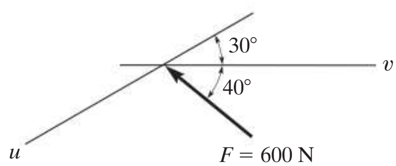
P2–2. In each case, show how to resolve the force **F** into components acting along the u and v axes using the parallelogram law. Then establish the triangle rule to show $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_u + \mathbf{F}_v$. Label all known and unknown sides and interior angles.



(a)



(b)



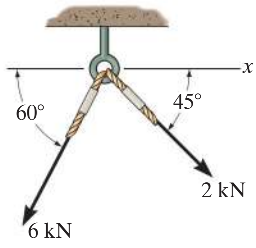
(c)

Prob. P2–2

FUNDAMENTAL PROBLEMS

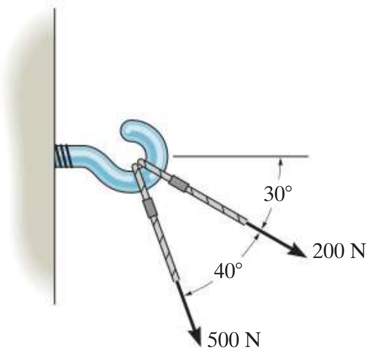
Partial solutions and answers to all Fundamental Problems are given in the back of the book.

F2–1. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force acting on the screw eye and its direction measured clockwise from the x axis.



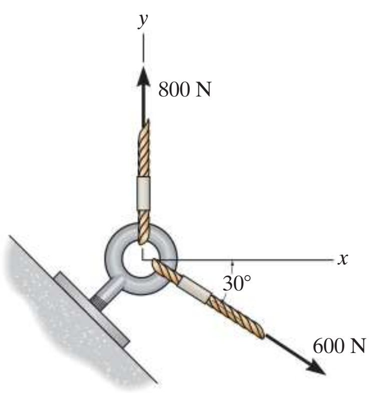
Prob. F2–1

F2–2. Two forces act on the hook. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force.



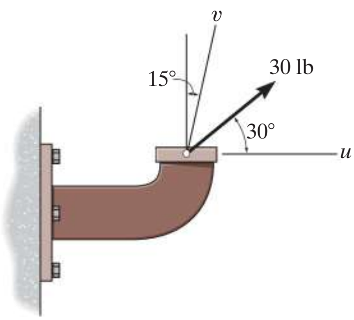
Prob. F2–2

F2–3. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



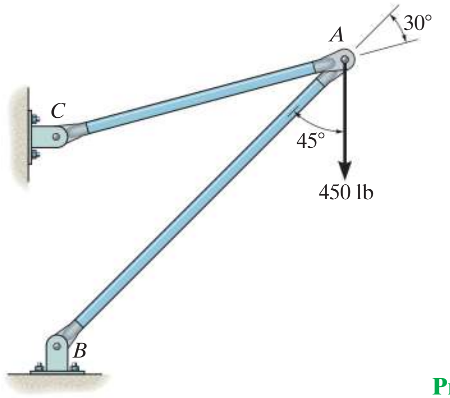
Prob. F2–3

F2–4. Resolve the 30-lb force into components along the u and v axes, and determine the magnitude of each of these components.



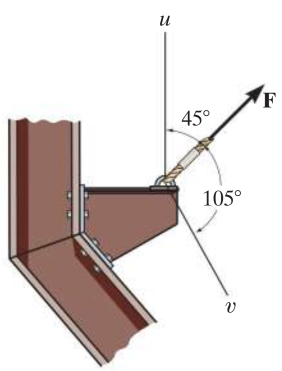
Prob. F2–4

F2–5. The force $F = 450$ lb acts on the frame. Resolve this force into components acting along members AB and AC, and determine the magnitude of each component.



Prob. F2–5

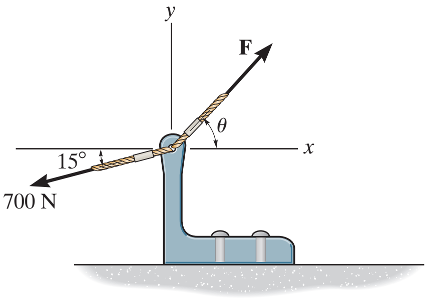
F2–6. If force **F** is to have a component along the u axis of $F_u = 6$ kN, determine the magnitude of **F** and the magnitude of its component $\mathbf{F}_v$ along the v axis.



Prob. F2–6

2–1. If $\theta = 60°$ and $F = 450$ N, determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.

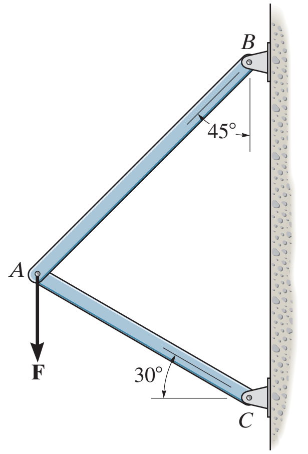
2–2. If the magnitude of the resultant force is to be 500 N, directed along the positive y axis, determine the magnitude of force **F** and its direction θ.



Probs. 2–1/2

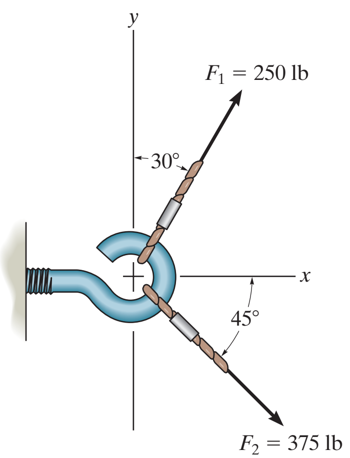
***2–4.** The vertical force **F** acts downward at A on the two-membered frame. Determine the magnitudes of the two components of **F** directed along the axes of AB and AC. Set $F = 500$ N.

2–5. Solve Prob. 2–4 with $F = 350$ lb.



Probs. 2–4/5

2–3. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$ and its direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.

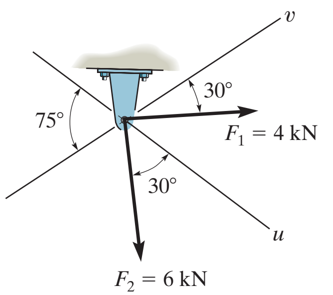


Prob. 2–3

2–6. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$ and its direction, measured clockwise from the positive u axis.

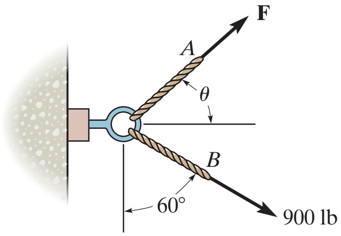
2–7. Resolve the force $\mathbf{F}_1$ into components acting along the u and v axes and determine the magnitudes of the components.

***2–8.** Resolve the force $\mathbf{F}_2$ into components acting along the u and v axes and determine the magnitudes of the components.



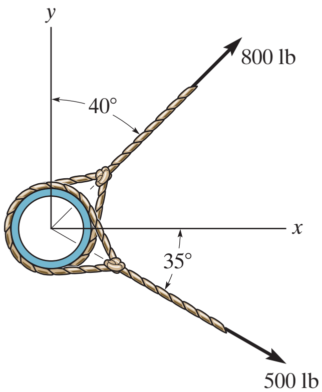
Probs. 2–6/7/8

2–9. If the resultant force acting on the support is to be 1200 lb, directed horizontally to the right, determine the force **F** in rope A and the corresponding angle θ.



Prob. 2–9

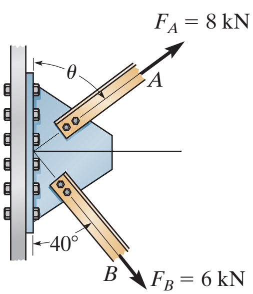
2–10. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



Prob. 2–10

2–11. The plate is subjected to the two forces at A and B as shown. If $\theta = 60°$, determine the magnitude of the resultant of these two forces and its direction measured clockwise from the horizontal.

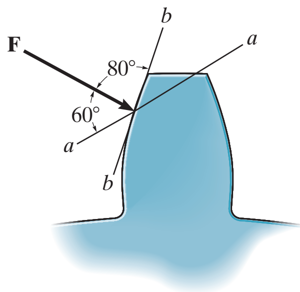
***2–12.** Determine the angle θ for connecting member A to the plate so that the resultant force of $\mathbf{F}_A$ and $\mathbf{F}_B$ is directed horizontally to the right. Also, what is the magnitude of the resultant force?



Probs. 2–11/12

2–13. The force acting on the gear tooth is $F = 20$ lb. Resolve this force into two components acting along the lines aa and bb.

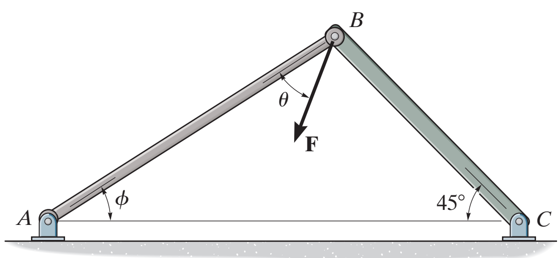
2–14. The component of force **F** acting along line aa is required to be 30 lb. Determine the magnitude of **F** and its component along line bb.



Probs. 2–13/14

2–15. Force **F** acts on the frame such that its component acting along member AB is 650 lb, directed from B towards A, and the component acting along member BC is 500 lb, directed from B towards C. Determine the magnitude of **F** and its direction θ. Set $\phi = 60°$.

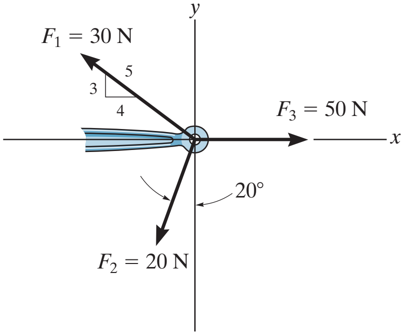
***2–16.** Force **F** acts on the frame such that its component acting along member AB is 650 lb, directed from B towards A. Determine the required angle ϕ ($0° \leq \phi \leq 45°$) and the component acting along member BC. Set $F = 850$ lb and $\theta = 30°$.



Probs. 2–15/16

2–17. Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2 + \mathbf{F}_3$ of the three forces by first finding the resultant $\mathbf{F}' = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$ and then forming $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}' + \mathbf{F}_3$.

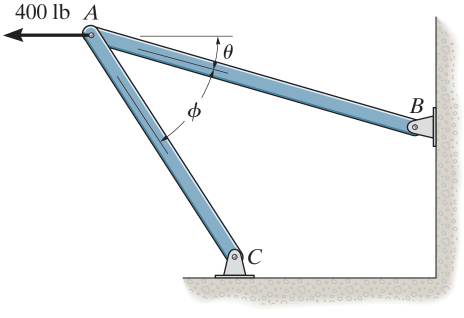
2–18. Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2 + \mathbf{F}_3$ of the three forces by first finding the resultant $\mathbf{F}' = \mathbf{F}_2 + \mathbf{F}_3$ and then forming $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}' + \mathbf{F}_1$.



Probs. 2–17/18

2–19. Determine the design angle θ ($0° \leq \theta \leq 90°$) for strut AB so that the 400-lb horizontal force has a component of 500 lb directed from A towards C. What is the component of force acting along member AB? Take $\phi = 40°$.

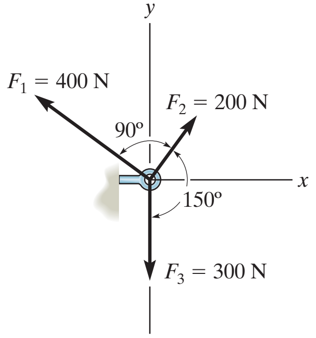
***2–20.** Determine the design angle ϕ ($0° \leq \phi \leq 90°$) between struts AB and AC so that the 400-lb horizontal force has a component of 600 lb which acts up to the left, in the same direction as from B towards A. Take $\theta = 30°$.



Probs. 2–19/20

2–21. Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant force, $\mathbf{F}_R$ measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis. Solve the problem by first finding the resultant $\mathbf{F}' = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$ and then forming $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}' + \mathbf{F}_3$.

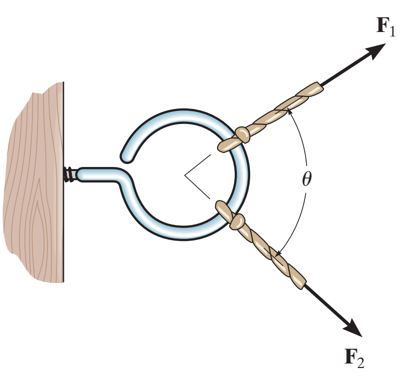
2–22. Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant force, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis. Solve l by first finding the resultant $\mathbf{F}' = \mathbf{F}_2 + \mathbf{F}_3$ and then forming $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}' + \mathbf{F}_1$.



Probs. 2–21/22

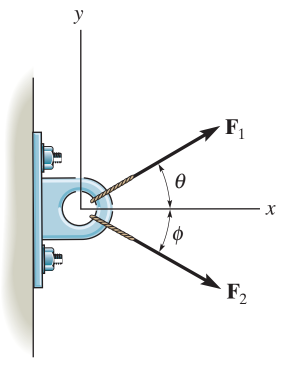
2–23. Two forces act on the screw eye. If $F_1 = 400$ N and $F_2 = 600$ N, determine the angle θ ($0° \leq \theta \leq 180°$) between them, so that the resultant force has a magnitude of $F_R = 800$ N.

***2–24.** Two forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ act on the screw eye. If their lines of action are at an angle θ apart and the magnitude of each force is $F_1 = F_2 = F$, determine the magnitude of the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ and the angle between $\mathbf{F}_R$ and $\mathbf{F}_1$.



Probs. 2–23/24

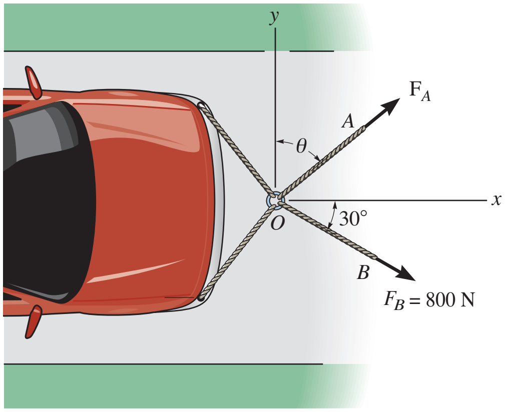
2–25. If $F_1 = 30$ lb and $F_2 = 40$ lb, determine the angles θ and ϕ so that the resultant force is directed along the positive x axis and has a magnitude of $F_R = 60$ lb.



Prob. 2–25

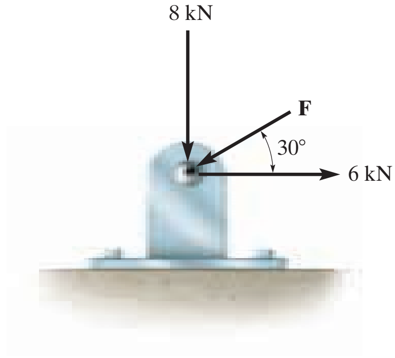
2–26. Determine the magnitude and direction θ of $\mathbf{F}_A$ so that the resultant force is directed along the positive x axis and has a magnitude of 1250 N.

2–27. Determine the magnitude and direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis, of the resultant force acting on the ring at O, if $F_A = 750$ N and $\theta = 45°$.



Probs. 2–26/27

***2–28.** Determine the magnitude of force $\mathbf{F}$ so that the resultant $\mathbf{F}_R$ of the three forces is as small as possible. What is the minimum magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_R$?

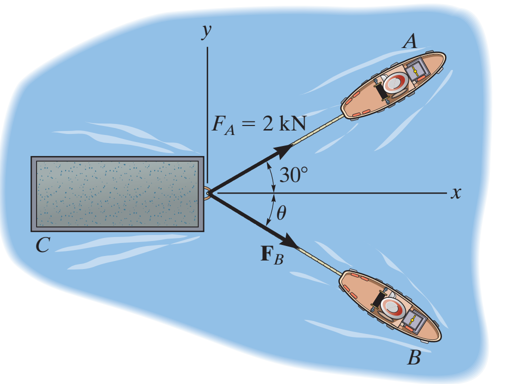


Prob. 2–28

2–29. If the resultant force of the two tugboats is 3 kN, directed along the positive x axis, determine the required magnitude of force $\mathbf{F}_B$ and its direction θ.

2–30. If $\mathbf{F}_B = 3$ kN and $\theta = 45°$, determine the magnitude of the resultant force of the two tugboats and its direction measured clockwise form the positive x axis.

2–31. If the resultant force of the two tugboats is required to be directed towards the positive x axis, and $\mathbf{F}_B$ is to be a minimum, determine the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_R$ and $\mathbf{F}_B$ and the angle θ.



Probs. 2–29/30/31

2.4 Addition of a System of Coplanar Forces

When a force is resolved into two components along the x and y axes, the components are then called ***rectangular components***. For analytical work we can represent these components in one of two ways, using either scalar or Cartesian vector notation.

Scalar Notation. The rectangular components of force $\mathbf{F}$ shown in Fig. 2–15*a* are found using the parallelogram law, so that $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}_x + \mathbf{F}_y$. Because these components form a right triangle, they can be determined from

$$F_x = F\cos\theta \qquad \text{and} \qquad F_y = F\sin\theta$$

Instead of using the angle θ, however, the direction of $\mathbf{F}$ can also be defined using a small "slope" triangle, as in the example shown in Fig. 2–15*b*. Since this triangle and the larger shaded triangle are similar, the proportional length of the sides gives

$$\frac{F_x}{F} = \frac{a}{c}$$

or

$$F_x = F\left(\frac{a}{c}\right)$$

and

$$\frac{F_y}{F} = \frac{b}{c}$$

or

$$F_y = -F\left(\frac{b}{c}\right)$$

Here the y component is a *negative scalar* since $\mathbf{F}_y$ is directed along the negative y axis.

It is important to keep in mind that this positive and negative scalar notation is to be used only for computational purposes, not for graphical representations in figures. Throughout the book, the *head of a vector arrow* in *any figure* indicates the sense of the vector *graphically*; algebraic signs are not used for this purpose. Thus, the vectors in Figs. 2–15*a* and 2–15*b* are designated by using boldface (vector) notation.* Whenever italic symbols are written near vector arrows in figures, they indicate the *magnitude* of the vector, which is *always* a *positive* quantity.

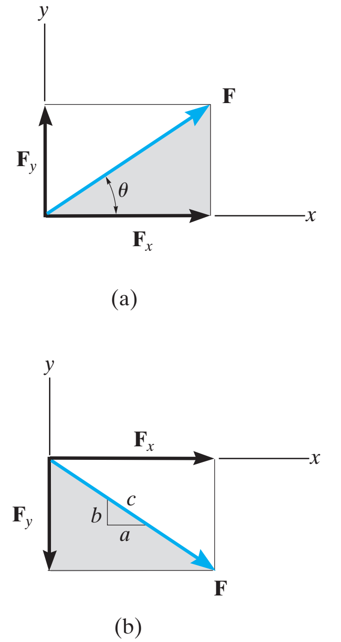


Fig. 2–15

*Negative signs are used only in figures with boldface notation when showing equal but opposite pairs of vectors, as in Fig. 2–2.

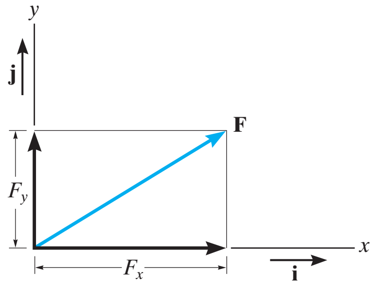


Fig. 2–16

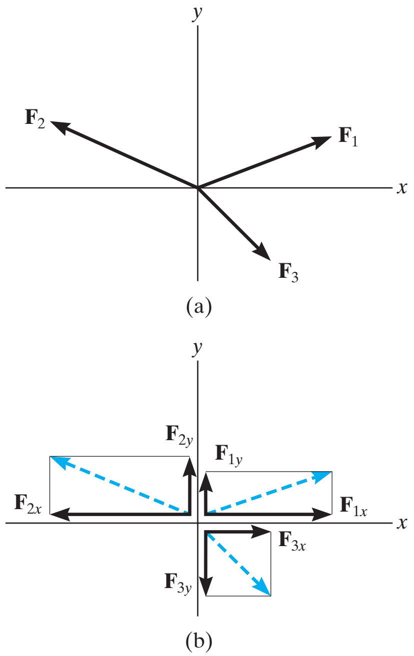
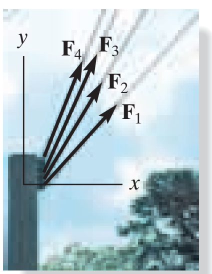


Fig. 2–17



The resultant force of the four cable forces acting on the post can be determined by adding algebraically the separate x and y components of each cable force. This resultant $\mathbf{F}_R$ produces the *same pulling effect* on the post as all four cables. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Cartesian Vector Notation. It is also possible to represent the x and y components of a force in terms of Cartesian unit vectors $\mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{j}$. They are called unit vectors because they have a dimensionless magnitude of 1, and so they can be used to designate the *directions* of the x and y axes, respectively, Fig. 2–16.*

Since the *magnitude* of each component of $\mathbf{F}$ is *always a positive quantity*, which is represented by the (positive) scalars F_x and F_y, then we can express $\mathbf{F}$ as a ***Cartesian vector***,

$$\mathbf{F} = F_x\,\mathbf{i} + F_y\,\mathbf{j}$$

Coplanar Force Resultants. We can use either of the two methods just described to determine the resultant of several ***coplanar forces***, i.e., forces that all lie in the same plane. To do this, each force is first resolved into its x and y components, and then the respective components are added using *scalar algebra* since they are collinear. The resultant force is then formed by adding the resultant components using the parallelogram law. For example, consider the three concurrent forces in Fig. 2–17*a*, which have x and y components shown in Fig. 2–17*b*. Using Cartesian vector notation, each force is first represented as a Cartesian vector, i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{F}_1 &= F_{1x}\,\mathbf{i} + F_{1y}\,\mathbf{j}\\
\mathbf{F}_2 &= -F_{2x}\,\mathbf{i} + F_{2y}\,\mathbf{j}\\
\mathbf{F}_3 &= F_{3x}\,\mathbf{i} - F_{3y}\,\mathbf{j}
\end{aligned}$$

The vector resultant is therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{F}_R &= \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2 + \mathbf{F}_3\\
&= F_{1x}\,\mathbf{i} + F_{1y}\,\mathbf{j} - F_{2x}\,\mathbf{i} + F_{2y}\,\mathbf{j} + F_{3x}\,\mathbf{i} - F_{3y}\,\mathbf{j}\\
&= (F_{1x} - F_{2x} + F_{3x})\mathbf{i} + (F_{1y} + F_{2y} - F_{3y})\mathbf{j}\\
&= (F_{Rx})\mathbf{i} + (F_{Ry})\mathbf{j}
\end{aligned}$$

If *scalar notation* is used, then indicating the positive directions of components along the x and y axes with symbolic arrows, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\xrightarrow{+} & (F_R)_x &= F_{1x} - F_{2x} + F_{3x}\\
&+\uparrow & (F_R)_y &= F_{1y} + F_{2y} - F_{3y}
\end{aligned}$$

These are the *same* results as the $\mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{j}$ components of $\mathbf{F}_R$ determined above.

*For handwritten work, unit vectors are usually indicated using a circumflex, e.g., $\hat{\imath}$ and $\hat{\jmath}$. Also, realize that F_x and F_y in Fig. 2–16 represent the *magnitudes* of the components, which are *always positive scalars*. The directions are defined by $\mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{j}$. If instead we used scalar notation, then F_x and F_y could be positive or negative scalars, since they would account for *both* the magnitude and direction of the components.

We can represent the components of the resultant force of any number of coplanar forces symbolically by the algebraic sum of the x and y components of all the forces, i.e.,

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}(F_R)_x &= \Sigma F_x \\ (F_R)_y &= \Sigma F_y\end{aligned}} \tag{2–1}$$

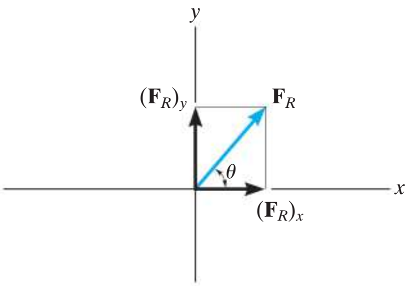
Once these components are determined, they may be sketched along the x and y axes with their proper sense of direction, and the resultant force can be determined from vector addition, as shown in Fig. 2–17c. From this sketch, the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_R$ is then found from the Pythagorean theorem; that is,

$$F_R = \sqrt{(F_R)_x^2 + (F_R)_y^2}$$

Also, the angle θ, which specifies the direction of the resultant force, is determined from trigonometry:

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left|\frac{(F_R)_y}{(F_R)_x}\right|$$

The above concepts are illustrated numerically in the examples which follow.

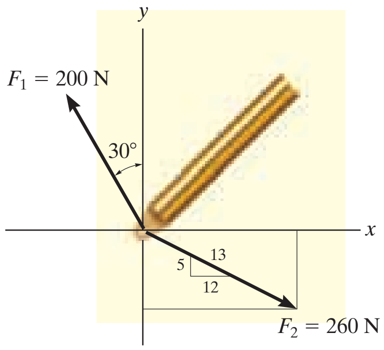


(c)

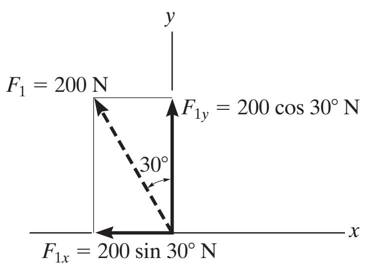
Fig. 2–17 (cont.)

Important Points

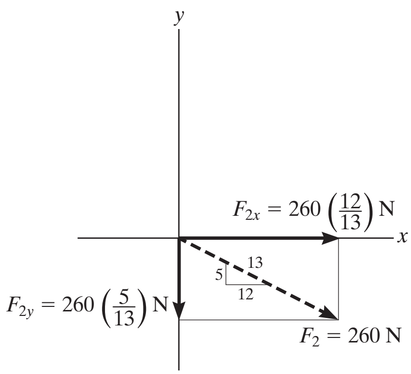
- The resultant of several coplanar forces can easily be determined if an x, y coordinate system is established and the forces are resolved along the axes.
- The direction of each force is specified by the angle its line of action makes with one of the axes, or by a slope triangle.
- The orientation of the x and y axes is arbitrary, and their positive direction can be specified by the Cartesian unit vectors $\mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{j}$.
- The x and y components of the *resultant force* are simply the algebraic addition of the components of all the coplanar forces.
- The magnitude of the resultant force is determined from the Pythagorean theorem, and when the resultant components are sketched on the x and y axes, Fig. 2–17c, the direction θ can be determined from trigonometry.



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 2–18

Determine the x and y components of $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ acting on the boom shown in Fig. 2–18*a*. Express each force as a Cartesian vector.

SOLUTION

Scalar Notation. By the parallelogram law, $\mathbf{F}_1$ is resolved into x and y components, Fig. 2–18*b*. Since $\mathbf{F}_{1x}$ acts in the $-x$ direction, and $\mathbf{F}_{1y}$ acts in the $+y$ direction, we have

$$F_{1x} = -200 \sin 30° \text{ N} = -100 \text{ N} = 100 \text{ N} \leftarrow \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$F_{1y} = 200 \cos 30° \text{ N} = 173 \text{ N} = 173 \text{ N} \uparrow \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

The force $\mathbf{F}_2$ is resolved into its x and y components, as shown in Fig. 2–18*c*. Here the *slope* of the line of action for the force is indicated. From this "slope triangle" we could obtain the angle θ, e.g., $\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{5}{12}\right)$, and then proceed to determine the magnitudes of the components in the same manner as for $\mathbf{F}_1$. The easier method, however, consists of using proportional parts of similar triangles, i.e.,

$$\frac{F_{2x}}{260 \text{ N}} = \frac{12}{13} \qquad F_{2x} = 260 \text{ N}\left(\frac{12}{13}\right) = 240 \text{ N}$$

Similarly,

$$F_{2y} = 260 \text{ N}\left(\frac{5}{13}\right) = 100 \text{ N}$$

Notice how the magnitude of the *horizontal component*, $\mathbf{F}_{2x}$, was obtained by multiplying the force magnitude by the ratio of the *horizontal leg* of the slope triangle divided by the hypotenuse; whereas the magnitude of the *vertical component*, F_{2y}, was obtained by multiplying the force magnitude by the ratio of the *vertical leg* divided by the hypotenuse. Hence, using scalar notation to represent these components, we have

$$F_{2x} = 240 \text{ N} = 240 \text{ N} \rightarrow \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$F_{2y} = -100 \text{ N} = 100 \text{ N} \downarrow \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Cartesian Vector Notation. Having determined the magnitudes and directions of the components of each force, we can express each force as a Cartesian vector.

$$\mathbf{F}_1 = \{-100\mathbf{i} + 173\mathbf{j}\} \text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$\mathbf{F}_2 = \{240\mathbf{i} - 100\mathbf{j}\} \text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

EXAMPLE 2.6

The link in Fig. 2–19*a* is subjected to two forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$. Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant force.

SOLUTION I

Scalar Notation. First we resolve each force into its x and y components, Fig. 2–19*b*, then we sum these components algebraically.

$$\overset{+}{\rightarrow} (F_R)_x = \Sigma F_x; \qquad (F_R)_x = 600 \cos 30° \text{ N} - 400 \sin 45° \text{ N}$$
$$= 236.8 \text{ N} \rightarrow$$

$$+\uparrow (F_R)_y = \Sigma F_y; \qquad (F_R)_y = 600 \sin 30° \text{ N} + 400 \cos 45° \text{ N}$$
$$= 582.8 \text{ N} \uparrow$$

The resultant force, shown in Fig. 2–19*c*, has a *magnitude* of

$$F_R = \sqrt{(236.8 \text{ N})^2 + (582.8 \text{ N})^2}$$
$$= 629 \text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

From the vector addition,

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{582.8 \text{ N}}{236.8 \text{ N}}\right) = 67.9° \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

SOLUTION II

Cartesian Vector Notation. From Fig. 2–19*b*, each force is first expressed as a Cartesian vector.

$$\mathbf{F}_1 = \{600 \cos 30° \mathbf{i} + 600 \sin 30° \mathbf{j}\} \text{ N}$$
$$\mathbf{F}_2 = \{-400 \sin 45° \mathbf{i} + 400 \cos 45° \mathbf{j}\} \text{ N}$$

Then,

$$\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2 = (600 \cos 30° \text{ N} - 400 \sin 45° \text{ N})\mathbf{i}$$
$$+ (600 \sin 30° \text{ N} + 400 \cos 45° \text{ N})\mathbf{j}$$
$$= \{236.8\mathbf{i} + 582.8\mathbf{j}\} \text{ N}$$

The magnitude and direction of $\mathbf{F}_R$ are determined in the same manner as before.

NOTE: Comparing the two methods of solution, notice that the use of scalar notation is more efficient since the components can be found *directly*, without first having to express each force as a Cartesian vector before adding the components. Later, however, we will show that Cartesian vector analysis is very beneficial for solving three-dimensional problems.

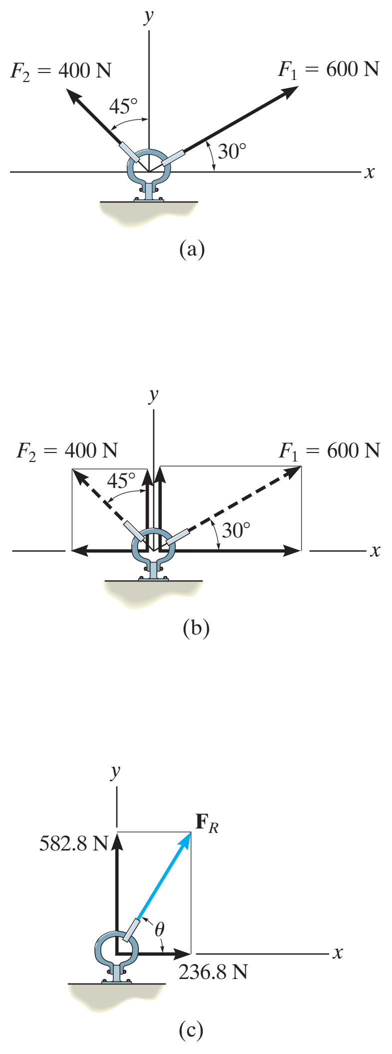
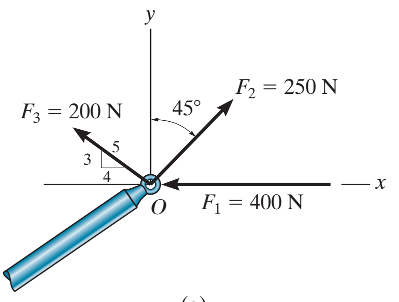


Fig. 2–19

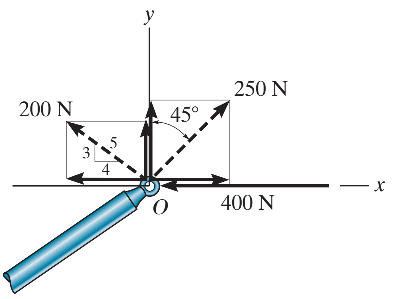
The end of the boom O in Fig. 2–20*a* is subjected to three concurrent and coplanar forces. Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant force.



(a)

SOLUTION

Each force is resolved into its x and y components, Fig. 2–20*b*. Summing the x components, we have



(b)

$$\overset{+}{\rightarrow} (F_R)_x = \Sigma F_x; \qquad (F_R)_x = -400 \text{ N} + 250 \sin 45^\circ \text{ N} - 200\left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right) \text{ N}$$
$$= -383.2 \text{ N} = 383.2 \text{ N} \leftarrow$$

The negative sign indicates that F_{Rx} acts to the left, i.e., in the negative x direction, as noted by the small arrow. Obviously, this occurs because F_1 and F_3 in Fig. 2–20*b* contribute a greater pull to the left than F_2 which pulls to the right. Summing the y components yields

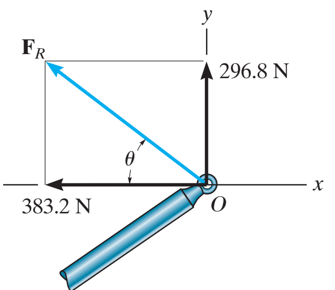
$$+\uparrow (F_R)_y = \Sigma F_y; \qquad (F_R)_y = 250 \cos 45^\circ \text{ N} + 200\left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right) \text{ N}$$
$$= 296.8 \text{ N}\uparrow$$

The resultant force, shown in Fig. 2–20*c*, has a *magnitude* of

$$F_R = \sqrt{(-383.2 \text{ N})^2 + (296.8 \text{ N})^2}$$
$$= 485 \text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

From the vector addition in Fig. 2–20*c*, the direction angle θ is

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{296.8}{383.2}\right) = 37.8^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$



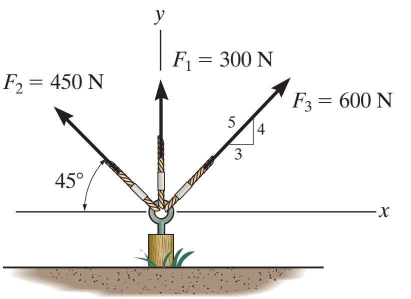
(c)

Fig. 2–20

NOTE: Application of this method is more convenient, compared to using two applications of the parallelogram law, first to add $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ then adding $\mathbf{F}_3$ to this resultant.

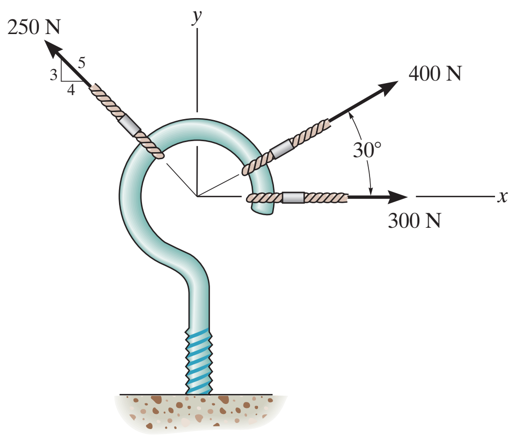
FUNDAMENTAL PROBLEMS

F2–7. Resolve each force acting on the post into its x and y components.



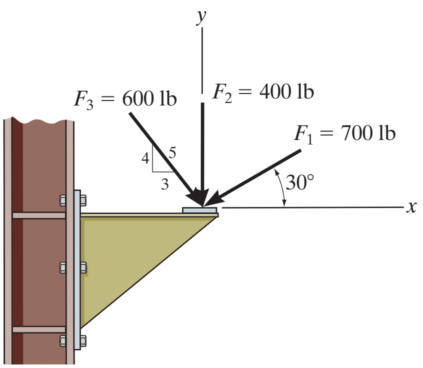
Prob. F2–7

F2–8. Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant force.



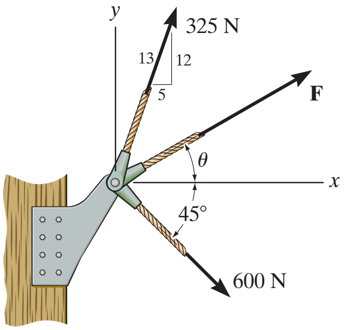
Prob. F2–8

F2–9. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force acting on the corbel and its direction θ measured counterclockwise from the x axis.



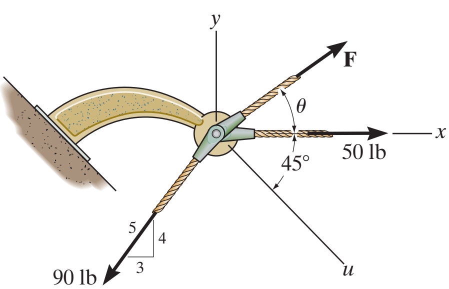
Prob. F2–9

F2–10. If the resultant force acting on the bracket is to be 750 N directed along the positive x axis, determine the magnitude of **F** and its direction θ.



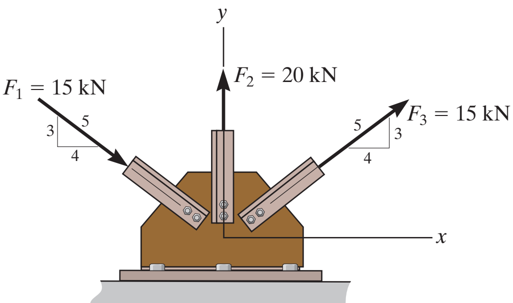
Prob. F2–10

F2–11. If the magnitude of the resultant force acting on the bracket is to be 80 lb directed along the u axis, determine the magnitude of **F** and its direction θ.



Prob. F2–11

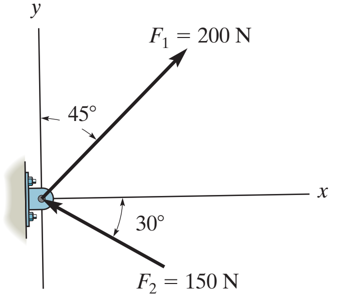
F2–12. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction θ measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



Prob. F2–12

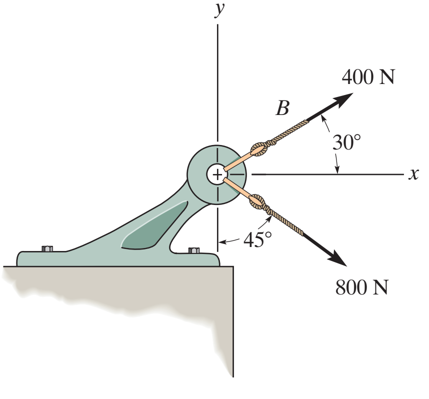
PROBLEMS

*2–32. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



Prob. 2–32

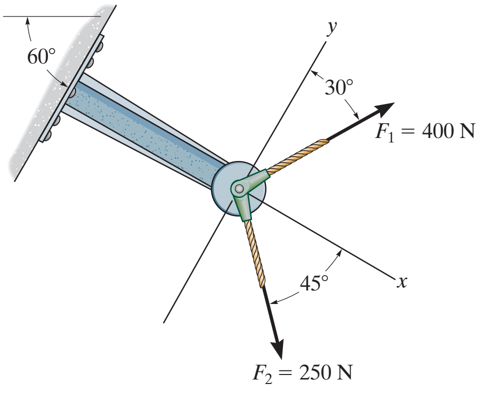
2–33. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction, measured clockwise from the positive x axis.



Prob. 2–33

2–34. Resolve $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ into their x and y components.

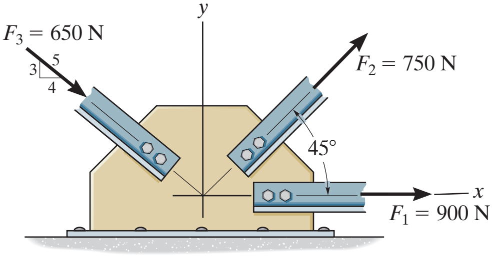
2–35. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



Probs. 2–34/35

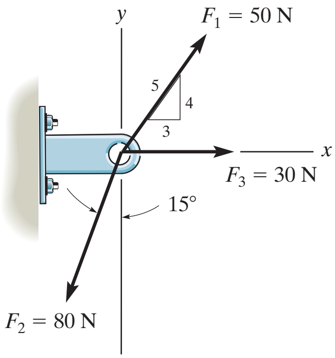
*2–36. Resolve each force acting on the *gusset plate* into its x and y components, and express each force as a Cartesian vector.

2–37. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force acting on the plate and its direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



Probs. 2–36/37

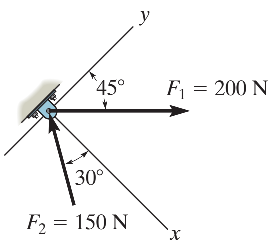
2–38. Express each of the three forces acting on the support in Cartesian vector form and determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction, measured clockwise from positive x axis.



Prob. 2–38

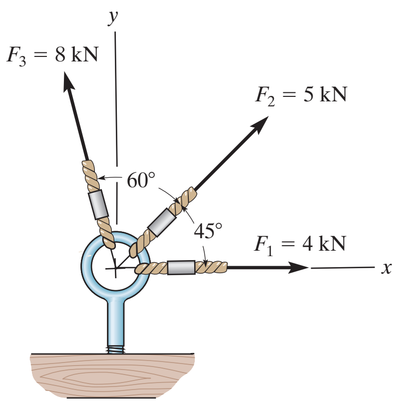
2–39. Determine the x and y components of $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$.

***2–40.** Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



Probs. 2–39/40

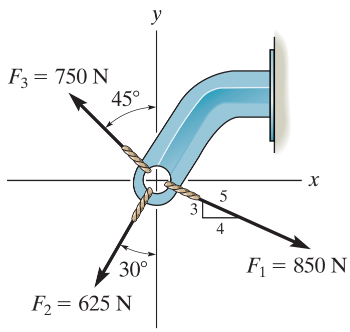
2–41. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



Prob. 2–41

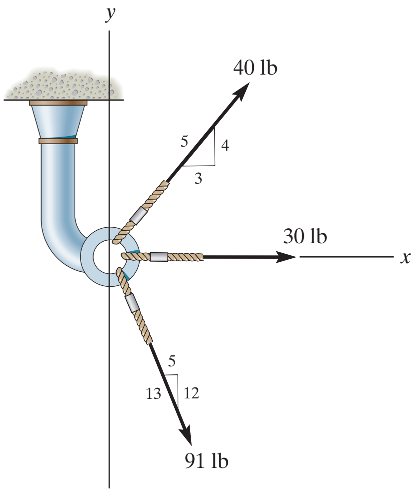
2–42. Express $\mathbf{F}_1$, $\mathbf{F}_2$, and $\mathbf{F}_3$ as Cartesian vectors.

2–43. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



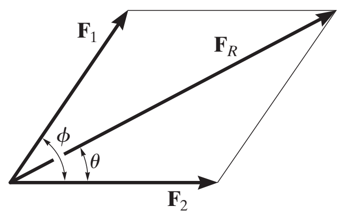
Probs. 2–42/43

***2–44.** Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction, measured clockwise from the positive x axis.



Prob. 2–44

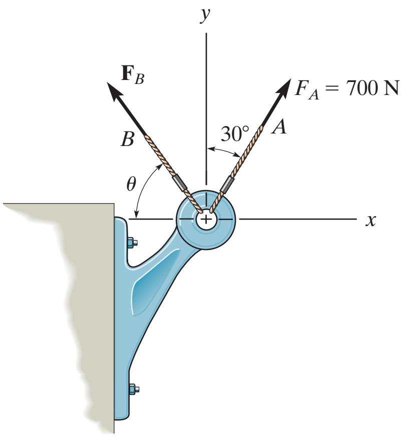
2–45. Determine the magnitude and direction θ of the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$. Express the result in terms of the magnitudes of the components $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ and the angle ϕ.



Prob. 2–45

2–46. Determine the magnitude and orientation θ of $\mathbf{F}_B$ so that the resultant force is directed along the positive y axis and has a magnitude of 1500 N.

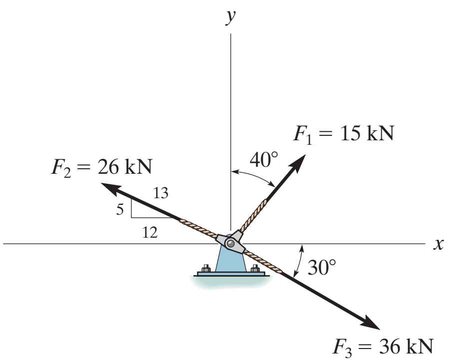
2–47. Determine the magnitude and orientation, measured counterclockwise from the positive y axis, of the resultant force acting on the bracket, if $F_B = 600$ N and $\theta = 20°$.



Probs. 2–46/47

2–50. Express $\mathbf{F}_1$, $\mathbf{F}_2$, and $\mathbf{F}_3$ as Cartesian vectors.

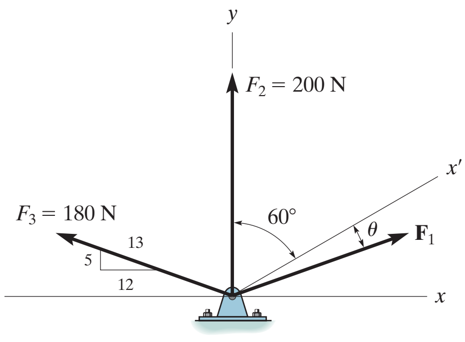
2–51. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



Probs. 2–50/51

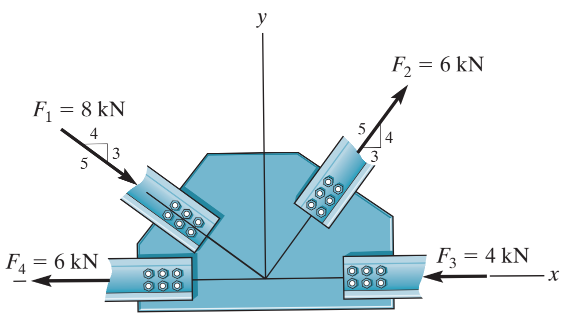
***2–48.** Three forces act on the bracket. Determine the magnitude and direction θ of $\mathbf{F}_1$ so that the resultant force is directed along the positive x' axis and has a magnitude of 800 N.

2–49. If $F_1 = 300$ N and $\theta = 10°$, determine the magnitude and direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x' axis, of the resultant force acting on the bracket.



Probs. 2–48/49

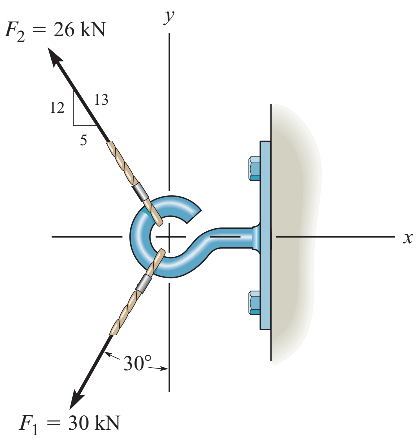
***2–52.** Determine the x and y components of each force acting on the *gusset plate* of a bridge truss. Show that the resultant force is zero.



Prob. 2–52

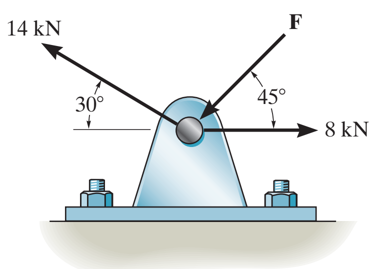
2–53. Express $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ as Cartesian vectors.

2–54. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



Probs. 2–53/54

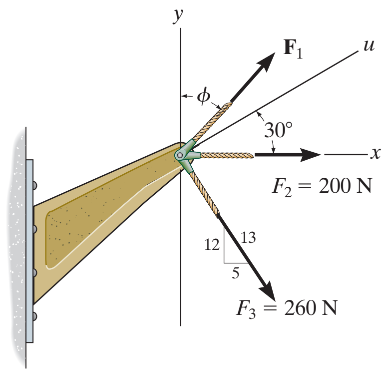
2–55. Determine the magnitude of force $\mathbf{F}$ so that the resultant force of the three forces is as small as possible. What is the magnitude of the resultant force?



Prob. 2–55

***2–56.** If the magnitude of the resultant force acting on the bracket is to be 450 N directed along the positive u axis, determine the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_1$ and its direction ϕ.

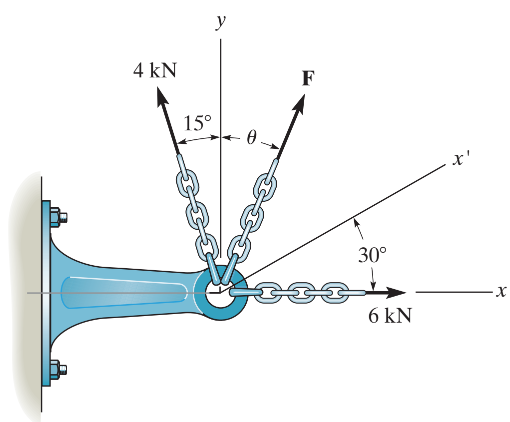
2–57. If the resultant force acting on the bracket is required to be a minimum, determine the magnitudes of $\mathbf{F}_1$ and the resultant force. Set $\phi = 30°$.



Probs. 2–56/57

2–58. Three forces act on the bracket. Determine the magnitude and direction θ of $\mathbf{F}$ so that the resultant force is directed along the positive x' axis and has a magnitude of 8 kN.

2–59. If $F = 5$ kN and $\theta = 30°$, determine the magnitude of the resultant force and its direction, measured counterclockwise from the positive x axis.



Probs. 2–58/59

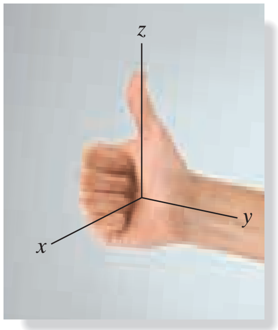


Fig. 2–21 (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

2.5 Cartesian Vectors

The operations of vector algebra, when applied to solving problems in *three dimensions*, are greatly simplified if the vectors are first represented in Cartesian vector form. In this section we will present a general method for doing this; then in the next section we will use this method for finding the resultant force of a system of concurrent forces.

Right-Handed Coordinate System.

We will use a right-handed coordinate system to develop the theory of vector algebra that follows. A rectangular coordinate system is said to be ***right-handed*** if the thumb of the right hand points in the direction of the positive z axis when the right-hand fingers are curled about this axis and directed from the positive x towards the positive y axis, Fig. 2–21.

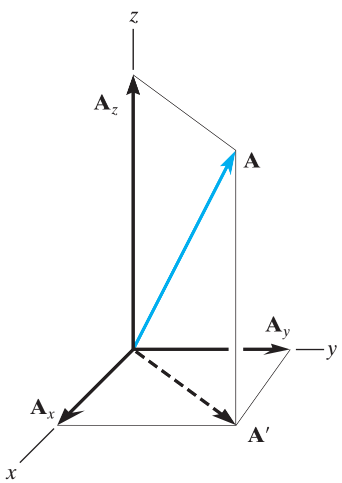


Fig. 2–22

Rectangular Components of a Vector.

A vector $\mathbf{A}$ may have one, two, or three rectangular components along the x, y, z coordinate axes, depending on how the vector is oriented relative to the axes. In general, though, when $\mathbf{A}$ is directed within an octant of the x, y, z frame, Fig. 2–22, then by two successive applications of the parallelogram law, we may resolve the vector into components as $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}' + \mathbf{A}_z$ and then $\mathbf{A}' = \mathbf{A}_x + \mathbf{A}_y$. Combining these equations, to eliminate $\mathbf{A}'$, $\mathbf{A}$ is represented by the vector sum of its *three* rectangular components,

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}_x + \mathbf{A}_y + \mathbf{A}_z \tag{2–2}$$

Cartesian Unit Vectors.

In three dimensions, the set of Cartesian unit vectors, $\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}$, is used to designate the directions of the x, y, z axes, respectively. As stated in Sec. 2–4, the *sense* (or arrowhead) of these vectors will be represented analytically by a plus or minus sign, depending on whether they are directed along the positive or negative $x, y,$ or z axes. The positive Cartesian unit vectors are shown in Fig. 2–23.

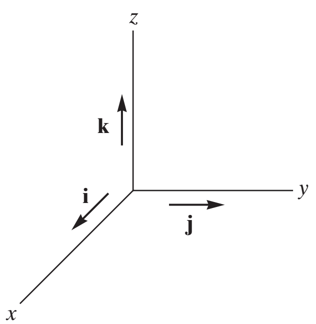


Fig. 2–23

Cartesian Vector Representation. Since the three components of **A** in Eq. 2–2 act in the positive **i**, **j**, and **k** directions, Fig. 2–24, we can write **A** in Cartesian vector form as

$$\boxed{\mathbf{A} = A_x\mathbf{i} + A_y\mathbf{j} + A_z\mathbf{k}} \qquad (2\text{–}3)$$

There is a distinct advantage to writing vectors in this manner. Separating the *magnitude* and *direction* of each *component vector* will simplify the operations of vector algebra, particularly in three dimensions.

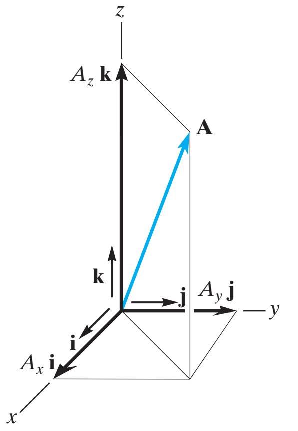


Fig. 2–24

Magnitude of a Cartesian Vector. It is always possible to obtain the magnitude of **A** provided it is expressed in Cartesian vector form. As shown in Fig. 2–25, from the blue right triangle, $A = \sqrt{A'^2 + A_z^2}$, and from the gray right triangle, $A' = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2}$. Combining these equations to eliminate A' yields

$$\boxed{A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2 + A_z^2}} \qquad (2\text{–}4)$$

Hence, the magnitude of **A** *is equal to the positive square root of the sum of the squares of its components.*

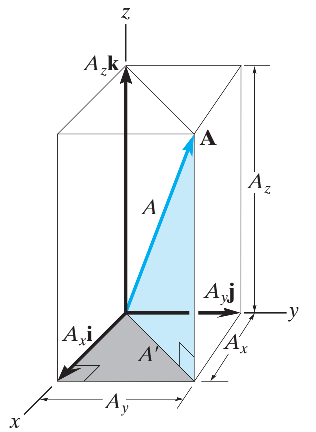


Fig. 2–25

Coordinate Direction Angles. We will define the *direction* of **A** by the ***coordinate direction angles*** α (alpha), β (beta), and γ (gamma), measured between the *tail* of **A** and the *positive x, y, z* axes provided they are located at the tail of **A**, Fig. 2–26. Note that regardless of where **A** is directed, each of these angles will be between 0° and 180°.

To determine α, β, and γ, consider the projection of **A** onto the *x, y, z* axes, Fig. 2–27. Referring to the colored right triangles shown in the figure, we have

$$\boxed{\cos\alpha = \frac{A_x}{A} \qquad \cos\beta = \frac{A_y}{A} \qquad \cos\gamma = \frac{A_z}{A}} \qquad (2\text{–}5)$$

These numbers are known as the ***direction cosines*** of **A**. Once they have been obtained, the coordinate direction angles α, β, γ can then be determined from the inverse cosines.

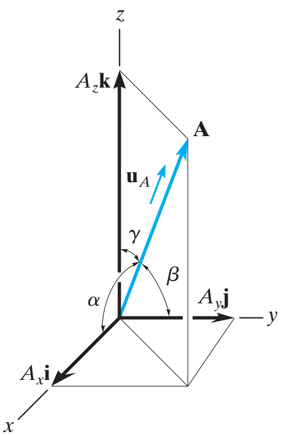


Fig. 2–26

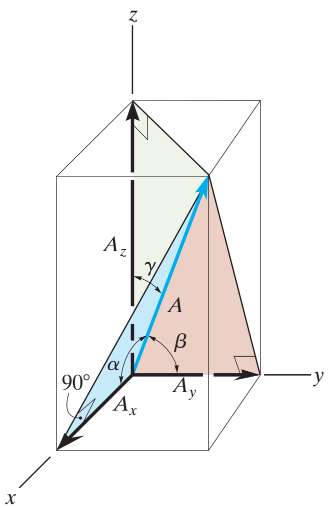


Fig. 2–27

An easy way of obtaining these direction cosines is to form a unit vector $\mathbf{u}_A$ in the direction of A, Fig. 2–26. If $\mathbf{A}$ is expressed in Cartesian vector form, $\mathbf{A} = A_x\mathbf{i} + A_y\mathbf{j} + A_z\mathbf{k}$, then $\mathbf{u}_A$ will have a magnitude of one and be dimensionless provided $\mathbf{A}$ is divided by its magnitude, i.e.,

$$\boxed{\mathbf{u}_A = \frac{\mathbf{A}}{A} = \frac{A_x}{A}\mathbf{i} + \frac{A_y}{A}\mathbf{j} + \frac{A_z}{A}\mathbf{k}} \tag{2–6}$$

where $A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2 + A_z^2}$. By comparison with Eqs. 2–5, it is seen that *the* $\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}$ *components* of $\mathbf{u}_A$ *represent the direction cosines of* $\mathbf{A}$, i.e.,

$$\mathbf{u}_A = \cos\alpha\,\mathbf{i} + \cos\beta\,\mathbf{j} + \cos\gamma\,\mathbf{k} \tag{2–7}$$

Since the magnitude of a vector is equal to the positive square root of the sum of the squares of the magnitudes of its components, and $\mathbf{u}_A$ has a magnitude of one, then from the above equation an important relation among the direction cosines can be formulated as

$$\boxed{\cos^2\alpha + \cos^2\beta + \cos^2\gamma = 1} \tag{2–8}$$

Here we can see that if only *two* of the coordinate angles are known, the third angle can be found using this equation.

Finally, if the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of $\mathbf{A}$ are known, then $\mathbf{A}$ may be expressed in Cartesian vector form as

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned}\mathbf{A} &= A\mathbf{u}_A \\ &= A\cos\alpha\,\mathbf{i} + A\cos\beta\,\mathbf{j} + A\cos\gamma\,\mathbf{k} \\ &= A_x\mathbf{i} + A_y\mathbf{j} + A_z\mathbf{k}\end{aligned}} \tag{2–9}$$

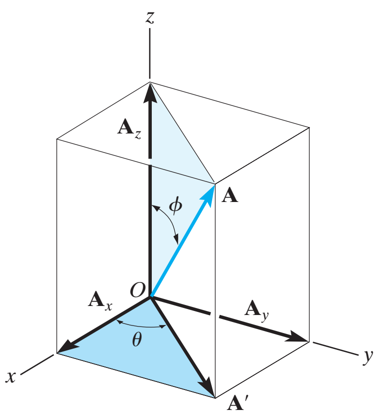


Fig. 2–28

Transverse and Azmuth Angles. Sometimes, the direction of $\mathbf{A}$ can be specified using two angles, namely, a ***transverse angle*** θ and an ***azmuth angle*** ϕ (phi), such as shown in Fig. 2–28. The components of $\mathbf{A}$ can then be determined by applying trigonometry first to the light blue right triangle, which yields

$$A_z = A\cos\phi$$

and

$$A' = A\sin\phi$$

Now applying trigonometry to the dark blue right triangle,

$$A_x = A'\cos\theta = A\sin\phi\cos\theta$$

$$A_y = A'\sin\theta = A\sin\phi\sin\theta$$

Therefore **A** written in Cartesian vector form becomes

$$\mathbf{A} = A \sin\phi \cos\theta \,\mathbf{i} + A \sin\phi \sin\theta \,\mathbf{j} + A \cos\phi \,\mathbf{k}$$

You should not memorize this equation, rather it is important to understand how the components were determined using trigonometry.

2.6 Addition of Cartesian Vectors

The addition (or subtraction) of two or more vectors is greatly simplified if the vectors are expressed in terms of their Cartesian components. For example, if $\mathbf{A} = A_x\mathbf{i} + A_y\mathbf{j} + A_z\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{B} = B_x\mathbf{i} + B_y\mathbf{j} + B_z\mathbf{k}$, Fig. 2–29, then the resultant vector, **R**, has components which are the scalar sums of the **i**, **j**, **k** components of **A** and **B**, i.e.,

$$\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = (A_x + B_x)\mathbf{i} + (A_y + B_y)\mathbf{j} + (A_z + B_z)\mathbf{k}$$

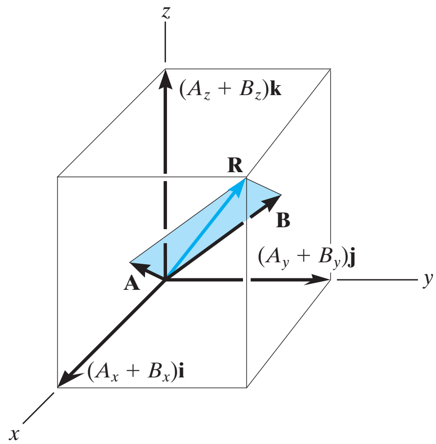


Fig. 2–29

If this is generalized and applied to a system of several concurrent forces, then the force resultant is the vector sum of all the forces in the system and can be written as

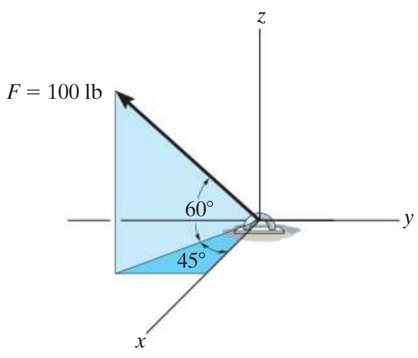
$$\boxed{\mathbf{F}_R = \Sigma\mathbf{F} = \Sigma F_x\mathbf{i} + \Sigma F_y\mathbf{j} + \Sigma F_z\mathbf{k}} \qquad (2\text{–}10)$$

Here ΣF_x, ΣF_y, and ΣF_z represent the algebraic sums of the respective x, y, z or **i**, **j**, **k** components of each force in the system.

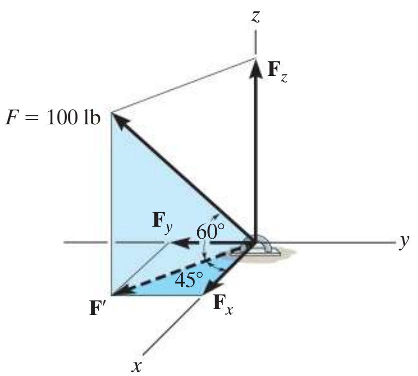
Cartesian vector analysis provides a convenient method for finding both the resultant force and its components in three dimensions. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Important Points

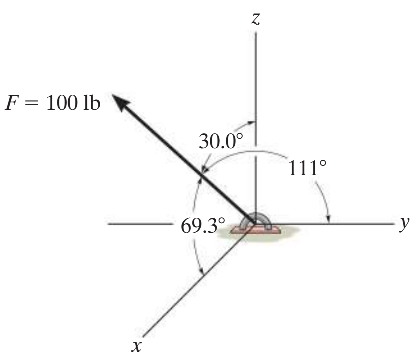
- A Cartesian vector **A** has **i**, **j**, **k** components along the x, y, z axes. If **A** is known, its magnitude is defined by $A = \sqrt{A_x^2 + A_y^2 + A_z^2}$.
- The direction of a Cartesian vector can be defined by the three angles α, β, γ, measured from the *positive* x, y, z axes to the *tail* of the vector. To find these angles formulate a unit vector in the direction of **A**, i.e., $\mathbf{u}_A = \mathbf{A}/A$, and determine the inverse cosines of its components. Only two of these angles are independent of one another; the third angle is found from $\cos^2\alpha + \cos^2\beta + \cos^2\gamma = 1$.
- The direction of a Cartesian vector can also be specified using a transverse angle θ and azimuth angle ϕ.



(a)



(b)



(c)

Fig. 2–30

Express the force $\mathbf{F}$ shown in Fig. 2–30*a* as a Cartesian vector.

SOLUTION

The angles of 60° and 45° defining the direction of $\mathbf{F}$ are *not* coordinate direction angles. Two successive applications of the parallelogram law are needed to resolve $\mathbf{F}$ into its *x, y, z* components. First $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}' + \mathbf{F}_z$, then $\mathbf{F}' = \mathbf{F}_x + \mathbf{F}_y$, Fig. 2–30*b*. By trigonometry, the magnitudes of the components are

$$F_z = 100 \sin 60^\circ \text{ lb} = 86.6 \text{ lb}$$

$$F' = 100 \cos 60^\circ \text{ lb} = 50 \text{ lb}$$

$$F_x = F' \cos 45^\circ = 50 \cos 45^\circ \text{ lb} = 35.4 \text{ lb}$$

$$F_y = F' \sin 45^\circ = 50 \sin 45^\circ \text{ lb} = 35.4 \text{ lb}$$

Realizing that $\mathbf{F}_y$ has a direction defined by $-\mathbf{j}$, we have

$$\mathbf{F} = \{35.4\mathbf{i} - 35.4\mathbf{j} + 86.6\mathbf{k}\} \text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

To show that the magnitude of this vector is indeed 100 lb, apply Eq. 2–4,

$$F = \sqrt{F_x^2 + F_y^2 + F_z^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{(35.4)^2 + (35.4)^2 + (86.6)^2} = 100 \text{ lb}$$

If needed, the coordinate direction angles of $\mathbf{F}$ can be determined from the components of the unit vector acting in the direction of $\mathbf{F}$. Hence,

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{\mathbf{F}}{F} = \frac{F_x}{F}\mathbf{i} + \frac{F_y}{F}\mathbf{j} + \frac{F_z}{F}\mathbf{k}$$

$$= \frac{35.4}{100}\mathbf{i} - \frac{35.4}{100}\mathbf{j} + \frac{86.6}{100}\mathbf{k}$$

$$= 0.354\mathbf{i} - 0.354\mathbf{j} + 0.866\mathbf{k}$$

so that

$$\alpha = \cos^{-1}(0.354) = 69.3^\circ$$

$$\beta = \cos^{-1}(-0.354) = 111^\circ$$

$$\gamma = \cos^{-1}(0.866) = 30.0^\circ$$

These results are shown in Fig. 2–30*c*.

EXAMPLE 2.9

Two forces act on the hook shown in Fig. 2–31*a*. Specify the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_2$ and its coordinate direction angles so that the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ acts along the positive *y* axis and has a magnitude of 800 N.

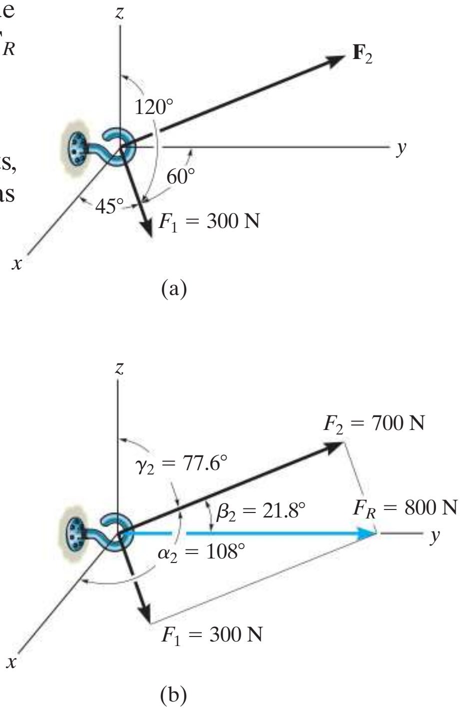


Fig. 2–31

SOLUTION

To solve this problem, the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ and its two components, $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$, will each be expressed in Cartesian vector form. Then, as shown in Fig. 2–31*b*, it is necessary that $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$.

Applying Eq. 2–9,

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{F}_1 &= F_1 \cos\alpha_1 \mathbf{i} + F_1 \cos\beta_1 \mathbf{j} + F_1 \cos\gamma_1 \mathbf{k} \\
&= 300 \cos 45^\circ\,\mathbf{i} + 300 \cos 60^\circ\,\mathbf{j} + 300 \cos 120^\circ\,\mathbf{k} \\
&= \{212.1\mathbf{i} + 150\mathbf{j} - 150\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N} \\
\mathbf{F}_2 &= F_{2x}\mathbf{i} + F_{2y}\mathbf{j} + F_{2z}\mathbf{k}
\end{aligned}$$

Since $\mathbf{F}_R$ has a magnitude of 800 N and acts in the $+\mathbf{j}$ direction,

$$\mathbf{F}_R = (800\text{ N})(+\mathbf{j}) = \{800\mathbf{j}\}\text{ N}$$

We require

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{F}_R &= \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2 \\
800\mathbf{j} &= 212.1\mathbf{i} + 150\mathbf{j} - 150\mathbf{k} + F_{2x}\mathbf{i} + F_{2y}\mathbf{j} + F_{2z}\mathbf{k} \\
800\mathbf{j} &= (212.1 + F_{2x})\mathbf{i} + (150 + F_{2y})\mathbf{j} + (-150 + F_{2z})\mathbf{k}
\end{aligned}$$

To satisfy this equation the $\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}$ components of $\mathbf{F}_R$ must be equal to the corresponding $\mathbf{i}, \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{k}$ components of $(\mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2)$. Hence,

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= 212.1 + F_{2x} & F_{2x} &= -212.1\text{ N} \\
800 &= 150 + F_{2y} & F_{2y} &= 650\text{ N} \\
0 &= -150 + F_{2z} & F_{2z} &= 150\text{ N}
\end{aligned}$$

The magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_2$ is thus

$$\begin{aligned}
F_2 &= \sqrt{(-212.1\text{ N})^2 + (650\text{ N})^2 + (150\text{ N})^2} \\
&= 700\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}
\end{aligned}$$

We can use Eq. 2–9 to determine $\alpha_2, \beta_2, \gamma_2$.

$$\cos\alpha_2 = \frac{-212.1}{700}; \qquad \alpha_2 = 108^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$\cos\beta_2 = \frac{650}{700}; \qquad \beta_2 = 21.8^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$\cos\gamma_2 = \frac{150}{700}; \qquad \gamma_2 = 77.6^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

These results are shown in Fig. 2–31*b*.

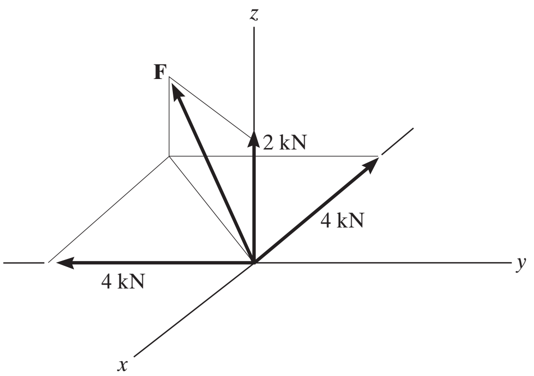
PRELIMINARY PROBLEMS

P2–3. Sketch the following forces on the x, y, z coordinate axes. Show α, β, γ.

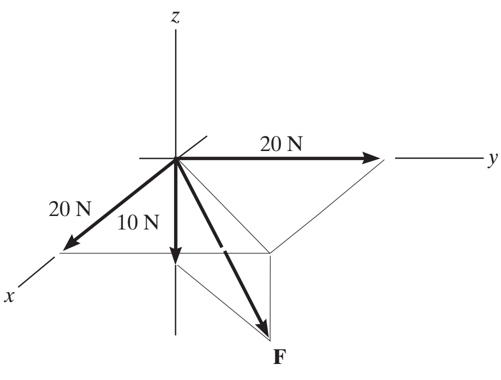
a) $\mathbf{F} = \{50\mathbf{i} + 60\mathbf{j} - 10\mathbf{k}\}$ kN

b) $\mathbf{F} = \{-40\mathbf{i} - 80\mathbf{j} + 60\mathbf{k}\}$ kN

P2–4. In each case, establish **F** as a Cartesian vector, and find the magnitude of **F** and the direction cosine of β.



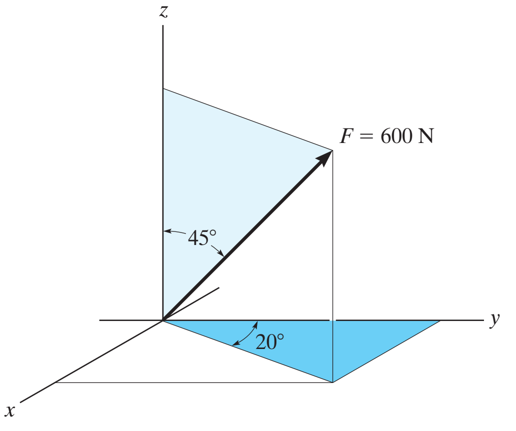
(a)



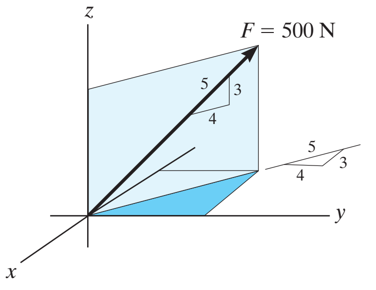
(b)

Prob. P2–4

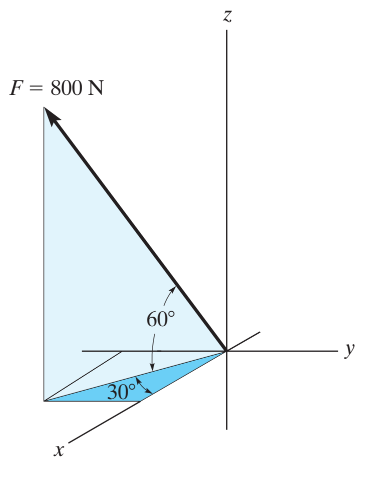
P2–5. Show how to resolve each force into its x, y, z components. Set up the calculation used to find the magnitude of each component.



(a)



(b)

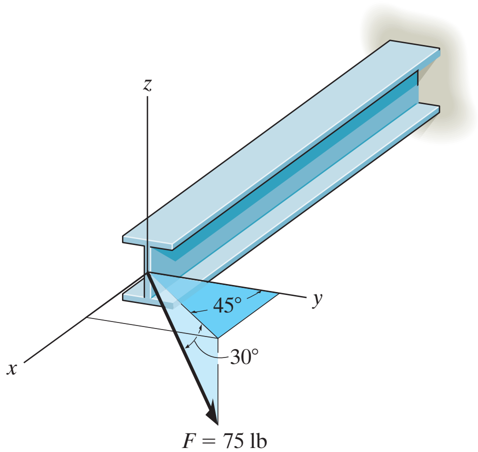


(c)

Prob. P2–5

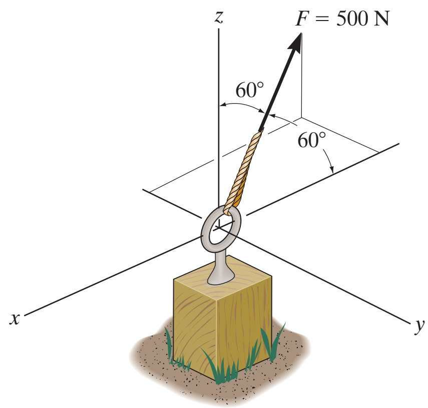
FUNDAMENTAL PROBLEMS

F2–13. Determine the coordinate direction angles of the force.



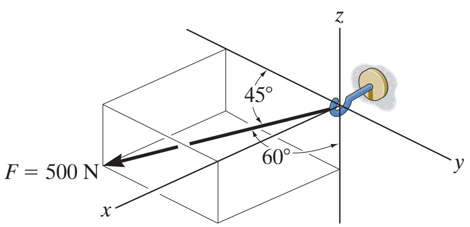
Prob. F2–13

F2–14. Express the force as a Cartesian vector.



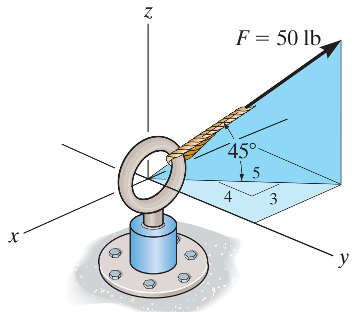
Prob. F2–14

F2–15. Express the force as a Cartesian vector.



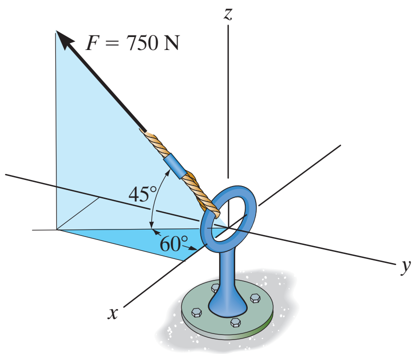
Prob. F2–15

F2–16. Express the force as a Cartesian vector.



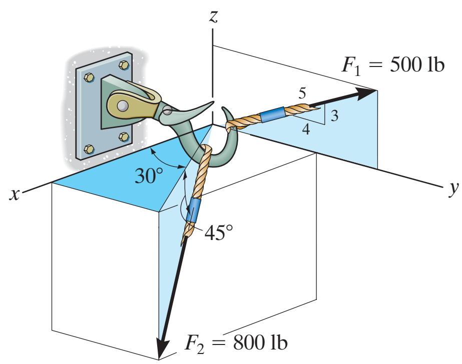
Prob. F2–16

F2–17. Express the force as a Cartesian vector.



Prob. F2–17

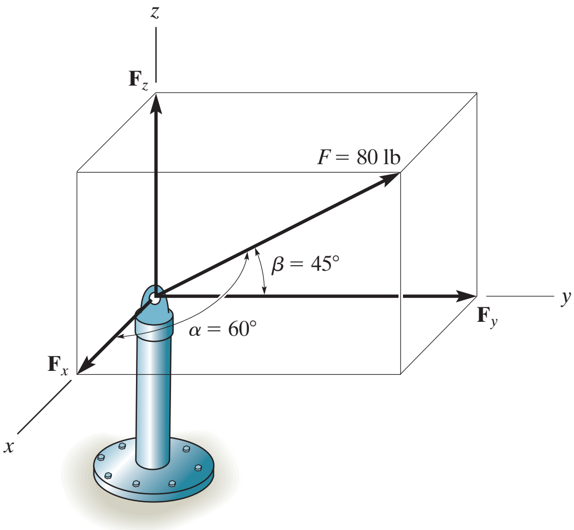
F2–18. Determine the resultant force acting on the hook.



Prob. F2–18

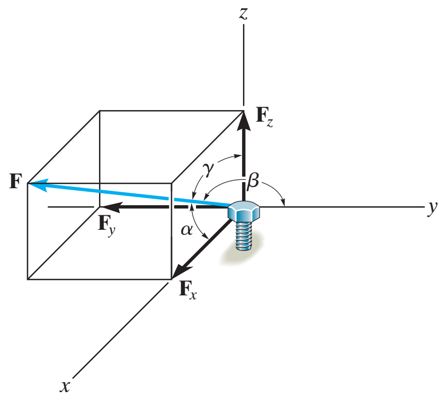
PROBLEMS

*2–60. The force **F** has a magnitude of 80 lb and acts within the octant shown. Determine the magnitudes of the x, y, z components of **F**.



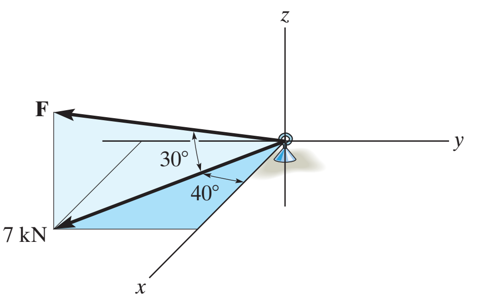
Prob. 2–60

2–61. The bolt is subjected to the force **F**, which has components acting along the x, y, z axes as shown. If the magnitude of **F** is 80 N, and $\alpha = 60°$ and $\gamma = 45°$, determine the magnitudes of its components.



Prob. 2–61

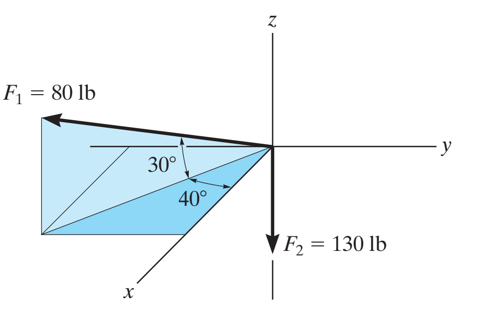
2–62. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the force **F** acting on the support. The component of **F** in the x–y plane is 7 kN.



Prob. 2–62

2–63. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force and sketch this vector on the coordinate system.

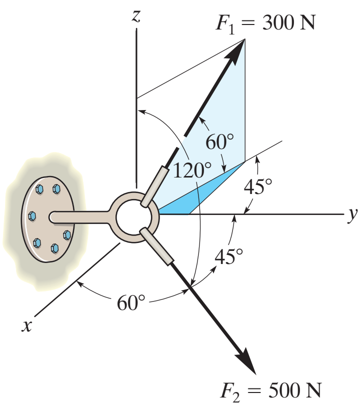
*2–64. Specify the coordinate direction angles of $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ and express each force as a Cartesian vector.



Probs. 2–63/64

2–65. The screw eye is subjected to the two forces shown. Express each force in Cartesian vector form and then determine the resultant force. Find the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force.

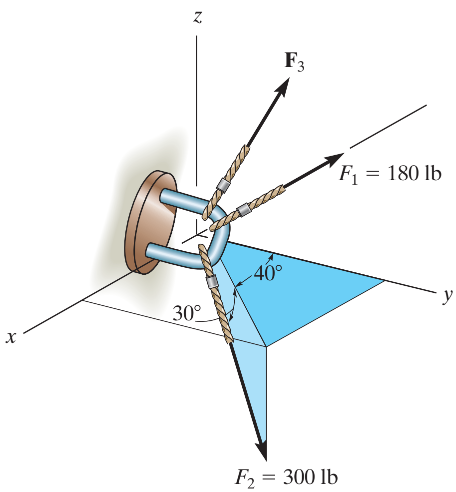
2–66. Determine the coordinate direction angles of $\mathbf{F}_1$.



Probs. 2–65/66

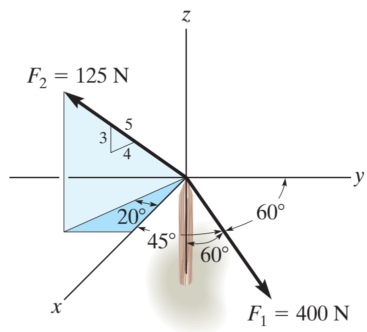
2–67. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of $\mathbf{F}_3$ so that the resultant of the three forces acts along the positive y axis and has a magnitude of 600 lb.

***2–68.** Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of $\mathbf{F}_3$ so that the resultant of the three forces is zero.



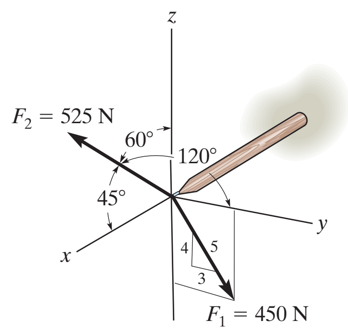
Probs. 2–67/68

2–69. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force, and sketch this vector on the coordinate system.



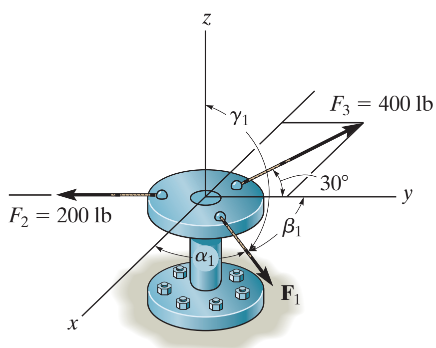
Prob. 2–69

2–70. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force, and sketch this vector on the coordinate system.



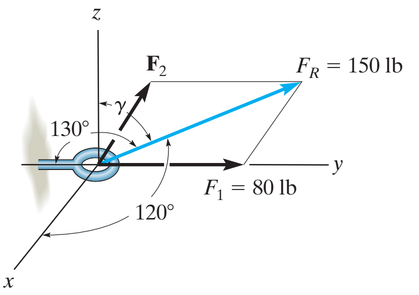
Prob. 2–70

2–71. Specify the magnitude and coordinate direction angles α_1, β_1, γ_1 of $\mathbf{F}_1$ so that the resultant of the three forces acting on the bracket is $\mathbf{F}_R = \{-350\mathbf{k}\}$ lb. Note that $\mathbf{F}_3$ lies in the x–y plane.



Prob. 2–71

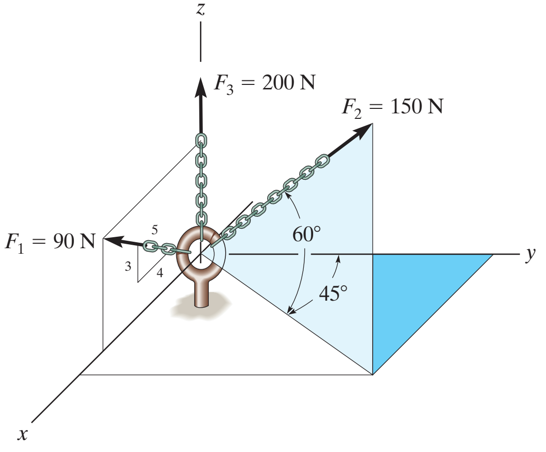
*2–72. Two forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ act on the screw eye. If the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ has a magnitude of 150 lb and the coordinate direction angles shown, determine the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_2$ and its coordinate direction angles.



Prob. 2–72

2–73. Express each force in Cartesian vector form.

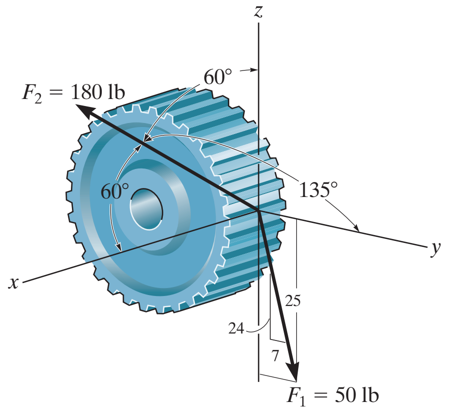
2–74. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force, and sketch this vector on the coordinate system.



Probs. 2–73/74

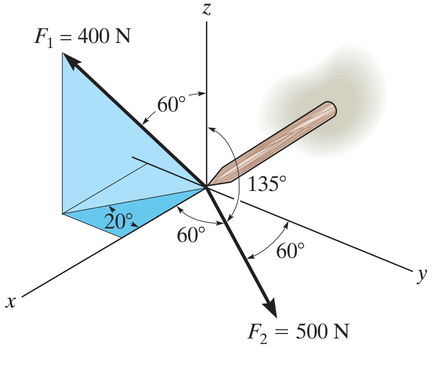
2–75. The spur gear is subjected to the two forces caused by contact with other gears. Express each force as a Cartesian vector.

*2–76. The spur gear is subjected to the two forces caused by contact with other gears. Determine the resultant of the two forces and express the result as a Cartesian vector.



Probs. 2–75/76

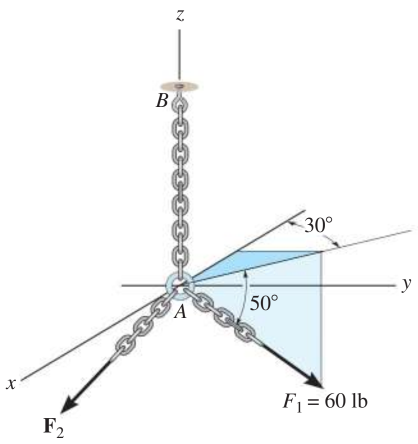
2–77. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force, and sketch this vector on the coordinate system.



Prob. 2–77

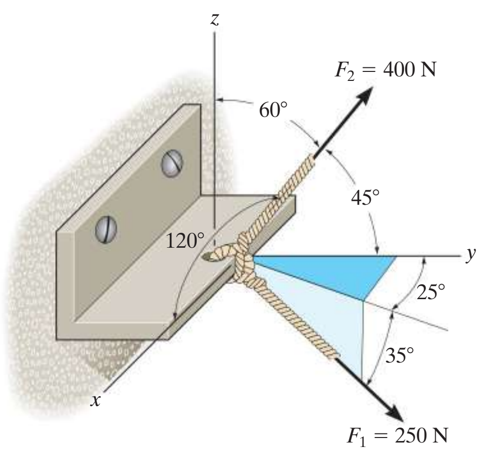
2–78. The two forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ acting at A have a resultant force of $\mathbf{F}_R = \{-100\mathbf{k}\}$ lb. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of $\mathbf{F}_2$.

2–79. Determine the coordinate direction angles of the force $\mathbf{F}_1$ and indicate them on the figure.



Probs. 2–78/79

***2–80.** The bracket is subjected to the two forces shown. Express each force in Cartesian vector form and then determine the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$. Find the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force.

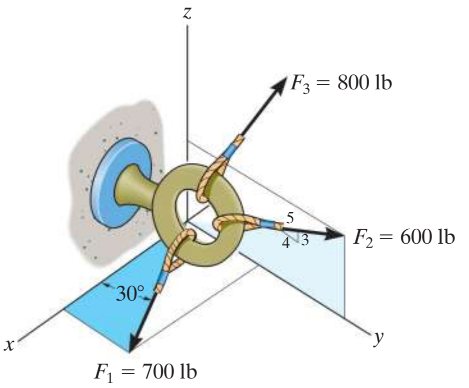


Prob. 2–80

2–81. If the coordinate direction angles for $\mathbf{F}_3$ are $\alpha_3 = 120°$, $\beta_3 = 60°$ and $\gamma_3 = 45°$, determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force acting on the eyebolt.

2–82. If the coordinate direction angles for $\mathbf{F}_3$ are $\alpha_3 = 120°$, $\beta_3 = 45°$, and $\gamma_3 = 60°$, determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force acting on the eyebolt.

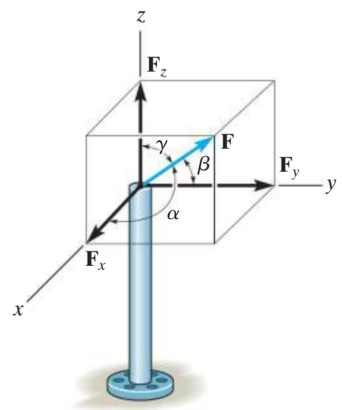
2–83. If the direction of the resultant force acting on the eyebolt is defined by the unit vector $\mathbf{u}_{F_R} = \cos 30°\mathbf{j} + \sin 30°\mathbf{k}$, determine the coordinate direction angles of $\mathbf{F}_3$ and the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_R$.



Probs. 2–81/82/83

***2–84.** The pole is subjected to the force $\mathbf{F}$, which has components acting along the x, y, z axes as shown. If the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}$ is 3 kN, $\beta = 30°$, and $\gamma = 75°$, determine the magnitudes of its three components.

2–85. The pole is subjected to the force $\mathbf{F}$ which has components $F_x = 1.5$ kN and $F_z = 1.25$ kN. If $\beta = 75°$, determine the magnitudes of $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{F}_y$.



Probs. 2–84/85

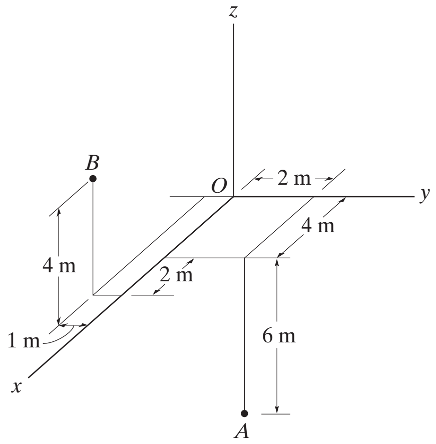


Fig. 2–32

2.7 Position Vectors

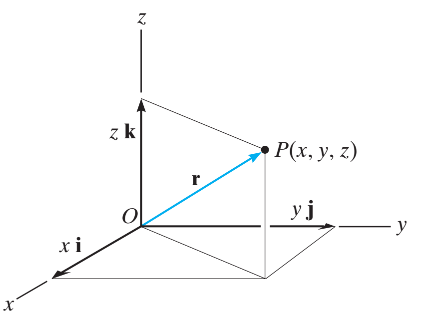
In this section we will introduce the concept of a position vector. It will be shown that this vector is of importance in formulating a Cartesian force vector directed between two points in space.

x, y, z Coordinates. Throughout the book we will use a *right-handed* coordinate system to reference the location of points in space. We will also use the convention followed in many technical books, which requires the positive z axis to be directed *upward* (the zenith direction) so that it measures the height of an object or the altitude of a point. The x, y axes then lie in the horizontal plane, Fig. 2–32. Points in space are located relative to the origin of coordinates, O, by successive measurements along the x, y, z axes. For example, the coordinates of point A are obtained by starting at O and measuring $x_A = +4$ m along the x axis, then $y_A = +2$ m along the y axis, and finally $z_A = -6$ m along the z axis, so that $A(4\text{ m}, 2\text{ m}, -6\text{ m})$. In a similar manner, measurements along the x, y, z axes from O to B yield the coordinates of B, that is, $B(6\text{ m}, -1\text{ m}, 4\text{ m})$.

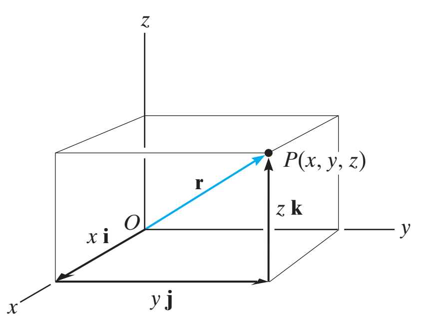
Position Vector. A ***position vector*** $\mathbf{r}$ is defined as a fixed vector which locates a point in space relative to another point. For example, if $\mathbf{r}$ extends from the origin of coordinates, O, to point $P(x, y, z)$, Fig. 2–33*a*, then $\mathbf{r}$ can be expressed in Cartesian vector form as

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j} + z\mathbf{k}$$

Note how the head-to-tail vector addition of the three components yields vector $\mathbf{r}$, Fig. 2–33*b*. Starting at the origin O, one "travels" x in the $+\mathbf{i}$ direction, then y in the $+\mathbf{j}$ direction, and finally z in the $+\mathbf{k}$ direction to arrive at point $P(x, y, z)$.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 2–33

In the more general case, the position vector may be directed from point A to point B in space, Fig. 2–34*a*. This vector is also designated by the symbol $\mathbf{r}$. As a matter of convention, we will *sometimes* refer to this vector with *two subscripts* to indicate from and to the point where it is directed. Thus, $\mathbf{r}$ can also be designated as $\mathbf{r}_{AB}$. Also, note that $\mathbf{r}_A$ and $\mathbf{r}_B$ in Fig. 2–34*a* are referenced with only one subscript since they extend from the origin of coordinates.

From Fig. 2–34*a*, by the head-to-tail vector addition, using the triangle rule, we require

$$\mathbf{r}_A + \mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_B$$

Solving for $\mathbf{r}$ and expressing $\mathbf{r}_A$ and $\mathbf{r}_B$ in Cartesian vector form yields

$$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_B - \mathbf{r}_A = (x_B\mathbf{i} + y_B\mathbf{j} + z_B\mathbf{k}) - (x_A\mathbf{i} + y_A\mathbf{j} + z_A\mathbf{k})$$

or

$$\boxed{\mathbf{r} = (x_B - x_A)\mathbf{i} + (y_B - y_A)\mathbf{j} + (z_B - z_A)\mathbf{k}} \qquad (2\text{–}11)$$

Thus, the $\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{k}$ *components of the position vector* $\mathbf{r}$ *may be formed by taking the coordinates of the tail of the vector* $A(x_A, y_A, z_A)$ *and subtracting them from the corresponding coordinates of the head* $B(x_B, y_B, z_B)$. We can also form these components *directly*, Fig. 2–34*b*, by starting at A and moving through a distance of $(x_B - x_A)$ along the positive x axis $(+\mathbf{i})$, then $(y_B - y_A)$ along the positive y axis $(+\mathbf{j})$, and finally $(z_B - z_A)$ along the positive z axis $(+\mathbf{k})$ to get to B.

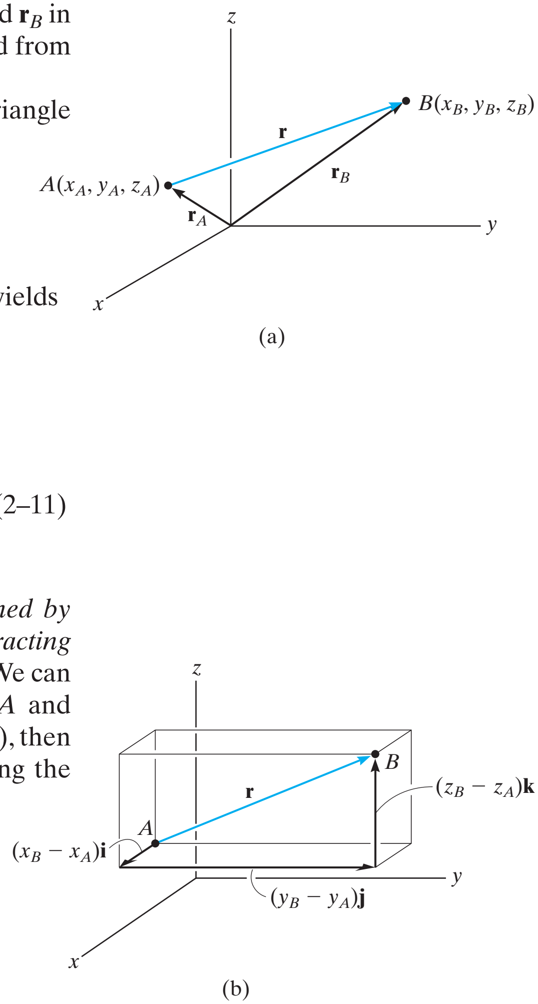
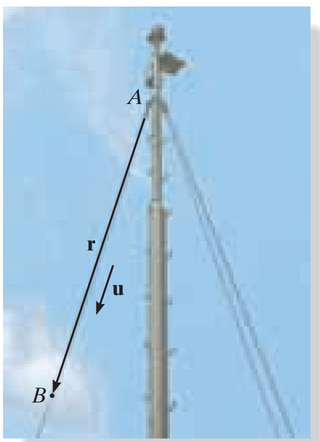


Fig. 2–34



If an x, y, z coordinate system is established, then the coordinates of two points A and B on the cable can be determined. From this the position vector $\mathbf{r}$ acting along the cable can be formulated. Its magnitude represents the distance from A to B, and its unit vector, $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{r}/r$, gives the direction defined by α, β, γ. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

EXAMPLE 2.10

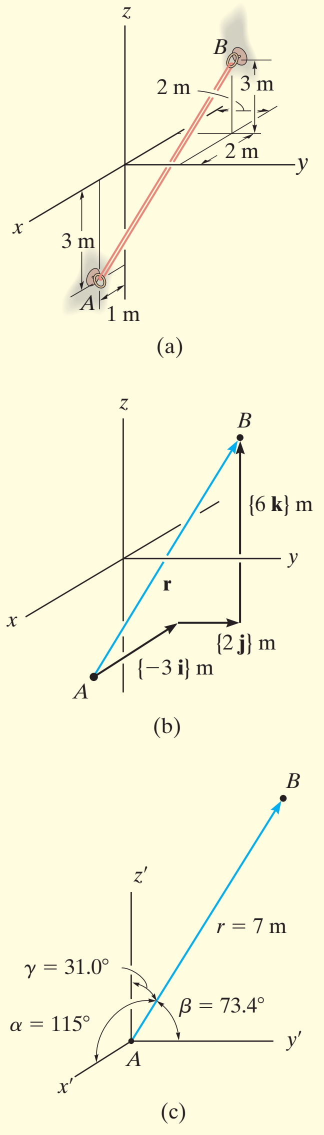


Fig. 2–35

An elastic rubber band is attached to points A and B as shown in Fig. 2–35*a*. Determine its length and its direction measured from A toward B.

SOLUTION

We first establish a position vector from A to B, Fig. 2–35*b*. In accordance with Eq. 2–11, the coordinates of the tail $A(1\text{ m}, 0, -3\text{ m})$ are subtracted from the coordinates of the head $B(-2\text{ m}, 2\text{ m}, 3\text{ m})$, which yields

$$\mathbf{r} = [-2\text{ m} - 1\text{ m}]\mathbf{i} + [2\text{ m} - 0]\mathbf{j} + [3\text{ m} - (-3\text{ m})]\mathbf{k}$$
$$= \{-3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}\}\text{ m}$$

These components of **r** can also be determined *directly* by realizing that they represent the direction and distance one must travel along each axis in order to move from A to B, i.e., along the x axis $\{-3\mathbf{i}\}$ m, along the y axis $\{2\mathbf{j}\}$ m, and finally along the z axis $\{6\mathbf{k}\}$ m.

The length of the rubber band is therefore

$$r = \sqrt{(-3\text{ m})^2 + (2\text{ m})^2 + (6\text{ m})^2} = 7\text{ m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Formulating a unit vector in the direction of **r**, we have

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} = -\frac{3}{7}\mathbf{i} + \frac{2}{7}\mathbf{j} + \frac{6}{7}\mathbf{k}$$

The components of this unit vector give the coordinate direction angles

$$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left(-\frac{3}{7}\right) = 115^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$\beta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{2}{7}\right) = 73.4^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$\gamma = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{6}{7}\right) = 31.0^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

NOTE: These angles are measured from the *positive axes* of a localized coordinate system placed at the tail of **r**, as shown in Fig. 2–35*c*.

2.8 Force Vector Directed Along a Line

Quite often in three-dimensional statics problems, the direction of a force is specified by two points through which its line of action passes. Such a situation is shown in Fig. 2–36, where the force **F** is directed along the cord AB. We can formulate **F** as a Cartesian vector by realizing that it has the *same direction* and *sense* as the position vector **r** directed from point A to point B on the cord. This common direction is specified by the ***unit vector*** $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{r}/r$. Hence,

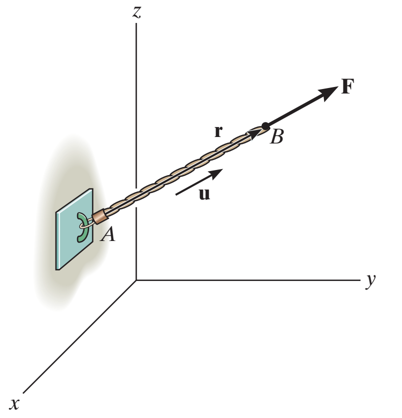
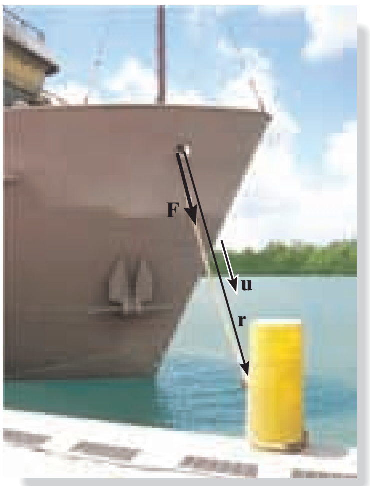


Fig. 2–36

$$\mathbf{F} = F\,\mathbf{u} = F\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}\right) = F\left(\frac{(x_B - x_A)\mathbf{i} + (y_B - y_A)\mathbf{j} + (z_B - z_A)\mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{(x_B - x_A)^2 + (y_B - y_A)^2 + (z_B - z_A)^2}}\right)$$

Although we have represented **F** symbolically in Fig. 2–36, note that it has *units of force*, unlike **r**, which has units of length.



The force **F** acting along the rope can be represented as a Cartesian vector by establishing x, y, z axes and first forming a position vector **r** along the length of the rope. Then the corresponding unit vector $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{r}/r$ that defines the direction of both the rope and the force can be determined. Finally, the magnitude of the force is combined with its direction, $\mathbf{F} = F\mathbf{u}$. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Important Points

- A position vector locates one point in space relative to another point.
- The easiest way to formulate the components of a position vector is to determine the distance and direction that must be traveled along the x, y, z directions—going from the tail to the head of the vector.
- A force **F** acting in the direction of a position vector **r** can be represented in Cartesian form if the unit vector **u** of the position vector is determined and it is multiplied by the magnitude of the force, i.e., $\mathbf{F} = F\mathbf{u} = F(\mathbf{r}/r)$.

EXAMPLE 2.11

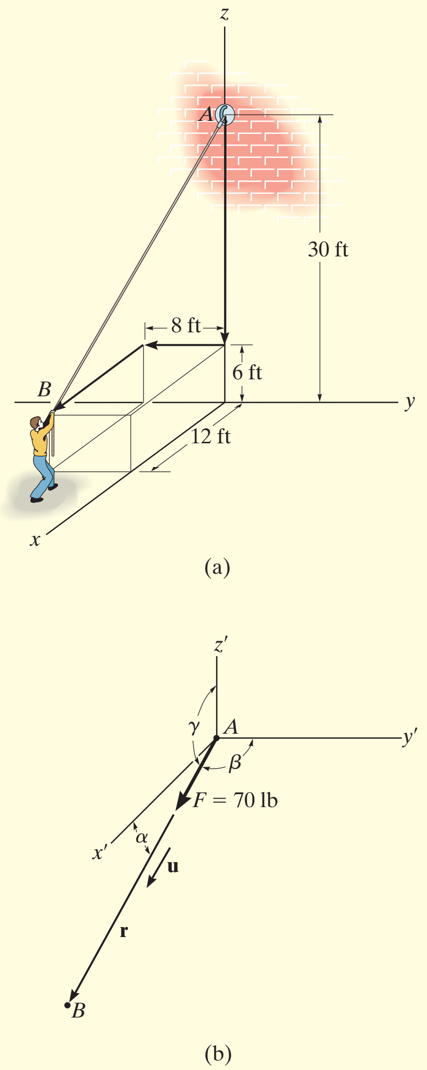


Fig. 2–37

The man shown in Fig. 2–37*a* pulls on the cord with a force of 70 lb. Represent this force acting on the support *A* as a Cartesian vector and determine its direction.

SOLUTION

Force **F** is shown in Fig. 2–37*b*. The *direction* of this vector, **u**, is determined from the position vector **r**, which extends from *A* to *B*. Rather than using the coordinates of the end points of the cord, **r** can be determined *directly* by noting in Fig. 2–37*a* that one must travel from *A* $\{-24\mathbf{k}\}$ ft, then $\{-8\mathbf{j}\}$ ft, and finally $\{12\mathbf{i}\}$ ft to get to *B*. Thus,

$$\mathbf{r} = \{12\mathbf{i} - 8\mathbf{j} - 24\mathbf{k}\}\text{ ft}$$

The magnitude of **r**, which represents the *length* of cord *AB*, is

$$r = \sqrt{(12\text{ ft})^2 + (-8\text{ ft})^2 + (-24\text{ ft})^2} = 28\text{ ft}$$

Forming the unit vector that defines the direction and sense of both **r** and **F**, we have

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} = \frac{12}{28}\mathbf{i} - \frac{8}{28}\mathbf{j} - \frac{24}{28}\mathbf{k}$$

Since **F** has a *magnitude* of 70 lb and a *direction* specified by **u**, then

$$\mathbf{F} = F\mathbf{u} = 70\text{ lb}\left(\frac{12}{28}\mathbf{i} - \frac{8}{28}\mathbf{j} - \frac{24}{28}\mathbf{k}\right)$$

$$= \{30\mathbf{i} - 20\mathbf{j} - 60\mathbf{k}\}\text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

The coordinate direction angles are measured between **r** (or **F**) and the *positive axes* of a localized coordinate system with origin placed at *A*, Fig. 2–37*b*. From the components of the unit vector:

$$\alpha = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{12}{28}\right) = 64.6^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$\beta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{-8}{28}\right) = 107^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

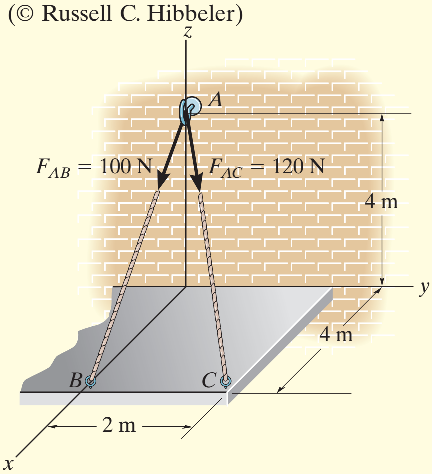
$$\gamma = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{-24}{28}\right) = 149^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

NOTE: These results make sense when compared with the angles identified in Fig. 2–37*b*.

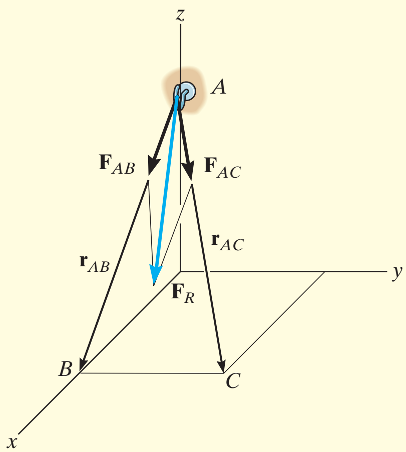
EXAMPLE 2.12

(© Russell C. Hibbeler)

The roof is supported by cables as shown in the photo. If the cables exert forces $F_{AB} = 100$ N and $F_{AC} = 120$ N on the wall hook at A as shown in Fig. 2–38*a*, determine the resultant force acting at A. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 2–38

SOLUTION

The resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ is shown graphically in Fig. 2–38*b*. We can express this force as a Cartesian vector by first formulating $\mathbf{F}_{AB}$ and $\mathbf{F}_{AC}$ as Cartesian vectors and then adding their components. The directions of $\mathbf{F}_{AB}$ and $\mathbf{F}_{AC}$ are specified by forming unit vectors $\mathbf{u}_{AB}$ and $\mathbf{u}_{AC}$ along the cables. These unit vectors are obtained from the associated position vectors $\mathbf{r}_{AB}$ and $\mathbf{r}_{AC}$. With reference to Fig. 2–38*a*, to go from A to B, we must travel $\{-4\mathbf{k}\}$ m, and then $\{4\mathbf{i}\}$ m. Thus,

$$\mathbf{r}_{AB} = \{4\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{k}\}\text{ m}$$

$$r_{AB} = \sqrt{(4\text{ m})^2 + (-4\text{ m})^2} = 5.66\text{ m}$$

$$\mathbf{F}_{AB} = F_{AB}\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}_{AB}}{r_{AB}}\right) = (100\text{ N})\left(\frac{4}{5.66}\mathbf{i} - \frac{4}{5.66}\mathbf{k}\right)$$

$$\mathbf{F}_{AB} = \{70.7\mathbf{i} - 70.7\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N}$$

To go from A to C, we must travel $\{-4\mathbf{k}\}$ m, then $\{2\mathbf{j}\}$ m, and finally $\{4\mathbf{i}\}$. Thus,

$$\mathbf{r}_{AC} = \{4\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}\}\text{ m}$$

$$r_{AC} = \sqrt{(4\text{ m})^2 + (2\text{ m})^2 + (-4\text{ m})^2} = 6\text{ m}$$

$$\mathbf{F}_{AC} = F_{AC}\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}_{AC}}{r_{AC}}\right) = (120\text{ N})\left(\frac{4}{6}\mathbf{i} + \frac{2}{6}\mathbf{j} - \frac{4}{6}\mathbf{k}\right)$$

$$= \{80\mathbf{i} + 40\mathbf{j} - 80\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N}$$

The resultant force is therefore

$$\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_{AB} + \mathbf{F}_{AC} = \{70.7\mathbf{i} - 70.7\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N} + \{80\mathbf{i} + 40\mathbf{j} - 80\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N}$$

$$= \{151\mathbf{i} + 40\mathbf{j} - 151\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

EXAMPLE 2.13

The force in Fig. 2–39*a* acts on the hook. Express it as a Cartesian vector.

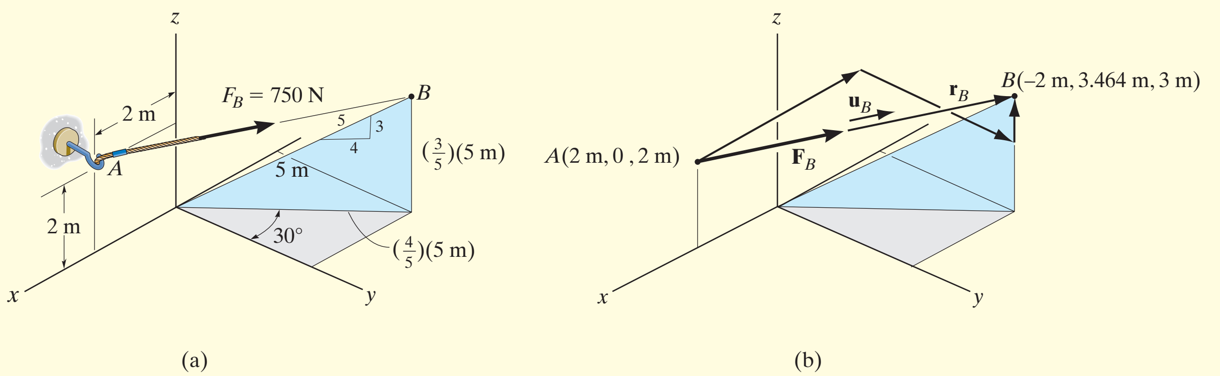


Fig. 2–39

SOLUTION

As shown in Fig. 2–39*b*, the coordinates for points *A* and *B* are

$$A\,(2\text{ m},\ 0,\ 2\text{ m})$$

and

$$B\left[-\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)5\sin 30^\circ\text{ m},\ \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)5\cos 30^\circ\text{ m},\ \left(\frac{3}{5}\right)5\text{ m}\right]$$

or

$$B(-2\text{ m},\ 3.464\text{ m},\ 3\text{ m})$$

Therefore, to go from *A* to *B*, one must travel $\{-4\mathbf{i}\}$ m, then $\{3.464\mathbf{j}\}$ m, and finally $\{1\mathbf{k}\}$ m. Thus,

$$\mathbf{u}_B = \left(\frac{\mathbf{r}_B}{r_B}\right) = \frac{\{-4\mathbf{i} + 3.464\mathbf{j} + 1\mathbf{k}\}\text{ m}}{\sqrt{(-4\text{ m})^2 + (3.464\text{ m})^2 + (1\text{ m})^2}}$$

$$= -0.7428\mathbf{i} + 0.6433\mathbf{j} + 0.1857\mathbf{k}$$

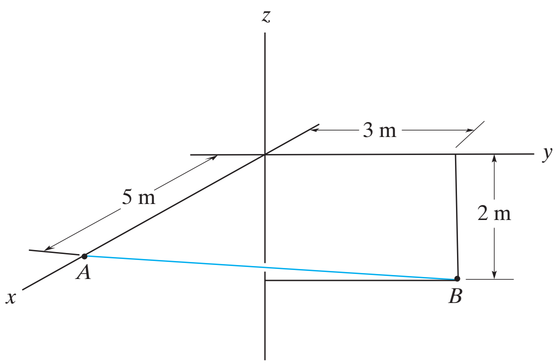
Force $\mathbf{F}_B$ expressed as a Cartesian vector becomes

$$\mathbf{F}_B = F_B\,\mathbf{u}_B = (750\text{ N})(-0.74281\mathbf{i} + 0.6433\mathbf{j} + 0.1857\mathbf{k})$$

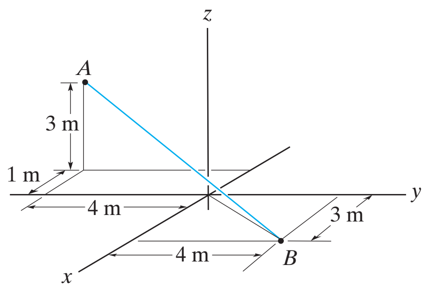
$$= \{-557\mathbf{i} + 482\mathbf{j} + 139\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

PRELIMINARY PROBLEMS

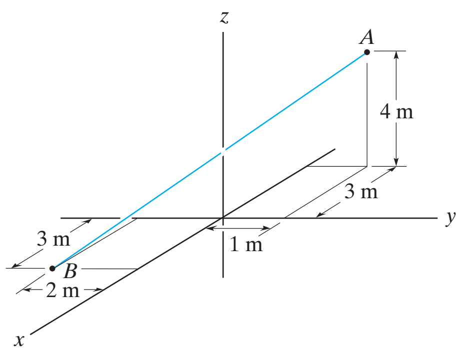
P2–6. In each case, establish a position vector from point A to point B.



(a)



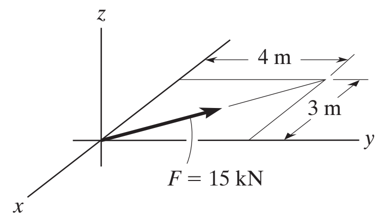
(b)



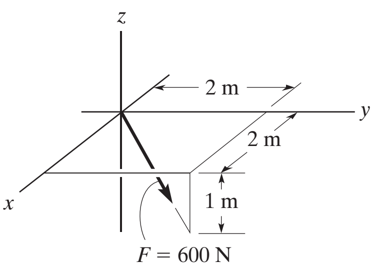
(c)

Prob. P2–6

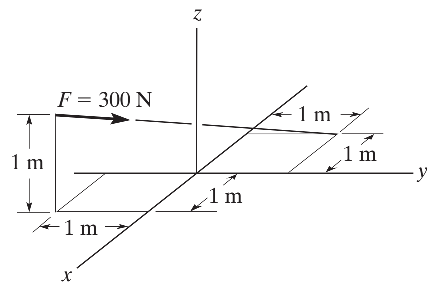
P2–7. In each case, express **F** as a Cartesian vector.



(a)



(b)

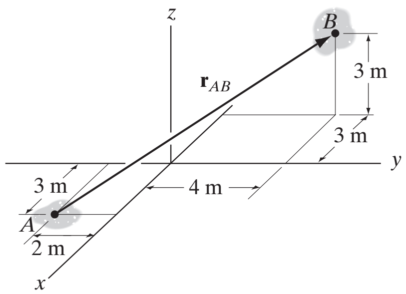


(c)

Prob. P2–7

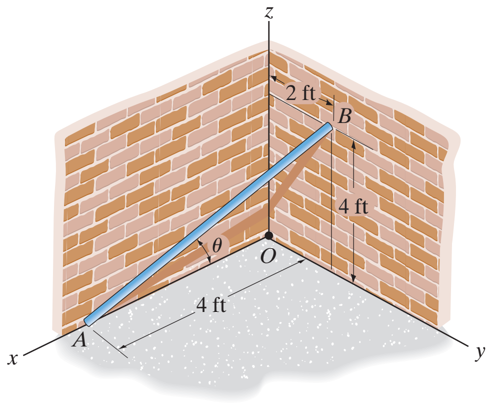
FUNDAMENTAL PROBLEMS

F2–19. Express the position vector $\mathbf{r}_{AB}$ in Cartesian vector form, then determine its magnitude and coordinate direction angles.



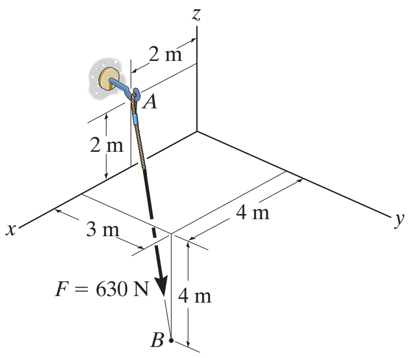
Prob. F2–19

F2–20. Determine the length of the rod and the position vector directed from A to B. What is the angle θ?



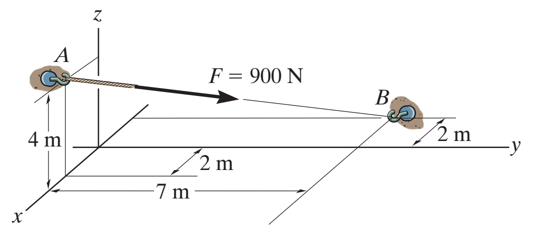
Prob. F2–20

F2–21. Express the force as a Cartesian vector.



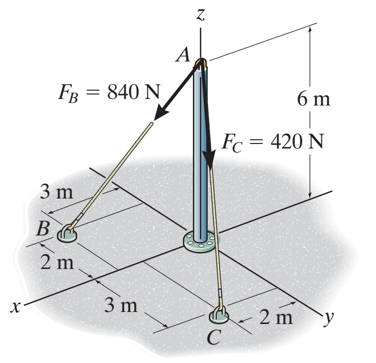
Prob. F2–21

F2–22. Express the force as a Cartesian vector.



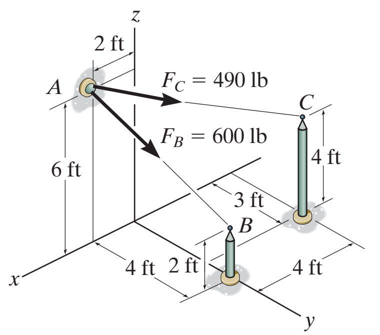
Prob. F2–22

F2–23. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force at A.



Prob. F2–23

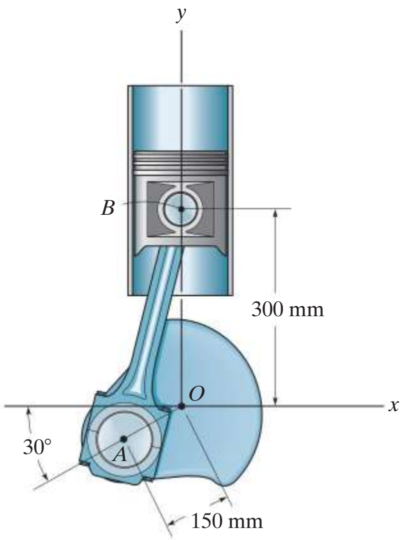
F2–24. Determine the resultant force at A.



Prob. F2–24

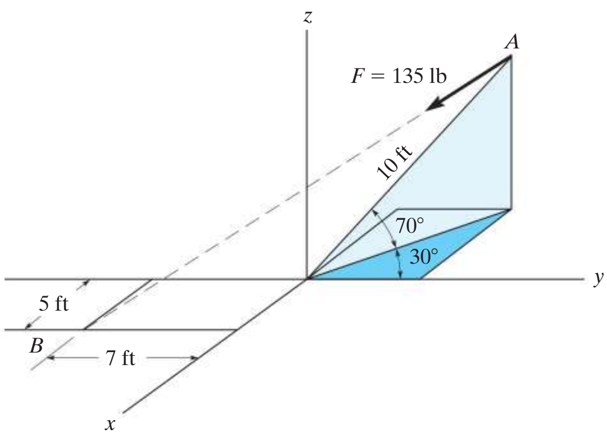
PROBLEMS

2–86. Determine the length of the connecting rod AB by first formulating a Cartesian position vector from A to B and then determining its magnitude.



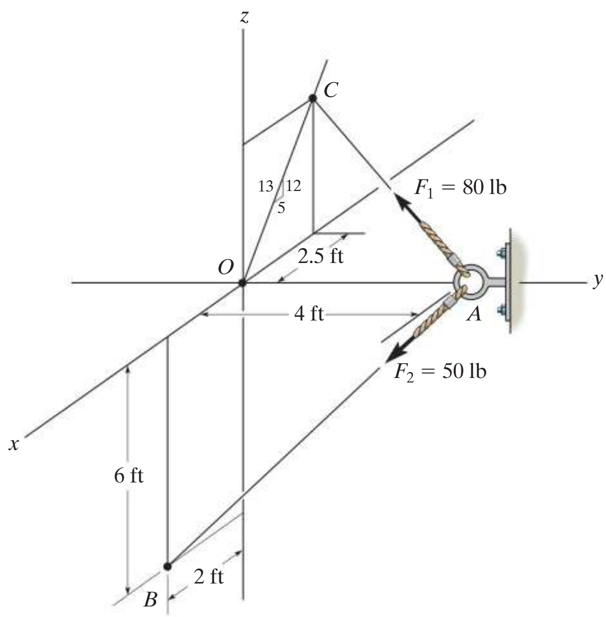
Prob. 2–86

2–87. Express force **F** as a Cartesian vector; then determine its coordinate direction angles.



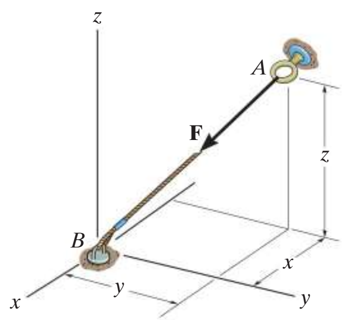
Prob. 2–87

***2–88.** Express each of the forces in Cartesian vector form and determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force.



Prob. 2–88

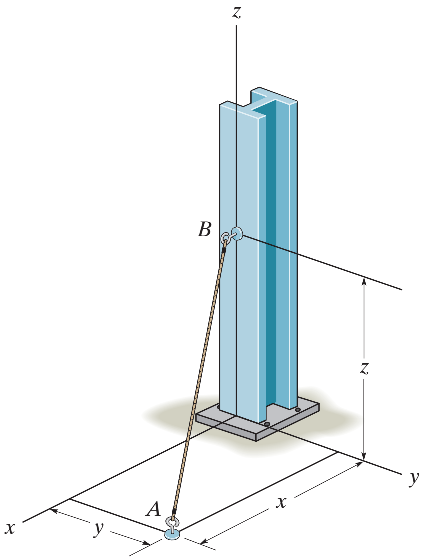
2–89. If $\mathbf{F} = \{350\mathbf{i} - 250\mathbf{j} - 450\mathbf{k}\}$ N and cable AB is 9 m long, determine the x, y, z coordinates of point A.



Prob. 2–89

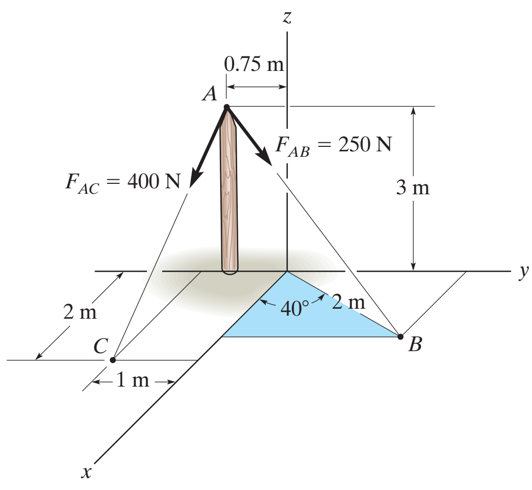
2–90. The 8-m-long cable is anchored to the ground at A. If $x = 4$ m and $y = 2$ m, determine the coordinate z to the highest point of attachment along the column.

2–91. The 8-m-long cable is anchored to the ground at A. If $z = 5$ m, determine the location $+x, +y$ of point A. Choose a value such that $x = y$.



Probs. 2–90/91

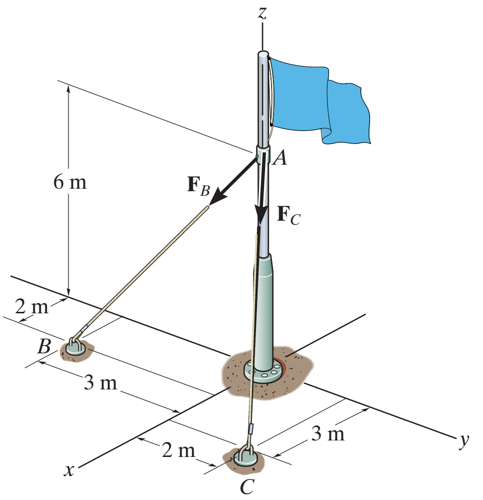
***2–92.** Express each of the forces in Cartesian vector form and determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force.



Prob. 2–92

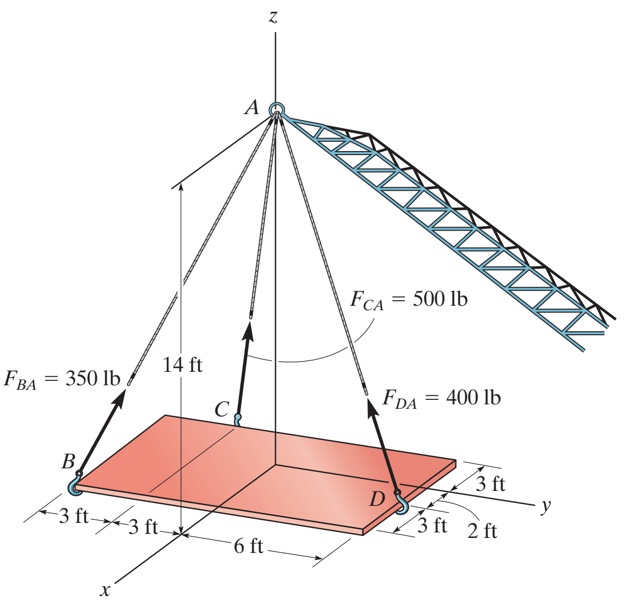
2–93. If $F_B = 560$ N and $F_C = 700$ N, determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force acting on the flag pole.

2–94. If $F_B = 700$ N, and $F_C = 560$ N, determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force acting on the flag pole.



Probs. 2–93/94

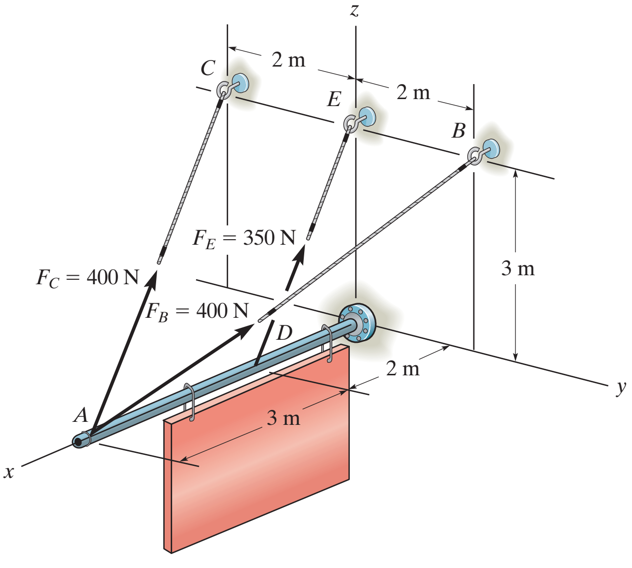
2–95. The plate is suspended using the three cables which exert the forces shown. Express each force as a Cartesian vector.



Prob. 2–95

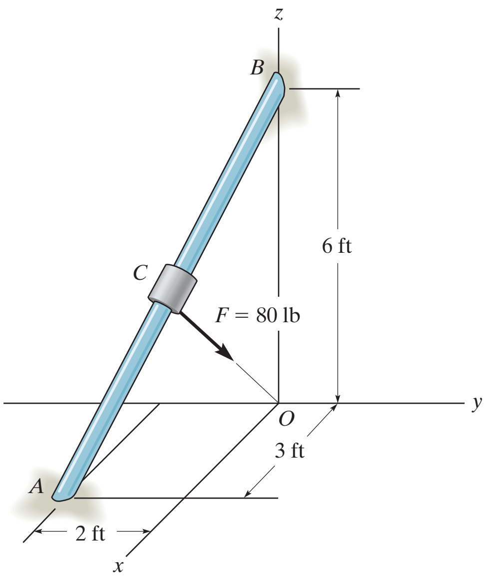
*2–96. The three supporting cables exert the forces shown on the sign. Represent each force as a Cartesian vector.

2–97. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force of the two forces acting on the sign at point A.



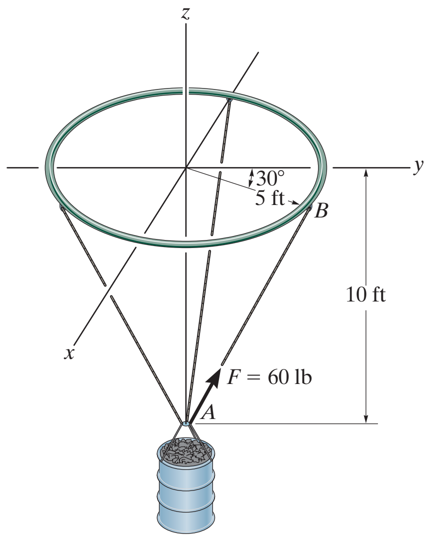
Probs. 2–96/97

2–98. The force **F** has a magnitude of 80 lb and acts at the midpoint C of the thin rod. Express the force as a Cartesian vector.



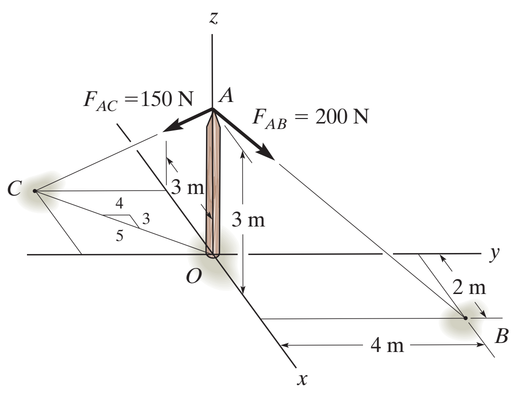
Prob. 2–98

2–99. The load at A creates a force of 60 lb in wire AB. Express this force as a Cartesian vector acting on A and directed toward B as shown.



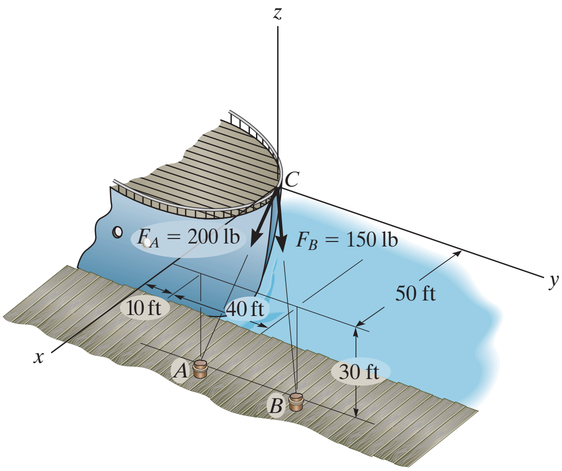
Prob. 2–99

*2–100. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force acting at point A on the post.



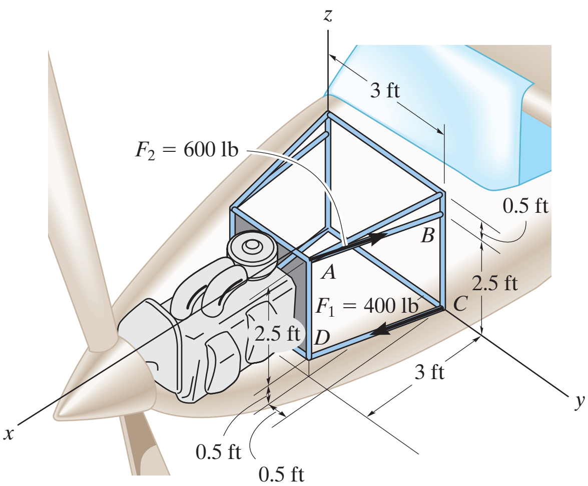
Prob. 2–100

2–101. The two mooring cables exert forces on the stern of a ship as shown. Represent each force as as Cartesian vector and determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant.



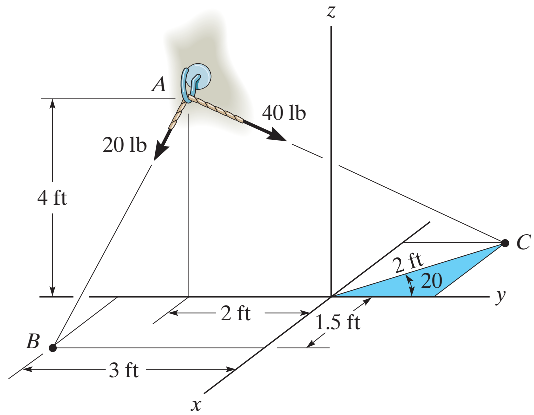
Prob. 2–101

2–102. The engine of the lightweight plane is supported by struts that are connected to the space truss that makes up the structure of the plane. The anticipated loading in two of the struts is shown. Express each of those forces as Cartesian vector.



Prob. 2–102

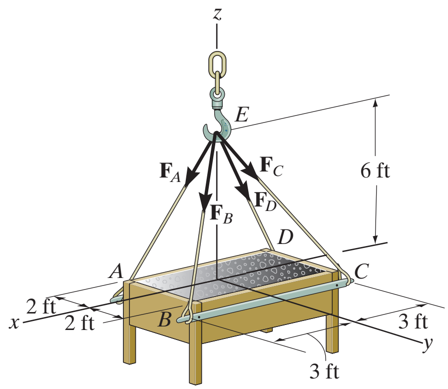
2–103. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force.



Prob. 2–103

***2–104.** If the force in each cable tied to the bin is 70 lb, determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force.

2–105. If the resultant of the four forces is $\mathbf{F}_R = \{-360\mathbf{k}\}$ lb, determine the tension developed in each cable. Due to symmetry, the tension in the four cables is the same.



Probs. 2–104/105

2.9 Dot Product

Occasionally in statics one has to find the angle between two lines or the components of a force parallel and perpendicular to a line. In two dimensions, these problems can readily be solved by trigonometry since the geometry is easy to visualize. In three dimensions, however, this is often difficult, and consequently vector methods should be employed for the solution. The dot product, which defines a particular method for "multiplying" two vectors, can be used to solve the above-mentioned problems.

The ***dot product*** of vectors **A** and **B**, written $\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B}$ and read "**A** dot **B**," is defined as the product of the magnitudes of **A** and **B** and the cosine of the angle θ between their tails, Fig. 2–40. Expressed in equation form,

$$\boxed{\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = AB \cos \theta} \tag{2–12}$$

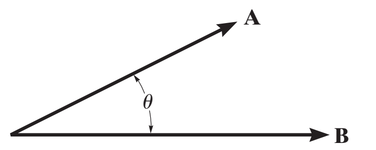


Fig. 2–40

where $0° \leq \theta \leq 180°$. The dot product is often referred to as the *scalar product* of vectors since the result is a *scalar* and not a vector.

Laws of Operation.

1. Commutative law: $\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{A}$
2. Multiplication by a scalar: $a(\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B}) = (a\mathbf{A}) \cdot \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{A} \cdot (a\mathbf{B})$
3. Distributive law: $\mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{D}) = (\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B}) + (\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{D})$

It is easy to prove the first and second laws by using Eq. 2–12. The proof of the distributive law is left as an exercise (see Prob. 2–112).

Cartesian Vector Formulation.

Equation 2–12 must be used to find the dot product for any two Cartesian unit vectors. For example, $\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{i} = (1)(1) \cos 0° = 1$ and $\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{j} = (1)(1) \cos 90° = 0$. If we want to find the dot product of two general vectors **A** and **B** that are expressed in Cartesian vector form, then we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} &= (A_x\mathbf{i} + A_y\mathbf{j} + A_z\mathbf{k}) \cdot (B_x\mathbf{i} + B_y\mathbf{j} + B_z\mathbf{k}) \\
&= A_xB_x(\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{i}) + A_xB_y(\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{j}) + A_xB_z(\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{k}) \\
&\quad + A_yB_x(\mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{i}) + A_yB_y(\mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{j}) + A_yB_z(\mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{k}) \\
&\quad + A_zB_x(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{i}) + A_zB_y(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{j}) + A_zB_z(\mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{k})
\end{aligned}$$

Carrying out the dot-product operations, the final result becomes

$$\boxed{\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = A_xB_x + A_yB_y + A_zB_z} \tag{2–13}$$

Thus, to determine the dot product of two Cartesian vectors, multiply their corresponding x, y, z components and sum these products algebraically. Note that the result will be either a positive or negative *scalar*, or it could be zero.

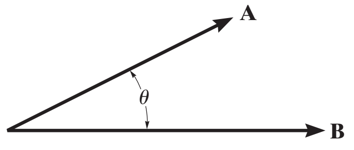


Fig. 2–40 (Repeated)

Applications. The dot product has two important applications in mechanics.

- ***The angle formed between two vectors or intersecting lines.*** The angle θ between the tails of vectors $\mathbf{A}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ in Fig. 2–40 can be determined from Eq. 2–12 and written as

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{\mathbf{A}\cdot\mathbf{B}}{AB}\right) \quad 0^\circ \le \theta \le 180^\circ$$

Here $\mathbf{A}\cdot\mathbf{B}$ is found from Eq. 2–13. In particular, notice that if $\mathbf{A}\cdot\mathbf{B} = 0, \theta = \cos^{-1} 0 = 90^\circ$ so that $\mathbf{A}$ will be *perpendicular* to $\mathbf{B}$.

- ***The components of a vector parallel and perpendicular to a line.*** The component of vector $\mathbf{A}$ parallel to or collinear with the line aa in Fig. 2–40 is defined by A_a where $A_a = A\cos\theta$. This component is sometimes referred to as the ***projection*** of $\mathbf{A}$ onto the line, since a *right angle* is formed in the construction. If the *direction* of the line is specified by the unit vector $\mathbf{u}_a$, then since $u_a = 1$, we can determine the magnitude of A_a directly from the dot product (Eq. 2–12); i.e.,

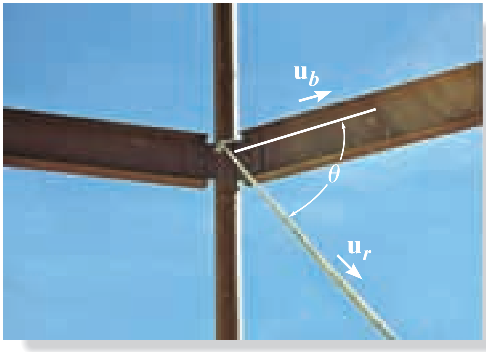
$$A_a = A\cos\theta = \mathbf{A}\cdot\mathbf{u}_a$$

Hence, the scalar projection of $\mathbf{A}$ *along a line is determined from the dot product of* $\mathbf{A}$ *and the unit vector* $\mathbf{u}_a$ *which defines the direction of the line*. Notice that if this result is positive, then $\mathbf{A}_a$ has a directional sense which is the same as $\mathbf{u}_a$, whereas if A_a is a negative scalar, then $\mathbf{A}_a$ has the opposite sense of direction to $\mathbf{u}_a$.

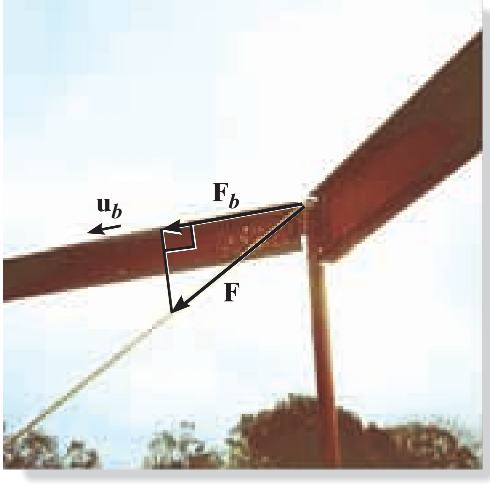
The component $\mathbf{A}_a$ represented as a *vector* is therefore

$$\mathbf{A}_a = A_a\mathbf{u}_a$$

The component of $\mathbf{A}$ that is *perpendicular* to line aa can also be obtained, Fig. 2–41. Since $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}_a + \mathbf{A}_\perp$, then $\mathbf{A}_\perp = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{A}_a$. There are two possible ways of obtaining $A_\perp$. One way would be to determine θ from the dot product, $\theta = \cos^{-1}(\mathbf{A}\cdot\mathbf{u}_A/A)$, then $A_\perp = A\sin\theta$. Alternatively, if A_a is known, then by Pythagorean's theorem we can also write $A_\perp = \sqrt{A^2 - A_a{}^2}$.



The angle θ between the rope and the beam can be determined by formulating unit vectors along the beam and rope and then using the dot product $\mathbf{u}_b\cdot\mathbf{u}_r = (1)(1)\cos\theta$. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)



The projection of the cable force $\mathbf{F}$ along the beam can be determined by first finding the unit vector $\mathbf{u}_b$ that defines this direction. Then apply the dot product, $F_b = \mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{u}_b$. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

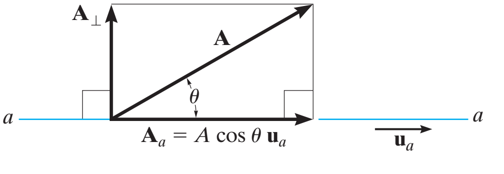


Fig. 2–41

Important Points

- The dot product is used to determine the angle between two vectors or the projection of a vector in a specified direction.
- If vectors **A** and **B** are expressed in Cartesian vector form, the dot product is determined by multiplying the respective x, y, z scalar components and algebraically adding the results, i.e., $\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = A_x B_x + A_y B_y + A_z B_z$.
- From the definition of the dot product, the angle formed between the tails of vectors **A** and **B** is $\theta = \cos^{-1}(\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B}/AB)$.
- The magnitude of the projection of vector **A** along a line aa whose direction is specified by $\mathbf{u}_a$ is determined from the dot product $A_a = \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{u}_a$.

EXAMPLE 2.14

Determine the magnitudes of the projection of the force **F** in Fig. 2–42 onto the u and v axes.

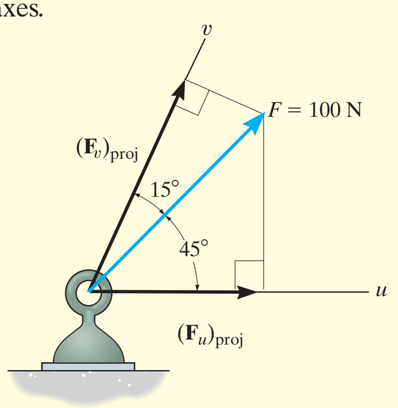


Fig. 2–42

SOLUTION

Projections of Force. The graphical representation of the *projections* is shown in Fig. 2–42. From this figure, the magnitudes of the projections of **F** onto the u and v axes can be obtained by trigonometry:

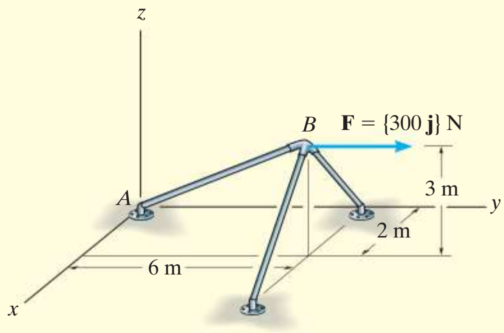
$$(F_u)_{\text{proj}} = (100 \text{ N})\cos 45^\circ = 70.7 \text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$(F_v)_{\text{proj}} = (100 \text{ N})\cos 15^\circ = 96.6 \text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

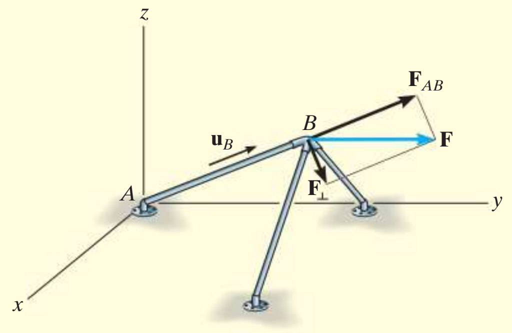
NOTE: These projections are not equal to the magnitudes of the components of force **F** along the u and v axes found from the parallelogram law. They will only be equal if the u and v axes are *perpendicular* to one another.

EXAMPLE 2.15

The frame shown in Fig. 2–43*a* is subjected to a horizontal force $\mathbf{F} = \{300\mathbf{j}\}$ N. Determine the magnitudes of the components of this force parallel and perpendicular to member AB.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 2–43

SOLUTION

The magnitude of the component of $\mathbf{F}$ along AB is equal to the dot product of $\mathbf{F}$ and the unit vector $\mathbf{u}_B$, which defines the direction of AB, Fig. 2–43*b*. Since

$$\mathbf{u}_B = \frac{\mathbf{r}_B}{r_B} = \frac{2\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{(2)^2 + (6)^2 + (3)^2}} = 0.286\,\mathbf{i} + 0.857\,\mathbf{j} + 0.429\,\mathbf{k}$$

then

$$\begin{aligned} F_{AB} &= F\cos\theta = \mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{u}_B = (300\mathbf{j})\cdot(0.286\mathbf{i} + 0.857\mathbf{j} + 0.429\mathbf{k}) \\ &= (0)(0.286) + (300)(0.857) + (0)(0.429) \\ &= 257.1\text{ N} \end{aligned}$$

Ans.

Since the result is a positive scalar, $\mathbf{F}_{AB}$ has the same sense of direction as $\mathbf{u}_B$, Fig. 2–43*b*.

Expressing $\mathbf{F}_{AB}$ in Cartesian vector form, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_{AB} &= F_{AB}\mathbf{u}_B = (257.1\text{ N})(0.286\mathbf{i} + 0.857\mathbf{j} + 0.429\mathbf{k}) \\ &= \{73.5\mathbf{i} + 220\mathbf{j} + 110\mathbf{k}\}\text{N} \end{aligned}$$

Ans.

The perpendicular component, Fig. 2–43*b*, is therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_\perp &= \mathbf{F} - \mathbf{F}_{AB} = 300\mathbf{j} - (73.5\mathbf{i} + 220\mathbf{j} + 110\mathbf{k}) \\ &= \{-73.5\mathbf{i} + 79.6\mathbf{j} - 110\mathbf{k}\}\text{N} \end{aligned}$$

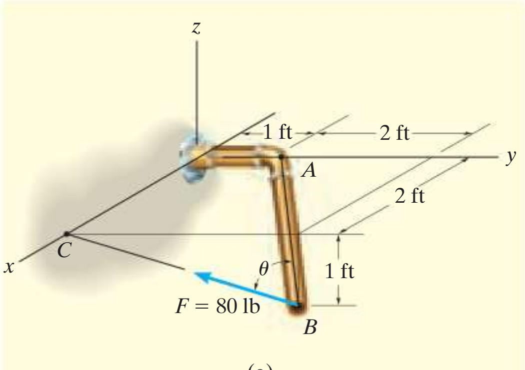
Its magnitude can be determined either from this vector or by using the Pythagorean theorem, Fig. 2–43*b*:

$$\begin{aligned} F_\perp &= \sqrt{F^2 - F_{AB}^2} = \sqrt{(300\text{ N})^2 - (257.1\text{ N})^2} \\ &= 155\text{ N} \end{aligned}$$

Ans.

EXAMPLE 2.16

The pipe in Fig. 2–44*a* is subjected to the force of $F = 80$ lb. Determine the angle θ between **F** and the pipe segment *BA* and the projection of **F** along this segment.



(a)

SOLUTION

Angle θ. First we will establish position vectors from *B* to *A* and *B* to *C*; Fig. 2–44*b*. Then we will determine the angle θ between the tails of these two vectors.

$$\mathbf{r}_{BA} = \{-2\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 1\mathbf{k}\}\text{ ft},\quad r_{BA} = 3\text{ ft}$$
$$\mathbf{r}_{BC} = \{-3\mathbf{j} + 1\mathbf{k}\}\text{ ft},\quad r_{BC} = \sqrt{10}\,ft$$

Thus,

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{r}_{BA}\cdot\mathbf{r}_{BC}}{r_{BA}r_{BC}} = \frac{(-2)(0) + (-2)(-3) + (1)(1)}{3\sqrt{10}} = 0.7379$$

$$\theta = 42.5^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Components of F. The component of **F** along *BA* is shown in Fig. 2–44*c*. We must first formulate the unit vector along *BA* and force **F** as Cartesian vectors.

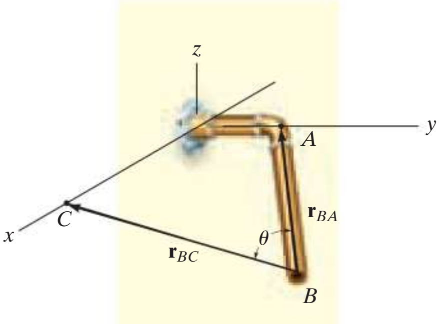
$$\mathbf{u}_{BA} = \frac{\mathbf{r}_{BA}}{r_{BA}} = \frac{(-2\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 1\mathbf{k})}{3} = -\frac{2}{3}\mathbf{i} - \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{j} + \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{F} = 80\text{ lb}\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}_{BC}}{r_{BC}}\right) = 80\left(\frac{-3\mathbf{j} + 1\mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{10}}\right) = -75.89\mathbf{j} + 25.30\mathbf{k}$$

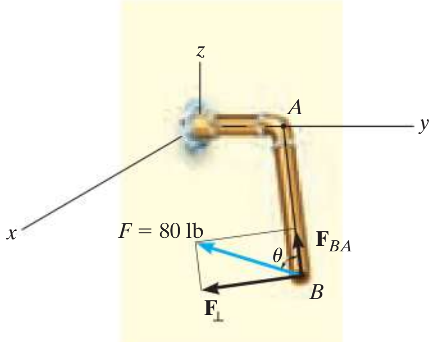
Thus,

$$F_{BA} = \mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{u}_{BA} = (-75.89\mathbf{j} + 25.30\mathbf{k})\cdot\left(-\frac{2}{3}\mathbf{i} - \frac{2}{3}\mathbf{j} + \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{k}\right)$$
$$= 0\left(-\frac{2}{3}\right) + (-75.89)\left(-\frac{2}{3}\right) + (25.30)\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)$$
$$= 59.0\text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

NOTE: Since θ has been calculated, then also, $F_{BA} = F\cos\theta = 80\text{ lb}\cos 42.5^\circ = 59.0$ lb.



(b)

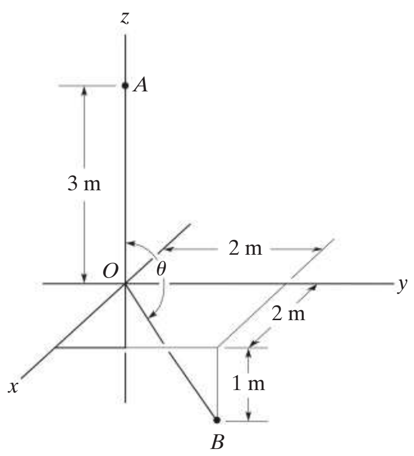


(c)

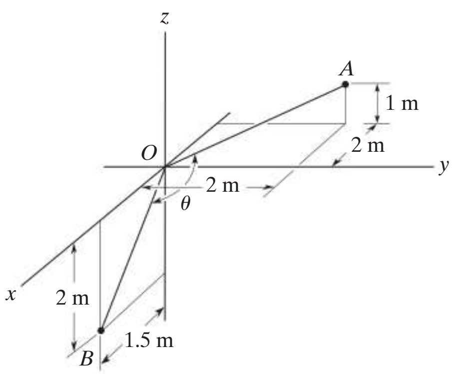
Fig. 2–44

PRELIMINARY PROBLEMS

P2–8. In each case, set up the dot product to find the angle θ. Do not calculate the result.



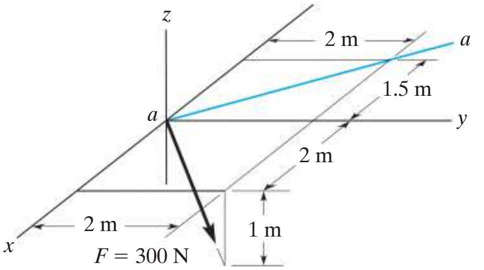
(a)



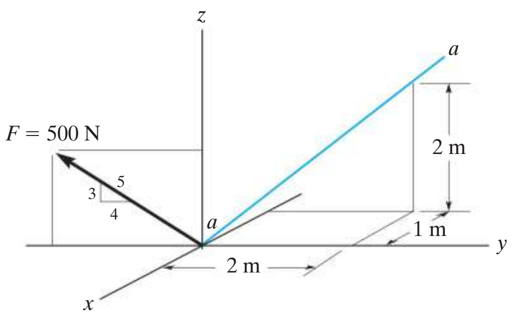
(b)

Prob. P2–8

P2–9. In each case, set up the dot product to find the magnitude of the projection of the force **F** along *a-a* axes. Do not calculate the result.



(a)

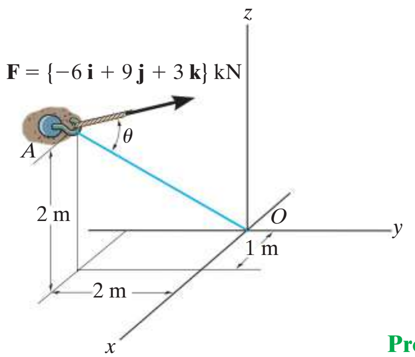


(b)

Prob. P2–9

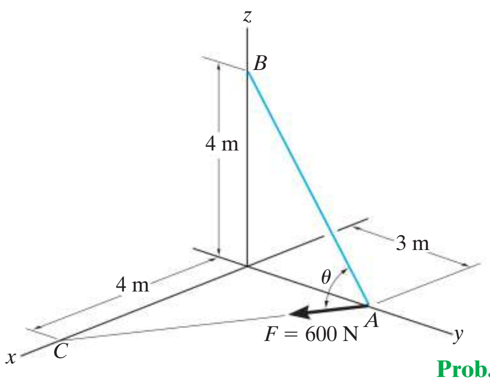
FUNDAMENTAL PROBLEMS

F2–25. Determine the angle θ between the force and the line AO.



Prob. F2–25

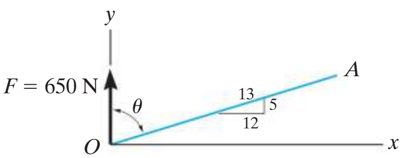
F2–26. Determine the angle θ between the force and the line AB.



Prob. F2–26

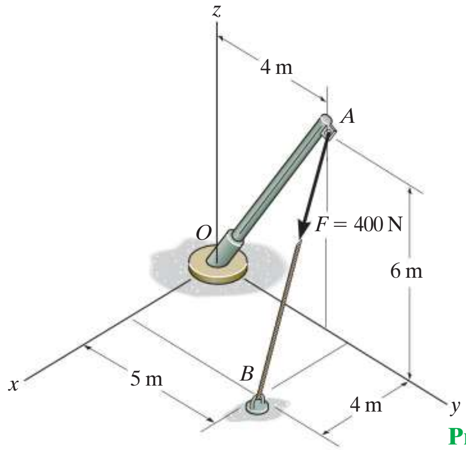
F2–27. Determine the angle θ between the force and the line OA.

F2–28. Determine the projected component of the force along the line OA.



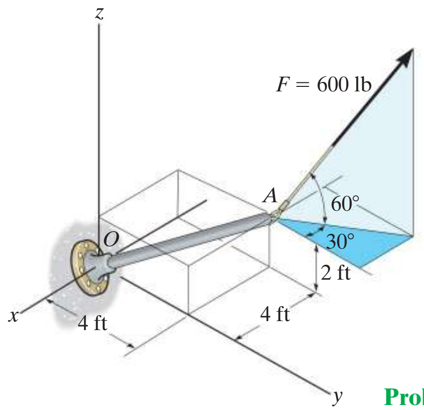
Probs. F2–27/28

F2–29. Find the magnitude of the projected component of the force along the pipe AO.



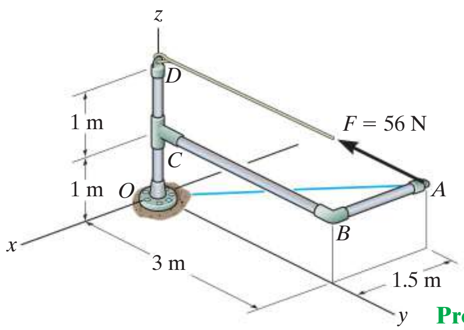
Prob. F2–29

F2–30. Determine the components of the force acting parallel and perpendicular to the axis of the pole.



Prob. F2–30

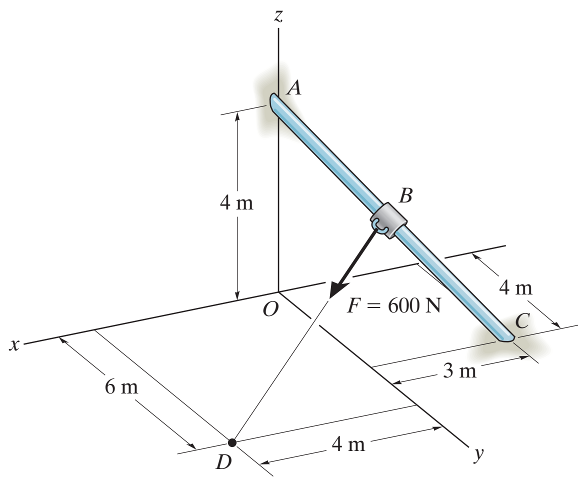
F2–31. Determine the magnitudes of the components of the force $F = 56$ N acting along and perpendicular to line AO.



Prob. F2–31

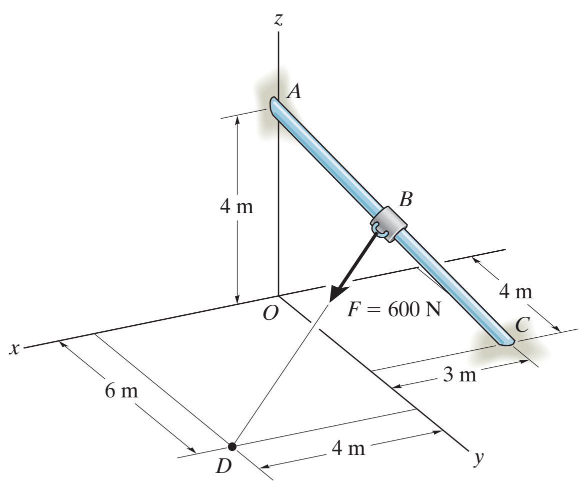
PROBLEMS

2–106. Express the force **F** in Cartesian vector form if it acts at the midpoint B of the rod.



Prob. 2–106

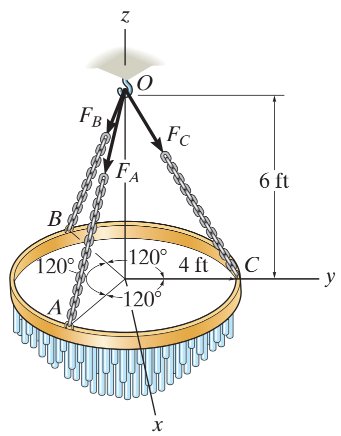
2–107. Express force **F** in Cartesian vector form if point B is located 3 m along the rod from end C.



Prob. 2–107

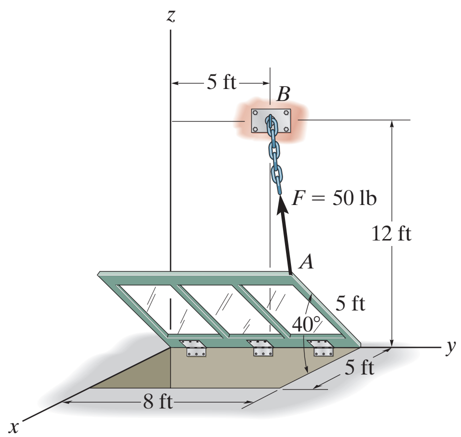
***2–108.** The chandelier is supported by three chains which are concurrent at point O. If the force in each chain has a magnitude of 60 lb, express each force as a Cartesian vector and determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant force.

2–109. The chandelier is supported by three chains which are concurrent at point O. If the resultant force at O has a magnitude of 130 lb and is directed along the negative z axis, determine the force in each chain.



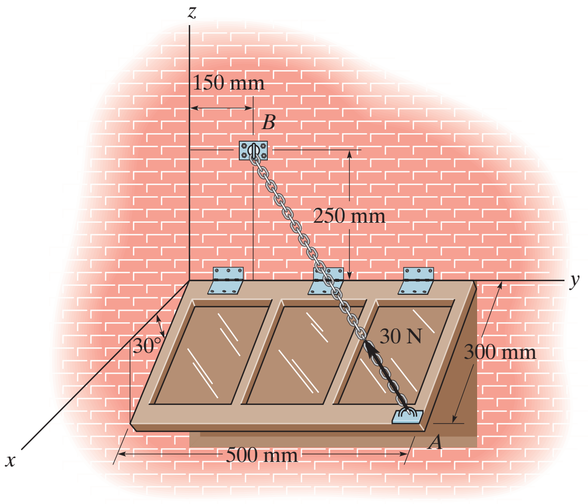
Probs. 2–108/109

2–110. The window is held open by chain AB. Determine the length of the chain, and express the 50-lb force acting at A along the chain as a Cartesian vector and determine its coordinate direction angles.



Prob. 2–110

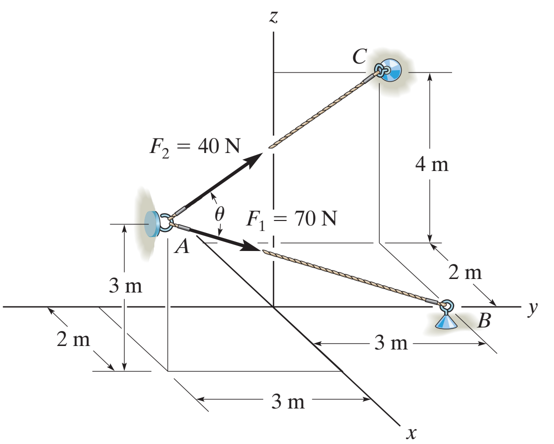
2–111. The window is held open by cable AB. Determine the length of the cable and express the 30-N force acting at A along the cable as a Cartesian vector.



Prob. 2–111

2–114. Determine the angle θ between the two cables.

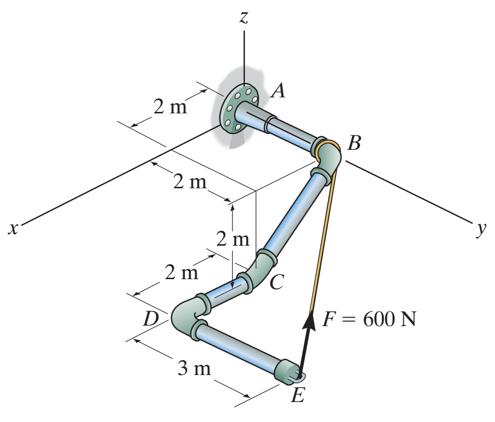
2–115. Determine the magnitude of the projection of the force $\mathbf{F}_1$ along cable AC.



Probs. 2–114/115

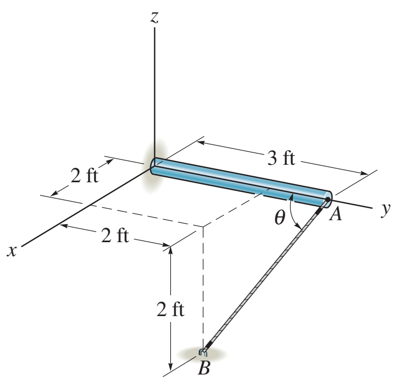
*__2–112.__ Given the three vectors **A, B,** and **D,** show that $\mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{D}) = (\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B}) + (\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{D})$.

2–113. Determine the magnitudes of the components of $F = 600$ N acting along and perpendicular to segment DE of the pipe assembly.



Probs. 2–112/113

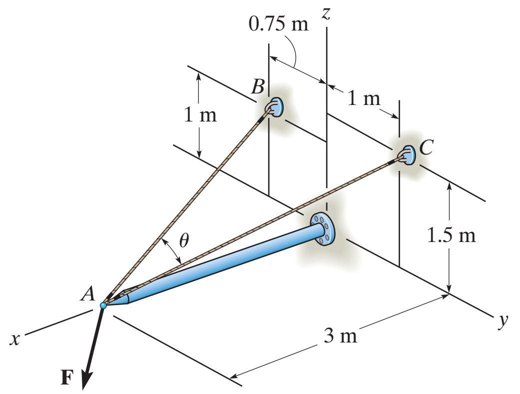
*__2–116.__ Determine the angle θ between the y axis of the pole and the wire AB.



Prob. 2–116

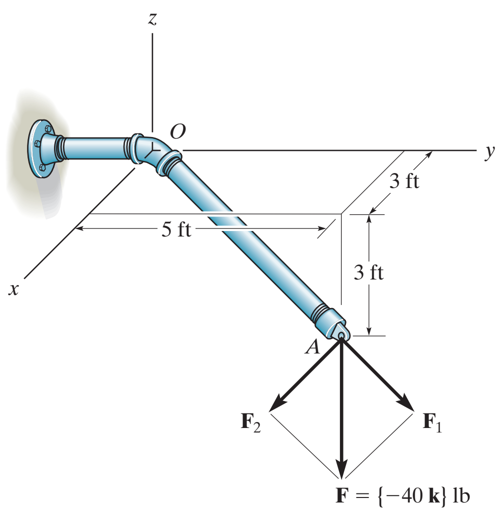
2–117. Determine the magnitudes of the projected components of the force $\mathbf{F} = [60\mathbf{i} + 12\mathbf{j} - 40\mathbf{k}]$ N along the cables AB and AC.

2–118. Determine the angle θ between cables AB and AC.



Probs. 2–117/118

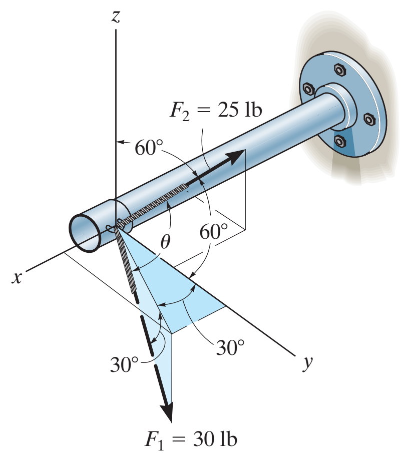
2–119. A force of $\mathbf{F} = \{-40\mathbf{k}\}$ lb acts at the end of the pipe. Determine the magnitudes of the components $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ which are directed along the pipe's axis and perpendicular to it.



Prob. 2–119

***2–120.** Two cables exert forces on the pipe. Determine the magnitude of the projected component of $\mathbf{F}_1$ along the line of action of $\mathbf{F}_2$.

2–121. Determine the angle θ between the two cables attached to the pipe.

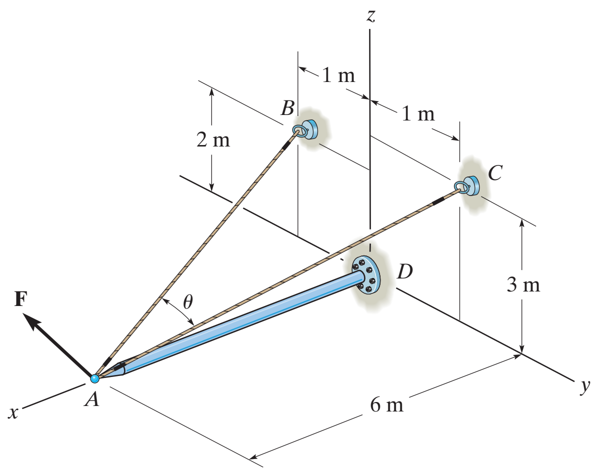


Probs. 2–120/121

2–122. Determine the angle θ between the cables AB and AC.

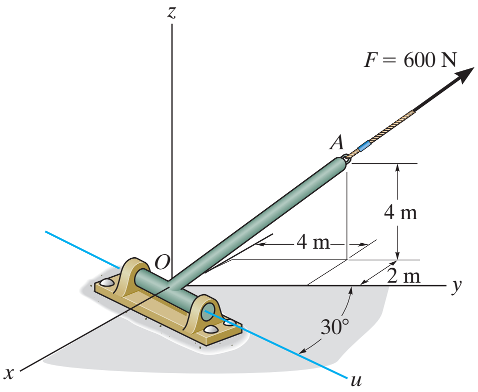
2–123. Determine the magnitude of the projected component of the force $\mathbf{F} = \{400\mathbf{i} - 200\mathbf{j} + 500\mathbf{k}\}$ N acting along the cable BA.

***2–124.** Determine the magnitude of the projected component of the force $\mathbf{F} = \{400\mathbf{i} - 200\mathbf{j} + 500\mathbf{k}\}$ N acting along the cable CA.



Probs. 2–122/123/124

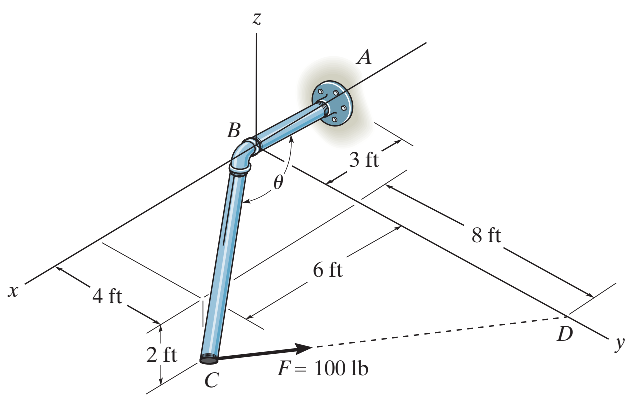
2–125. Determine the magnitude of the projection of force $F = 600$ N along the u axis.



Prob. 2–125

2–126. Determine the magnitude of the projected component of the 100-lb force acting along the axis BC of the pipe.

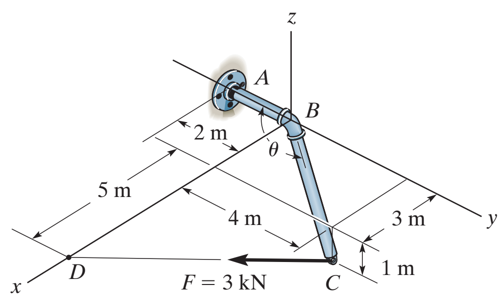
2–127. Determine the angle θ between pipe segments BA and BC.



Probs. 2–126/127

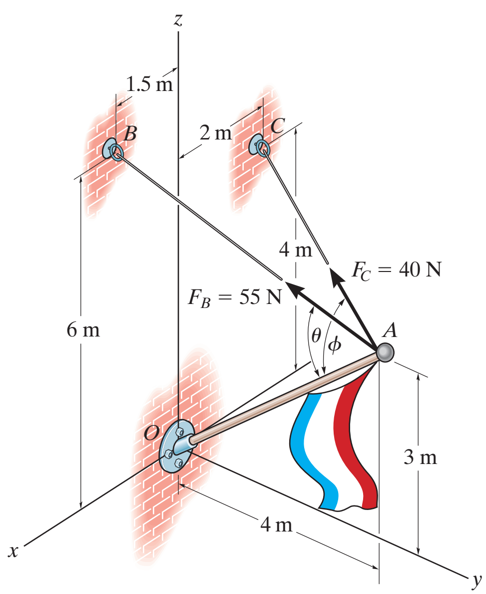
***2–128.** Determine the angle θ between BA and BC.

2–129. Determine the magnitude of the projected component of the 3 kN force acting along the axis BC of the pipe.



Probs. 2–128/129

2–130. Determine the angles θ and ϕ made between the axes OA of the flag pole and AB and AC, respectively, of each cable.

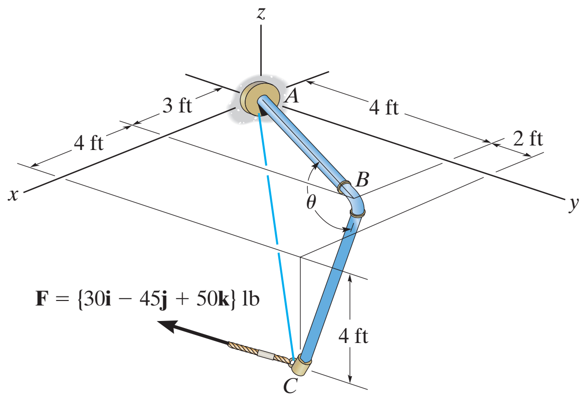


Prob. 2–130

2–131. Determine the magnitudes of the components of **F** acting along and perpendicular to segment BC of the pipe assembly.

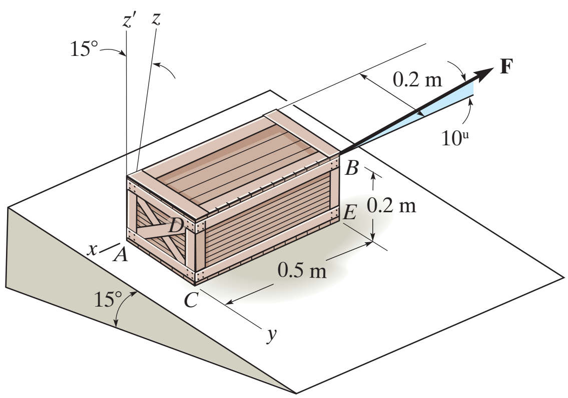
***2–132.** Determine the magnitude of the projected component of **F** along AC. Express this component as a Cartesian vector.

2–133. Determine the angle θ between the pipe segments BA and BC.



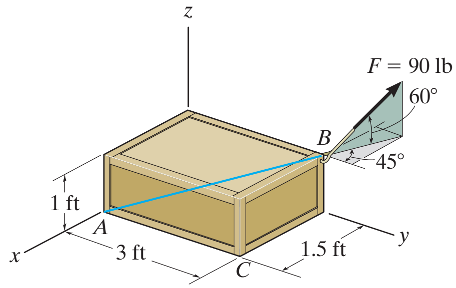
Probs. 2–131/132/133

2–134. If the force $F = 100$ N lies in the plane $DBEC$, which is parallel to the x–z plane, and makes an angle of 10° with the extended line DB as shown, determine the angle that **F** makes with the diagonal AB of the crate.



Prob. 2–134

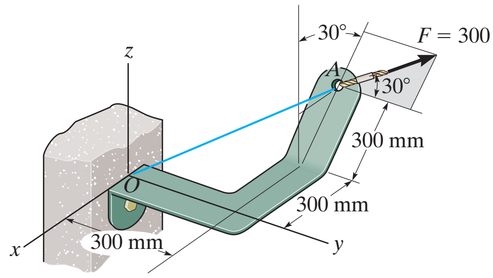
2–135. Determine the magnitudes of the components of the force $F = 90$ lb acting parallel and perpendicular to diagonal AB of the crate.



Prob. 2–135

***2–136.** Determine the magnitudes of the projected components of the force $F = 300$ N acting along the x and y axes.

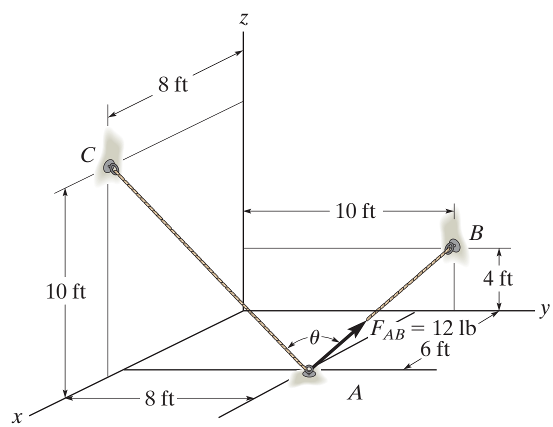
2–137. Determine the magnitude of the projected component of the force $F = 300$ N acting along line OA.



Probs. 2–136/137

2–138. Determine the angle θ between the two cables.

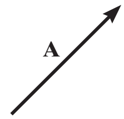
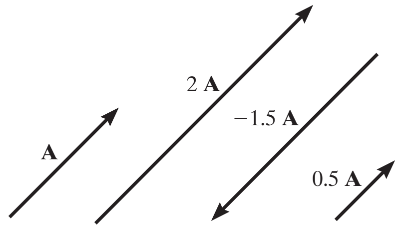
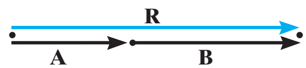
2–139. Determine the projected component of the force $F = 12$ lb acting in the direction of cable AC. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.

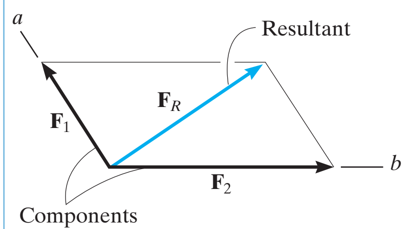
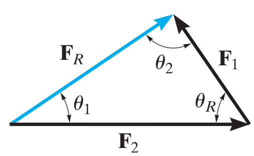


Probs. 2–138/139

CHAPTER REVIEW

<table>
<tr>
<td>A scalar is a positive or negative number; e.g., mass and temperature.

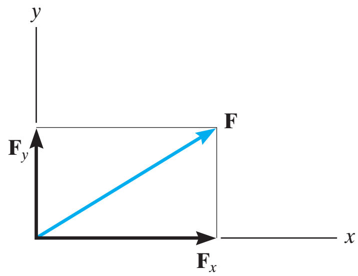
A vector has a magnitude and direction, where the arrowhead represents the sense of the vector.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiplication or division of a vector by a scalar will change only the magnitude of the vector. If the scalar is negative, the sense of the vector will change so that it acts in the opposite sense.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If vectors are collinear, the resultant is simply the algebraic or scalar addition.</td>
<td>$R = A + B$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallelogram Law
Two forces add according to the parallelogram law. The components form the sides of the parallelogram and the resultant is the diagonal.

To find the components of a force along any two axes, extend lines from the head of the force, parallel to the axes, to form the components.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To obtain the components of the resultant, show how the forces add by tip-to-tail using the triangle rule, and then use the law of cosines and the law of sines to calculate their values.</td>
<td>$$F_R = \sqrt{F_1^2 + F_2^2 - 2\,F_1F_2\cos\theta_R}$$ $$\frac{F_1}{\sin\theta_1} = \frac{F_2}{\sin\theta_2} = \frac{F_R}{\sin\theta_R}$$</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</table>

2

Rectangular Components: Two Dimensions

Vectors $\mathbf{F}_x$ and $\mathbf{F}_y$ are rectangular components of $\mathbf{F}$.



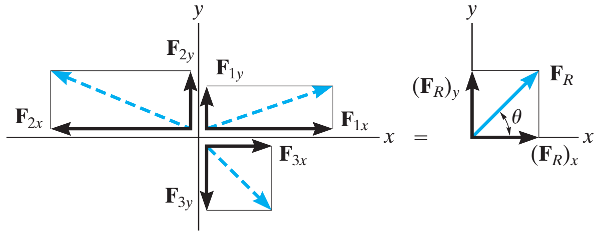
The resultant force is determined from the algebraic sum of its components.

$$(F_R)_x = \Sigma F_x$$

$$(F_R)_y = \Sigma F_y$$

$$F_R = \sqrt{(F_R)_x^2 + (F_R)_y^2}$$

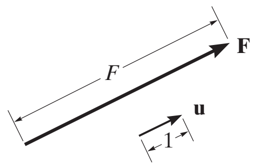
$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left|\frac{(F_R)_y}{(F_R)_x}\right|$$



Cartesian Vectors

The unit vector $\mathbf{u}$ has a length of 1, no units, and it points in the direction of the vector $\mathbf{F}$.

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{\mathbf{F}}{F}$$



A force can be resolved into its Cartesian components along the x, y, z axes so that $\mathbf{F} = F_x\mathbf{i} + F_y\mathbf{j} + F_z\mathbf{k}$.

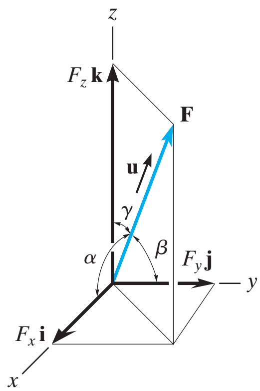
The magnitude of $\mathbf{F}$ is determined from the positive square root of the sum of the squares of its components.

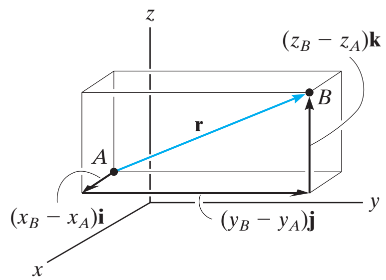
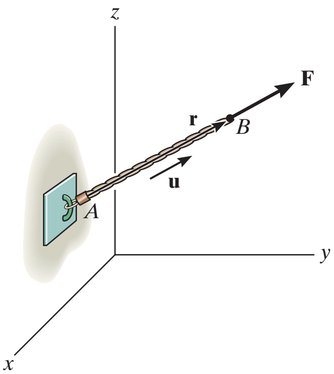
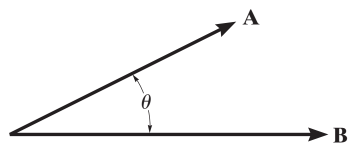
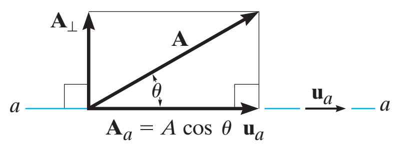
$$F = \sqrt{F_x^2 + F_y^2 + F_z^2}$$

The coordinate direction angles α, β, γ are determined by formulating a unit vector in the direction of $\mathbf{F}$. The x, y, z components of $\mathbf{u}$ represent $\cos\alpha, \cos\beta, \cos\gamma$.

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{\mathbf{F}}{F} = \frac{F_x}{F}\mathbf{i} + \frac{F_y}{F}\mathbf{j} + \frac{F_z}{F}\mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{u} = \cos\alpha\,\mathbf{i} + \cos\beta\,\mathbf{j} + \cos\gamma\,\mathbf{k}$$

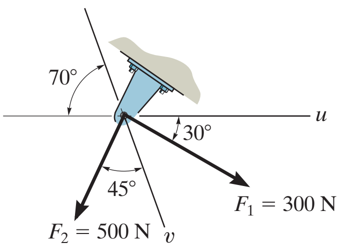


The coordinate direction angles are related so that only two of the three angles are independent of one another. To find the resultant of a concurrent force system, express each force as a Cartesian vector and add the **i**, **j**, **k** components of all the forces in the system.	$\cos^2\alpha + \cos^2\beta + \cos^2\gamma = 1$ $\mathbf{F}_R = \Sigma\mathbf{F} = \Sigma F_x\mathbf{i} + \Sigma F_y\mathbf{j} + \Sigma F_z\mathbf{k}$	
Position and Force Vectors A position vector locates one point in space relative to another. The easiest way to formulate the components of a position vector is to determine the distance and direction that one must travel along the x, y, and z directions—going from the tail to the head of the vector. If the line of action of a force passes through points A and B, then the force acts in the same direction as the position vector **r**, which is defined by the unit vector **u**. The force can then be expressed as a Cartesian vector.	$\mathbf{r} = (x_B - x_A)\mathbf{i}$ $+ (y_B - y_A)\mathbf{j}$ $+ (z_B - z_A)\mathbf{k}$ $\mathbf{F} = F\mathbf{u} = F\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}}{r}\right)$	 
Dot Product The dot product between two vectors **A** and **B** yields a scalar. If **A** and **B** are expressed in Cartesian vector form, then the dot product is the sum of the products of their x, y, and z components. The dot product can be used to determine the angle between **A** and **B**. The dot product is also used to determine the projected component of a vector **A** onto an axis aa defined by its unit vector $\mathbf{u}_a$.	$\mathbf{A}\cdot\mathbf{B} = AB\cos\theta$ $= A_xB_x + A_yB_y + A_zB_z$ $\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{\mathbf{A}\cdot\mathbf{B}}{AB}\right)$ $\mathbf{A}_a = A\cos\theta\,\mathbf{u}_a = (\mathbf{A}\cdot\mathbf{u}_a)\mathbf{u}_a$	 

REVIEW PROBLEMS

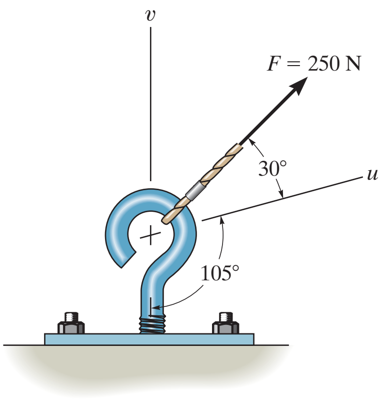
Partial solutions and answers to all Review Problems are given in the back of the book.

R2–1. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ and its direction, measured clockwise from the positive u axis.



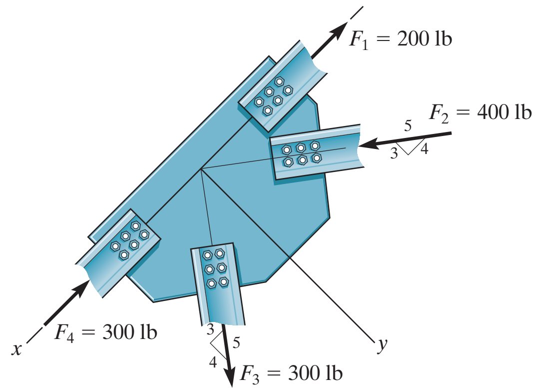
Prob. R2–1

R2–2. Resolve **F** into components along the u and v axes and determine the magnitudes of these components.



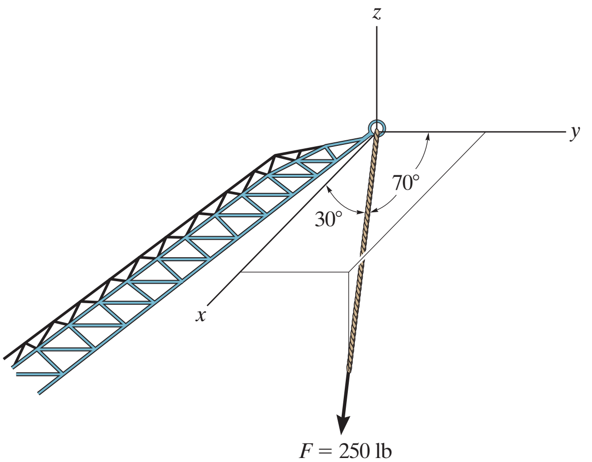
Prob. R2–2

R2–3. Determine the magnitude of the resultant force acting on the *gusset plate* of the bridge truss.



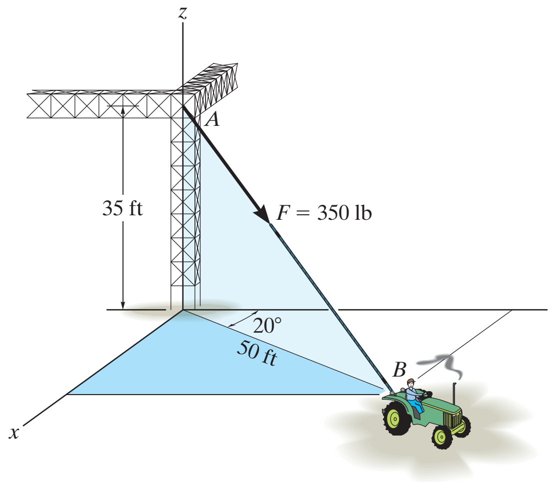
Prob. R2–3

R2–4. The cable at the end of the crane boom exerts a force of 250 lb on the boom as shown. Express **F** as a Cartesian vector.



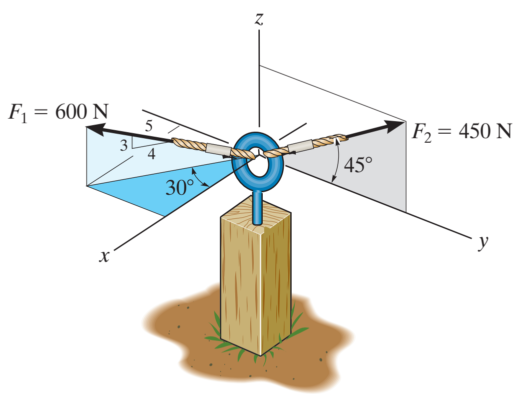
Prob. R2–4

R2–5. The cable attached to the tractor at B exerts a force of 350 lb on the framework. Express this force as a Cartesian vector.



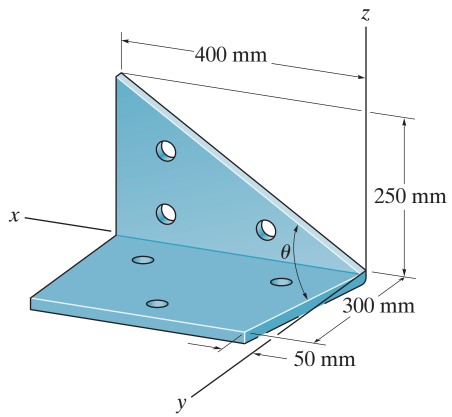
Prob. R2–5

R2–6. Express $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ as Cartesian vectors.



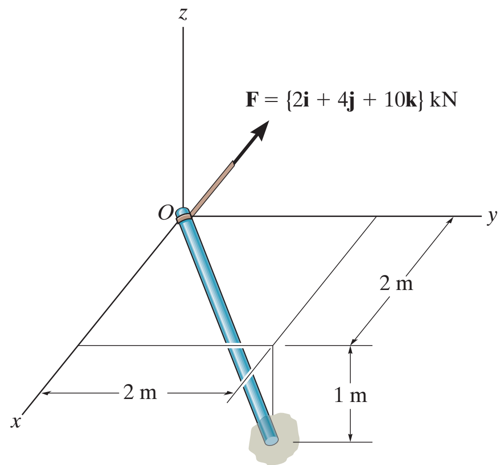
Prob. R2–6

R2–7. Determine the angle θ between the edges of the sheet-metal bracket.



Prob. R2–7

R2–8. Determine the projection of the force $\mathbf{F}$ along the pole.



Prob. R2–8

Chapter 3

(© Igor Tumarkin/ITPS/Shutterstock)

When this load is lifted at constant velocity, or is just suspended, then it is in a state of equilibrium. In this chapter we will study equilibrium for a particle and show how these ideas can be used to calculate the forces in cables used to hold suspended loads.

Equilibrium of a Particle

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

- To introduce the concept of the free-body diagram for a particle.
- To show how to solve particle equilibrium problems using the equations of equilibrium.

3.1 Condition for the Equilibrium of a Particle

A particle is said to be in ***equilibrium*** if it remains at rest if originally at rest, or has a constant velocity if originally in motion. Most often, however, the term "equilibrium" or, more specifically, "static equilibrium" is used to describe an object at rest. To maintain equilibrium, it is *necessary* to satisfy Newton's first law of motion, which requires the *resultant force* acting on a particle to be equal to *zero*. This condition is stated by the *equation of equilibrium*,

$$\Sigma \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{0} \tag{3–1}$$

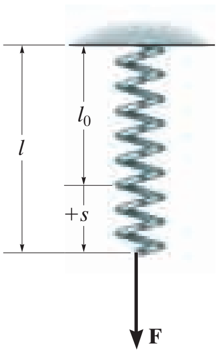
where $\Sigma \mathbf{F}$ is the vector *sum of all the forces* acting on the particle.

Not only is Eq. 3–1 a necessary condition for equilibrium, it is also a *sufficient* condition. This follows from Newton's second law of motion, which can be written as $\Sigma \mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$. Since the force system satisfies Eq. 3–1, then $m\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0}$, and therefore the particle's acceleration $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0}$. Consequently, the particle indeed moves with constant velocity or remains at rest.

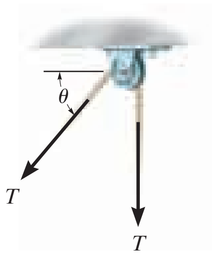
3.2 The Free-Body Diagram

To apply the equation of equilibrium, we must account for *all* the known and unknown forces ($\Sigma \mathbf{F}$) which act *on* the particle. The best way to do this is to think of the particle as isolated and "free" from its surroundings. A drawing that shows the particle with *all* the forces that act on it is called a ***free-body diagram*** *(FBD)*.

Before presenting a formal procedure as to how to draw a free-body diagram, we will first consider three types of supports often encountered in particle equilibrium problems.



(a)



Cable is in tension

(b)

Fig. 3–1

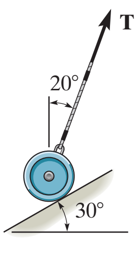
Springs. If a ***linearly elastic spring*** (or cord) of undeformed length l_0 is used to support a particle, the length of the spring will change in direct proportion to the force $\mathbf{F}$ acting on it, Fig. 3–1*a*. A characteristic that defines the "elasticity" of a spring is the ***spring constant*** or ***stiffness*** k.

The magnitude of force exerted on a linearly elastic spring which has a stiffness k and is deformed (elongated or compressed) a distance $s = l - l_0$, measured from its *unloaded* position, is

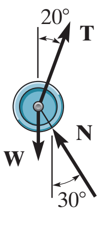
$$\boxed{F = ks} \tag{3–2}$$

If s is positive, causing an elongation, then $\mathbf{F}$ must pull on the spring; whereas if s is negative, causing a shortening, then $\mathbf{F}$ must push on it. For example, if the spring in Fig. 3–1*a* has an unstretched length of 0.8 m and a stiffness $k = 500\text{ N/m}$ and it is stretched to a length of 1 m, so that $s = l - l_0 = 1\text{ m} - 0.8\text{ m} = 0.2\text{ m}$, then a force $F = ks = 500\text{ N/m}(0.2\text{ m}) = 100\text{ N}$ is needed.

Cables and Pulleys. Unless otherwise stated throughout this book, except in Sec. 7.4, all cables (or cords) will be assumed to have negligible weight and they cannot stretch. Also, a cable can support *only* a tension or "pulling" force, and this force always acts in the direction of the cable. In Chapter 5, it will be shown that the tension force developed in a continuous cable which passes over a frictionless pulley must have a *constant* magnitude to keep the cable in equilibrium. Hence, for any angle θ, shown in Fig. 3–1*b*, the cable is subjected to a constant tension T throughout its length.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 3–2

Smooth Contact. If an object rests on a *smooth surface*, then the surface will exert a force on the object that is normal to the surface at the point of contact. An example of this is shown in Fig. 3–2*a*. In addition to this normal force $\mathbf{N}$, the cylinder is also subjected to its weight $\mathbf{W}$ and the force $\mathbf{T}$ of the cord. Since these three forces are concurrent at the center of the cylinder, Fig. 3–2*b*, we can apply the equation of equilibrium to this "particle," which is the same as applying it to the cylinder.

Procedure for Drawing a Free-Body Diagram

Since we must account for *all the forces acting on the particle* when applying the equations of equilibrium, the importance of first drawing a free-body diagram cannot be overemphasized. To construct a free-body diagram, the following three steps are necessary.

Draw Outlined Shape.

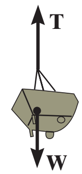
Imagine the particle to be *isolated* or cut "free" from its surroundings. This requires *removing* all the supports and drawing the particle's outlined shape.

Show All Forces.

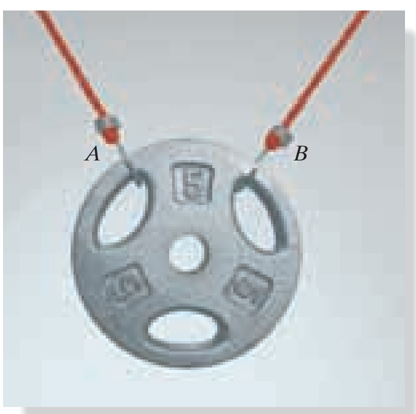
Indicate on this sketch *all* the forces that act *on the particle*. These forces can be *active forces*, which tend to set the particle in motion, or they can be *reactive forces* which are the result of the constraints or supports that tend to prevent motion. To account for all these forces, it may be helpful to trace around the particle's boundary, carefully noting each force acting on it.

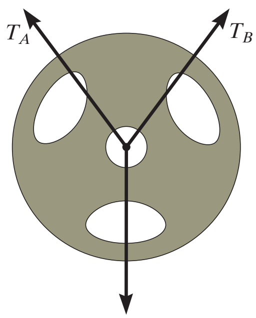
Identify Each Force.

The forces that are *known* should be labeled with their proper magnitudes and directions. Letters are used to represent the magnitudes and directions of forces that are unknown.



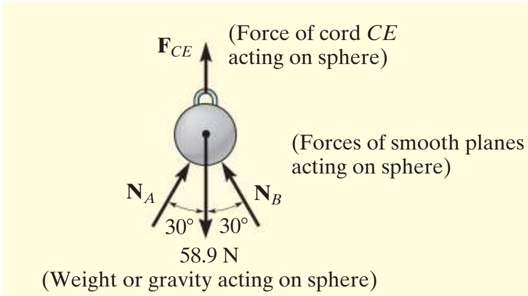
The bucket is held in equilibrium by the cable, and instinctively we know that the force in the cable must equal the weight of the bucket. By drawing a free-body diagram of the bucket we can understand why this is so. This diagram shows that there are only two forces *acting on the bucket*, namely, its weight **W** and the force **T** of the cable. For equilibrium, the resultant of these forces must be equal to zero, and so $T = W$. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)



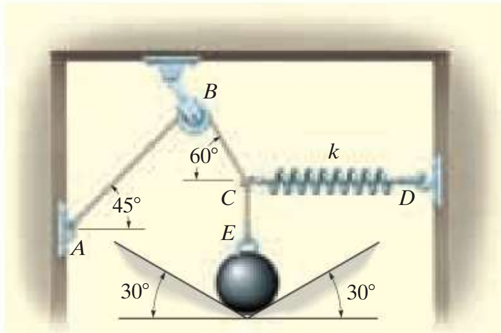


The 5-kg plate is suspended by two straps A and B. To find the force in each strap we should consider the free-body diagram of the plate. As noted, the three forces acting on it are concurrent at the center. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

The sphere in Fig. 3–3*a* has a mass of 6 kg and is supported as shown. Draw a free-body diagram of the sphere, the cord *CE*, and the knot at *C*.



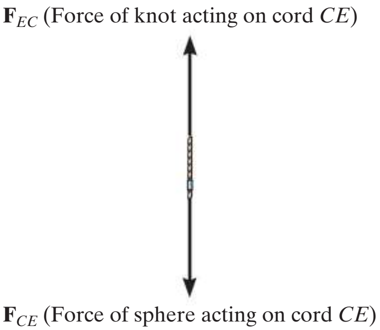
(b)



(a)

SOLUTION

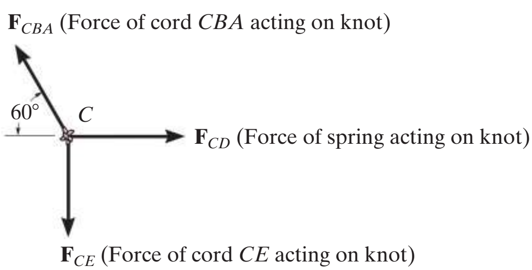
Sphere. Once the supports are *removed*, we can see that there are four forces acting on the sphere, namely, its weight, 6 kg $(9.81\ \text{m/s}^2) = 58.9$ N, the force of cord *CE*, and the two normal forces caused by the smooth inclined planes. The free-body diagram is shown in Fig. 3–3*b*.



(c)

Cord *CE*. When the cord *CE* is isolated from its surroundings, its free-body diagram shows only two forces acting on it, namely, the force of the sphere and the force of the knot, Fig. 3–3*c*. Notice that $\mathbf{F}_{CE}$ shown here is equal but opposite to that shown in Fig. 3–3*b*, a consequence of Newton's third law of action–reaction. Also, $\mathbf{F}_{CE}$ and $\mathbf{F}_{EC}$ pull on the cord and keep it in tension so that it doesn't collapse. For equilibrium, $F_{CE} = F_{EC}$.

Knot. The knot at *C* is subjected to three forces, Fig. 3–3*d*. They are caused by the cords *CBA* and *CE* and the spring *CD*. As required, the free-body diagram shows all these forces labeled with their magnitudes and directions. It is important to recognize that the weight of the sphere does not directly act on the knot. Instead, the cord *CE* subjects the knot to this force.



(d)

Fig. 3–3

3.3 Coplanar Force Systems

If a particle is subjected to a system of coplanar forces that lie in the x–y plane, as in Fig. 3–4, then each force can be resolved into its **i** and **j** components. For equilibrium, these forces must sum to produce a zero force resultant, i.e.,

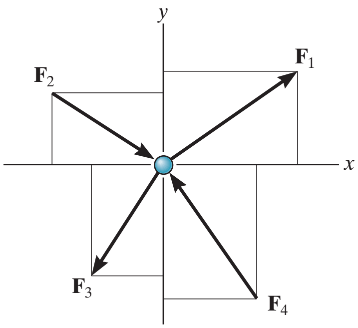


Fig. 3–4

$$\Sigma \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{0}$$
$$\Sigma F_x \mathbf{i} + \Sigma F_y \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{0}$$

For this vector equation to be satisfied, the resultant force's x and y components must both be equal to zero. Hence,

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \Sigma F_x &= 0 \\ \Sigma F_y &= 0 \end{aligned}} \qquad (3\text{–}3)$$

These two equations can be solved for at most two unknowns, generally represented as angles and magnitudes of forces shown on the particle's free-body diagram.

When applying each of the two equations of equilibrium, we must account for the sense of direction of any component by using an *algebraic sign* which corresponds to the arrowhead direction of the component along the x or y axis. It is important to note that if a force has an *unknown magnitude*, then the arrowhead sense of the force on the free-body diagram can be *assumed*. Then if the *solution* yields a *negative scalar*, this indicates that the sense of the force is opposite to that which was assumed.

For example, consider the free-body diagram of the particle subjected to the two forces shown in Fig. 3–5. Here it is *assumed* that the *unknown force* **F** acts to the right, that is, in the positive x direction, to maintain equilibrium. Applying the equation of equilibrium along the x axis, we have

$$\overset{+}{\rightarrow} \Sigma F_x = 0; \qquad +F + 10\text{ N} = 0$$

Both terms are "positive" since both forces act in the positive x direction. When this equation is solved, $F = -10$ N. Here the *negative sign* indicates that **F** must act to the left to hold the particle in equilibrium, Fig. 3–5. Notice that if the $+x$ axis in Fig. 3–5 were directed to the left, both terms in the above equation would be negative, but again, after solving, $F = -10$ N, indicating that **F** would have to be directed to the left.

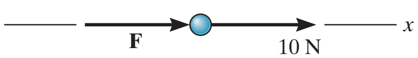
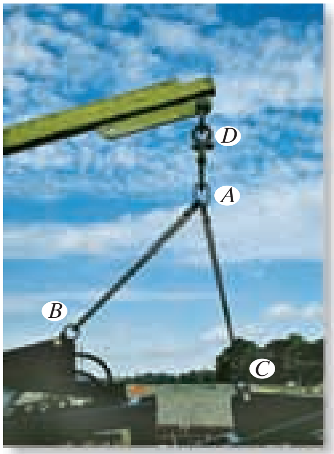


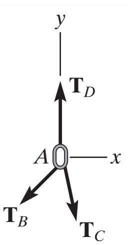
Fig. 3–5

Important Points

The first step in solving any equilibrium problem is to draw the particle's free-body diagram. This requires *removing all the supports* and isolating or freeing the particle from its surroundings and then showing all the forces that act on it.

Equilibrium means the particle is at rest or moving at constant velocity. In two dimensions, the necessary and sufficient conditions for equilibrium require $\Sigma F_x = 0$ and $\Sigma F_y = 0$.





The chains exert three forces on the ring at A, as shown on its free-body diagram. The ring will not move, or will move with constant velocity, provided the summation of these forces along the x and along the y axis equals zero. If one of the three forces is known, the magnitudes of the other two forces can be obtained from the two equations of equilibrium. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Procedure for Analysis

Coplanar force equilibrium problems for a particle can be solved using the following procedure.

Free-Body Diagram.

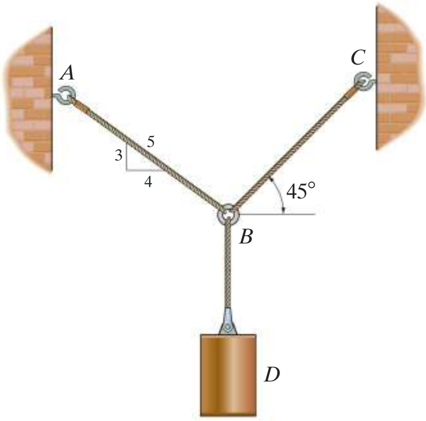
- Establish the x, y axes in any suitable orientation.
- Label all the known and unknown force magnitudes and directions on the diagram.
- The sense of a force having an unknown magnitude can be assumed.

Equations of Equilibrium.

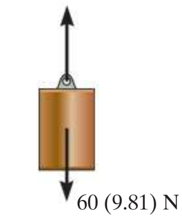
- Apply the equations of equilibrium, $\Sigma F_x = 0$ and $\Sigma F_y = 0$. For convenience, arrows can be written alongside each equation to define the positive directions.
- Components are positive if they are directed along a positive axis, and negative if they are directed along a negative axis.
- If more than two unknowns exist and the problem involves a spring, apply $F = ks$ to relate the spring force to the deformation s of the spring.
- Since the magnitude of a force is always a positive quantity, then if the solution for a force yields a negative result, this indicates that its sense is the reverse of that shown on the free-body diagram.

EXAMPLE 3.2

Determine the tension in cables BA and BC necessary to support the 60-kg cylinder in Fig. 3–6*a*.



(a)



(b)

SOLUTION

Free-Body Diagram. Due to equilibrium, the weight of the cylinder causes the tension in cable BD to be $T_{BD} = 60(9.81)$ N, Fig. 3–6*b*. The forces in cables BA and BC can be determined by investigating the equilibrium of ring B. Its free-body diagram is shown in Fig. 3–6*c*. The magnitudes of $\mathbf{T}_A$ and $\mathbf{T}_C$ are unknown, but their directions are known.

Equations of Equilibrium. Applying the equations of equilibrium along the x and y axes, we have

$$\xrightarrow{+} \Sigma F_x = 0; \qquad T_C \cos 45^\circ - \left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right)T_A = 0 \qquad (1)$$

$$+\uparrow \Sigma F_y = 0; \qquad T_C \sin 45^\circ + \left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right)T_A - 60(9.81)\text{ N} = 0 \qquad (2)$$

Equation (1) can be written as $T_A = 0.8839T_C$. Substituting this into Eq. (2) yields

$$T_C \sin 45^\circ + \left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right)(0.8839T_C) - 60(9.81)\text{ N} = 0$$

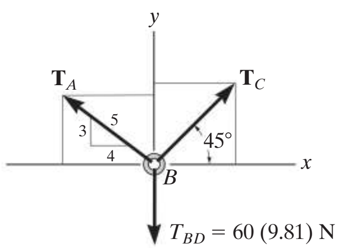
so that

$$T_C = 475.66\text{ N} = 476\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Substituting this result into either Eq. (1) or Eq. (2), we get

$$T_A = 420\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

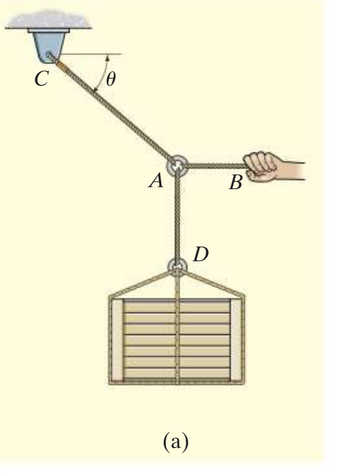
NOTE: The accuracy of these results, of course, depends on the accuracy of the data, i.e., measurements of geometry and loads. For most engineering work involving a problem such as this, the data as measured to three significant figures would be sufficient.



(c)

Fig. 3–6

The 200-kg crate in Fig. 3–7*a* is suspended using the ropes *AB* and *AC*. Each rope can withstand a maximum force of 10 kN before it breaks. If *AB* always remains horizontal, determine the smallest angle θ to which the crate can be suspended before one of the ropes breaks.



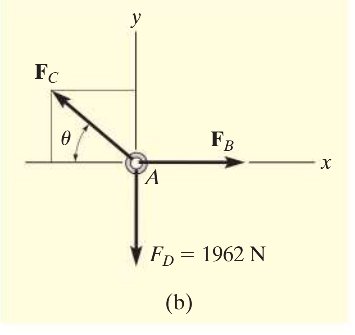


Fig. 3–7

SOLUTION

Free-Body Diagram. We will study the equilibrium of ring *A*. There are three forces acting on it, Fig. 3–7*b*. The magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_D$ is equal to the weight of the crate, i.e., $F_D = 200\,(9.81)\text{ N} = 1962\text{ N} < 10\text{ kN}$.

Equations of Equilibrium. Applying the equations of equilibrium along the *x* and *y* axes,

$$\overset{+}{\rightarrow}\Sigma F_x = 0; \qquad -F_C\cos\theta + F_B = 0; \quad F_C = \frac{F_B}{\cos\theta} \tag{1}$$

$$+\uparrow\Sigma F_y = 0; \qquad F_C\sin\theta - 1962\text{ N} = 0 \tag{2}$$

From Eq. (1), F_C is always greater than F_B since $\cos\theta \le 1$. Therefore, rope *AC* will reach the maximum tensile force of 10 kN *before* rope *AB*. Substituting $F_C = 10$ kN into Eq. (2), we get

$$[10(10^3)\text{N}]\sin\theta - 1962\text{ N} = 0$$

$$\theta = \sin^{-1}(0.1962) = 11.31^\circ = 11.3^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

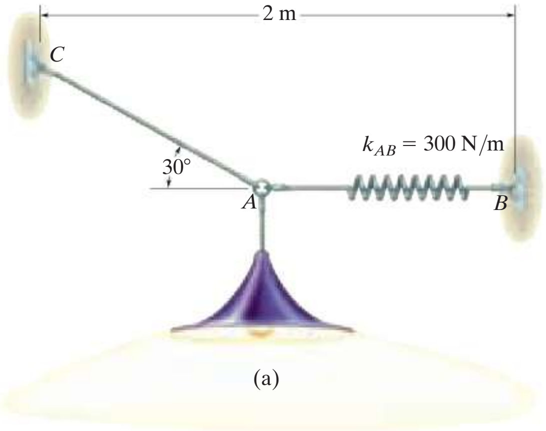
The force developed in rope *AB* can be obtained by substituting the values for θ and F_C into Eq. (1).

$$10(10^3)\text{ N} = \frac{F_B}{\cos 11.31^\circ}$$

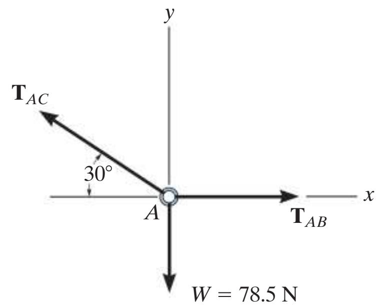
$$F_B = 9.81\text{ kN}$$

EXAMPLE 3.4

Determine the required length of cord AC in Fig. 3–8a so that the 8-kg lamp can be suspended in the position shown. The *undeformed* length of spring AB is $l'_{AB} = 0.4\text{ m}$, and the spring has a stiffness of $k_{AB} = 300\text{ N/m}$.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 3–8

SOLUTION

If the force in spring AB is known, the stretch of the spring can be found using $F = ks$. From the problem geometry, it is then possible to calculate the required length of AC.

Free-Body Diagram. The lamp has a weight $W = 8(9.81) = 78.5\text{ N}$ and so the free-body diagram of the ring at A is shown in Fig. 3–8b.

Equations of Equilibrium. Using the x, y axes,

$$\xrightarrow{+} \Sigma F_x = 0; \qquad T_{AB} - T_{AC}\cos 30^\circ = 0$$
$$+\uparrow \Sigma F_y = 0; \qquad T_{AC}\sin 30^\circ - 78.5\text{ N} = 0$$

Solving, we obtain

$$T_{AC} = 157.0\text{ N}$$
$$T_{AB} = 135.9\text{ N}$$

The stretch of spring AB is therefore

$$T_{AB} = k_{AB}s_{AB}; \qquad 135.9\text{ N} = 300\text{ N/m}(s_{AB})$$
$$s_{AB} = 0.453\text{ m}$$

so the stretched length is

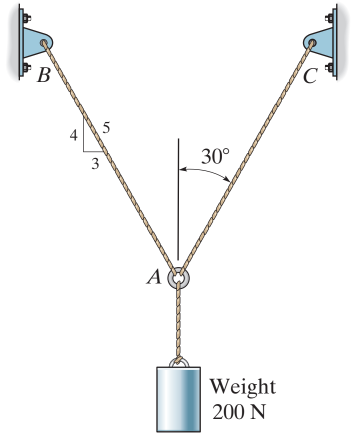
$$l_{AB} = l'_{AB} + s_{AB}$$
$$l_{AB} = 0.4\text{ m} + 0.453\text{ m} = 0.853\text{ m}$$

The horizontal distance from C to B, Fig. 3–8a, requires

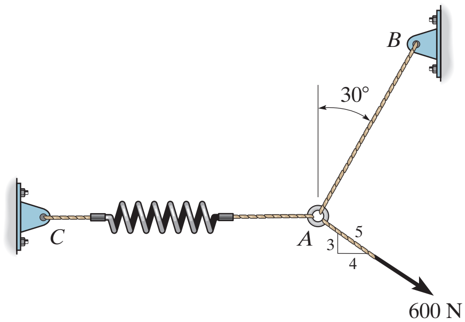
$$2\text{ m} = l_{AC}\cos 30^\circ + 0.853\text{ m}$$
$$l_{AC} = 1.32\text{ m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

PRELIMINARY PROBLEMS

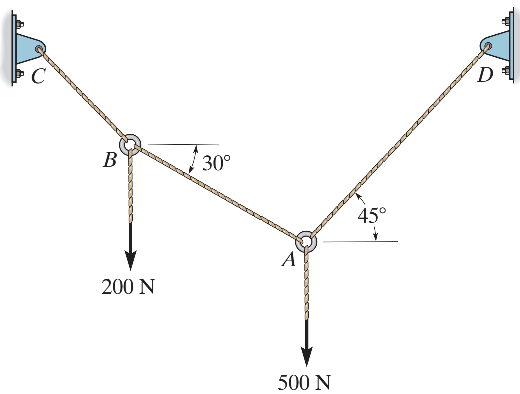
P3–1. In each case, draw a free-body diagram of the ring at A and identify each force.



(a)



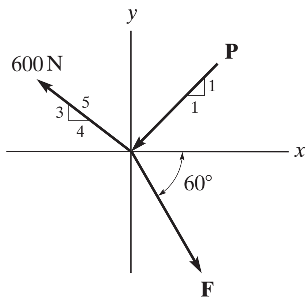
(b)



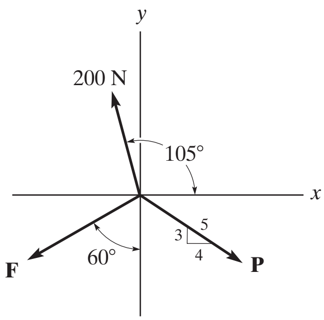
(c)

Prob. P3–1

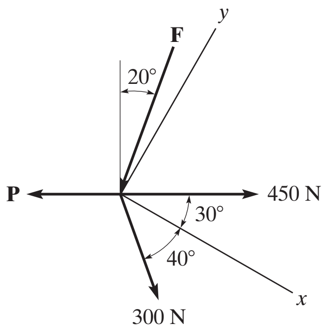
P3–2. Write the two equations of equilibrium, $\Sigma F_x = 0$ and $\Sigma F_y = 0$. Do not solve.



(a)



(b)



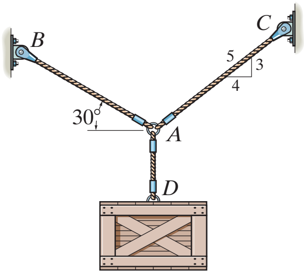
(c)

Prob. P3–2

FUNDAMENTAL PROBLEMS

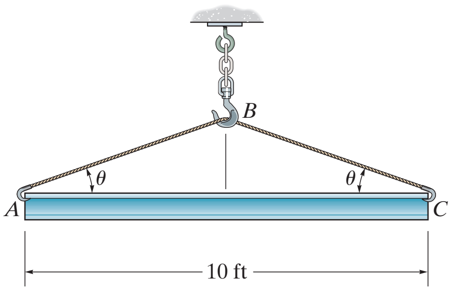
All problem solutions must include an FBD.

F3–1. The crate has a weight of 550 lb. Determine the force in each supporting cable.



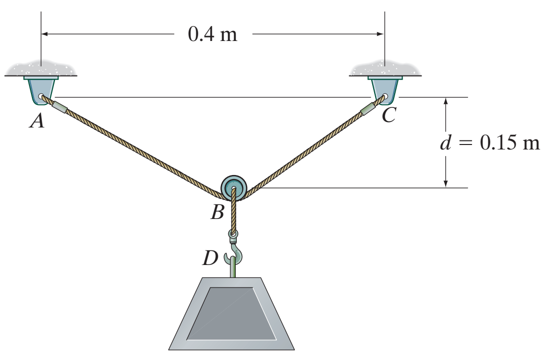
Prob. F3–1

F3–2. The beam has a weight of 700 lb. Determine the shortest cable *ABC* that can be used to lift it if the maximum force the cable can sustain is 1500 lb.



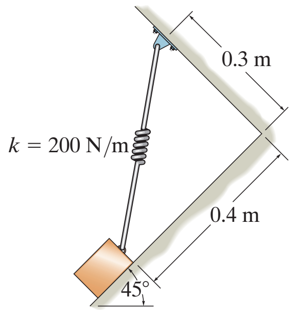
Prob. F3–2

F3–3. If the 5-kg block is suspended from the pulley *B* and the sag of the cord is $d = 0.15$ m, determine the force in cord *ABC*. Neglect the size of the pulley.



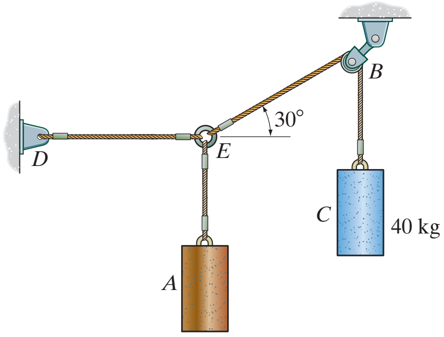
Prob. F3–3

F3–4. The block has a mass of 5 kg and rests on the smooth plane. Determine the unstretched length of the spring.



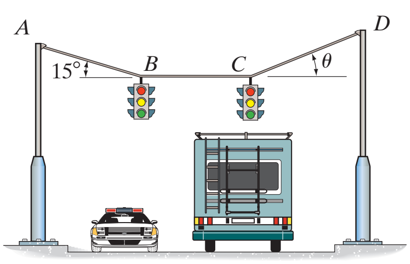
Prob. F3–4

F3–5. If the mass of cylinder *C* is 40 kg, determine the mass of cylinder *A* in order to hold the assembly in the position shown.



Prob. F3–5

F3–6. Determine the tension in cables *AB*, *BC*, and *CD*, necessary to support the 10-kg and 15-kg traffic lights at *B* and *C*, respectively. Also, find the angle θ.



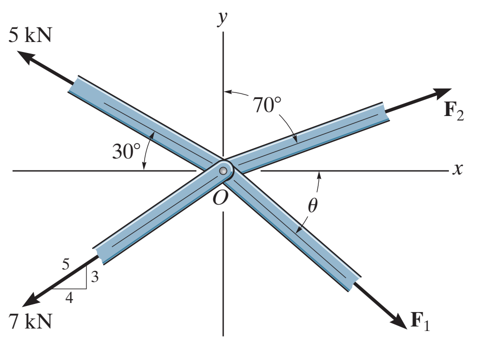
Prob. F3–6

PROBLEMS

All problem solutions must include an FBD.

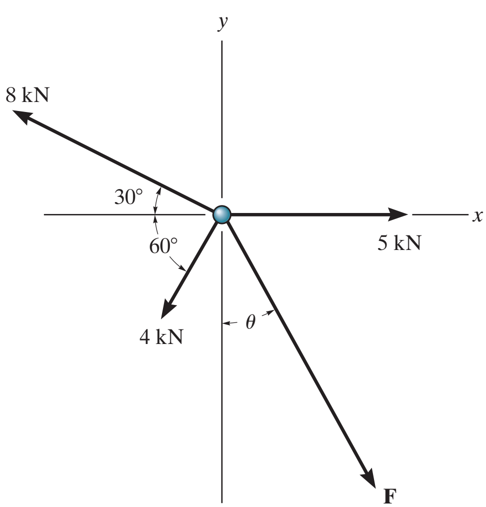
3–1. The members of a truss are pin connected at joint O. Determine the magnitudes of $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ for equilibrium. Set $\theta = 60^\circ$.

3–2. The members of a truss are pin connected at joint O. Determine the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_1$ and its angle θ for equilibrium. Set $F_2 = 6$ kN.



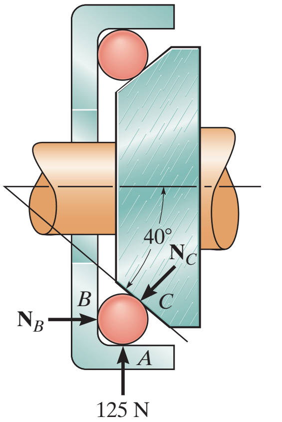
Probs. 3–1/2

3–3. Determine the magnitude and direction θ of $\mathbf{F}$ so that the particle is in equilibrium.



Prob. 3–3

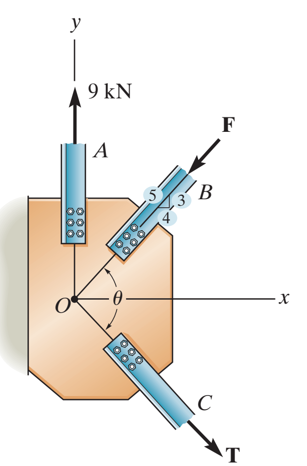
***3–4.** The bearing consists of rollers, symmetrically confined within the housing. The bottom one is subjected to a 125-N force at its contact A due to the load on the shaft. Determine the normal reactions N_B and N_C on the bearing at its contact points B and C for equilibrium.



Prob. 3–4

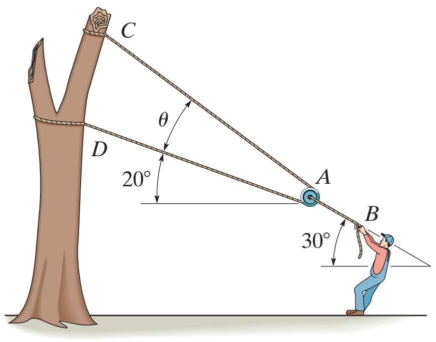
3–5. The members of a truss are connected to the gusset plate. If the forces are concurrent at point O, determine the magnitudes of $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{T}$ for equilibrium. Take $\theta = 90^\circ$.

3–6. The gusset plate is subjected to the forces of three members. Determine the tension force in member C and its angle θ for equilibrium. The forces are concurrent at point O. Take $F = 8$ kN.



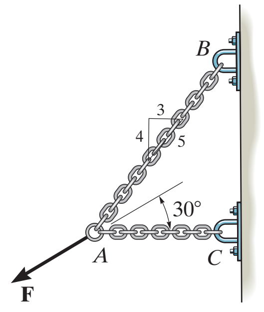
Probs. 3–5/6

3–7. The man attempts to pull down the tree using the cable and *small* pulley arrangement shown. If the tension in AB is 60 lb, determine the tension in cable CAD and the angle θ which the cable makes at the pulley.



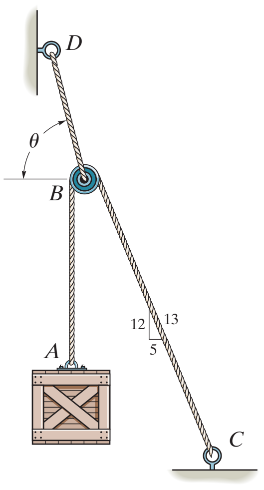
Prob. 3–7

3–9. Determine the maximum force **F** that can be supported in the position shown if each chain can support a maximum tension of 600 lb before it fails.



Prob. 3–9

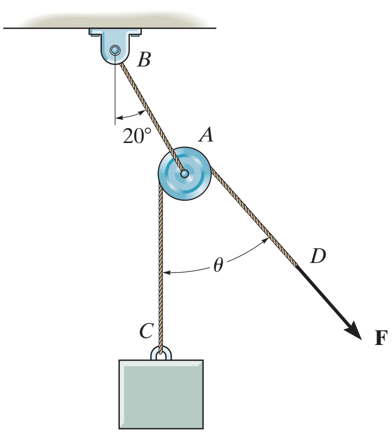
***3–8.** The cords ABC and BD can each support a maximum load of 100 lb. Determine the maximum weight of the crate, and the angle θ for equilibrium.



Prob. 3–8

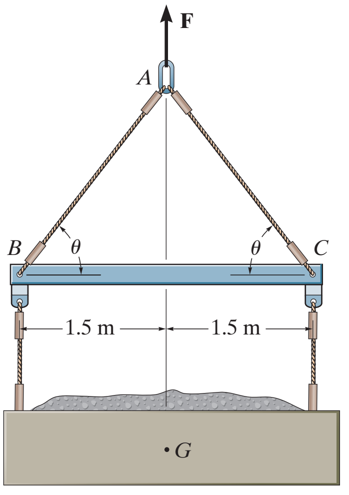
3–10. The block has a weight of 20 lb and is being hoisted at uniform velocity. Determine the angle θ for equilibrium and the force in cord AB.

3–11. Determine the maximum weight W of the block that can be suspended in the position shown if cords AB and CAD can each support a maximum tension of 80 lb. Also, what is the angle θ for equilibrium?



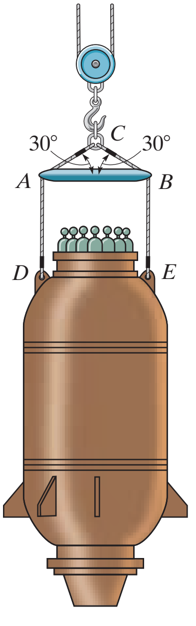
Probs. 3–10/11

3–12. The lift sling is used to hoist a container having a mass of 500 kg. Determine the force in each of the cables AB and AC as a function of θ. If the maximum tension allowed in each cable is 5 kN, determine the shortest length of cables AB and AC that can be used for the lift. The center of gravity of the container is located at G.



Prob. 3–12

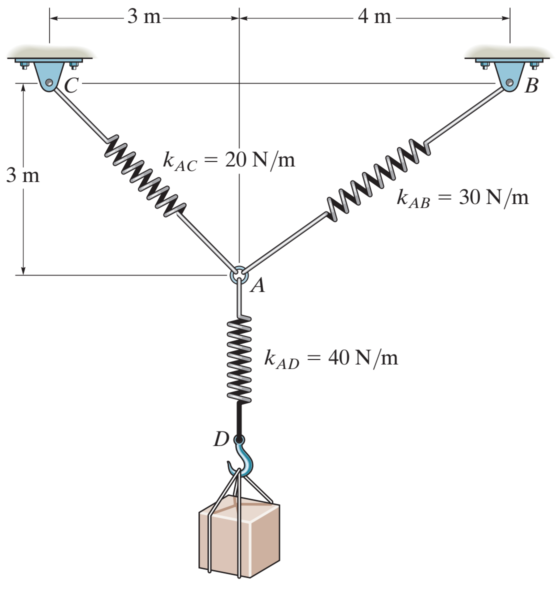
3–13. A nuclear-reactor vessel has a weight of $500(10^3)$ lb. Determine the horizontal compressive force that the spreader bar AB exerts on point A and the force that each cable segment CA and AD exert on this point while the vessel is hoisted upward at constant velocity.



Prob. 3–13

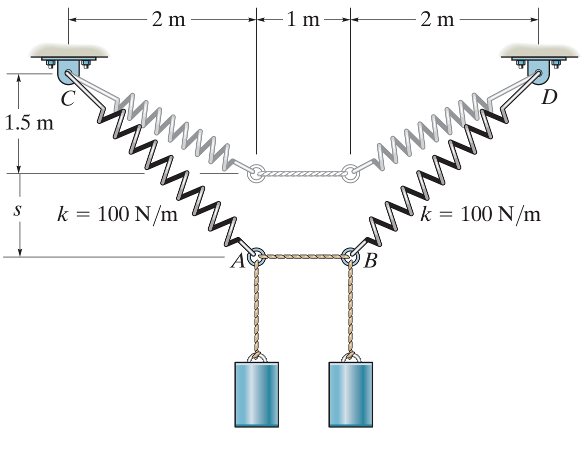
3–14. Determine the stretch in each spring for equilibrium of the 2-kg block. The springs are shown in the equilibrium position.

3–15. The unstretched length of spring AB is 3 m. If the block is held in the equilibrium position shown, determine the mass of the block at D.



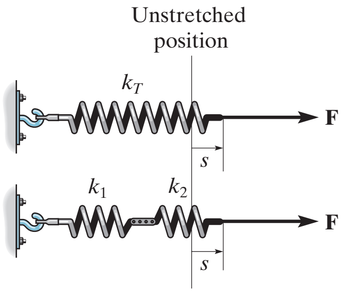
Probs. 3–14/15

***3–16.** Determine the mass of each of the two cylinders if they cause a sag of $s = 0.5$ m when suspended from the rings at A and B. Note that $s = 0$ when the cylinders are removed.



Prob. 3–16

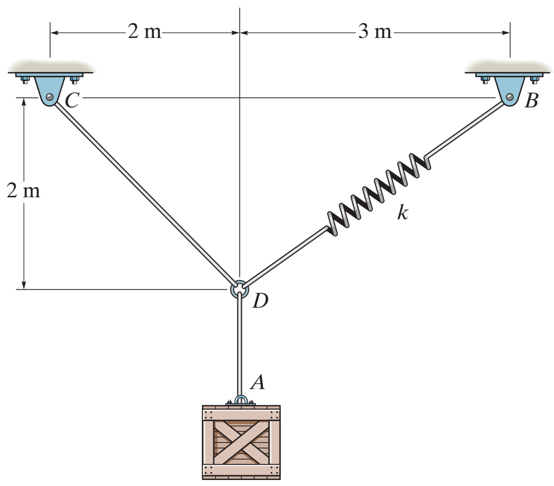
3–17. Determine the stiffness k_T of the single spring such that the force **F** will stretch it by the same amount s as the force **F** stretches the two springs. Express k_T in terms of stiffness k_1 and k_2 of the two springs.



Prob. 3–17

3–18. If the spring DB has an unstretched length of 2 m, determine the stiffness of the spring to hold the 40-kg crate in the position shown.

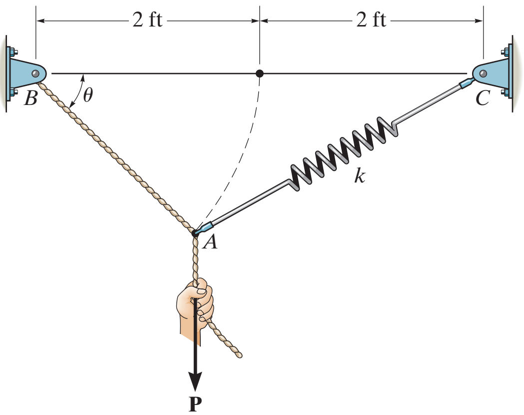
3–19. Determine the unstretched length of DB to hold the 40-kg crate in the position shown. Take $k = 180$ N/m.



Probs. 3–18/19

***3–20.** A vertical force $P = 10$ lb is applied to the ends of the 2-ft cord AB and spring AC. If the spring has an unstretched length of 2 ft, determine the angle θ for equilibrium. Take $k = 15$ lb/ft.

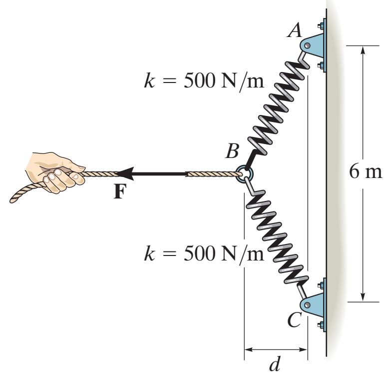
3–21. Determine the unstretched length of spring AC if a force $P = 80$ lb causes the angle $\theta = 60°$ for equilibrium. Cord AB is 2 ft long. Take $k = 50$ lb/ft.



Probs. 3–20/21

3–22. The springs BA and BC each have a stiffness of 500 N/m and an unstretched length of 3 m. Determine the horizontal force **F** applied to the cord which is attached to the small ring B so that the displacement of AB from the wall is $d = 1.5$ m.

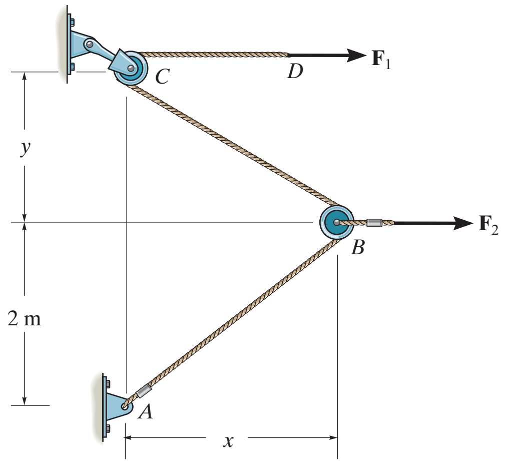
3–23. The springs BA and BC each have a stiffness of 500 N/m and an unstretched length of 3 m. Determine the displacement d of the cord from the wall when a force $F = 175$ N is applied to the cord.



Probs. 3–22/23

*3–24. Determine the distances x and y for equilibrium if $F_1 = 800$ N and $F_2 = 1000$ N.

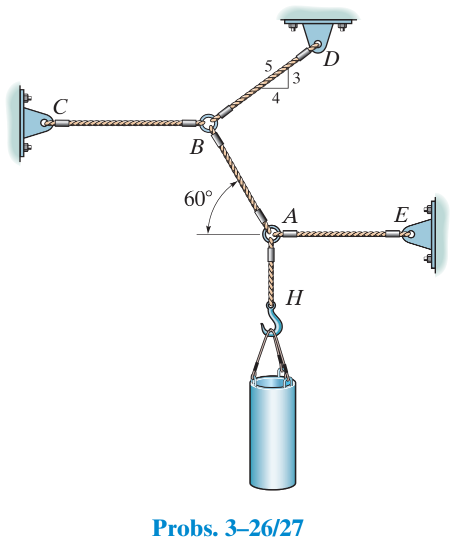
3–25. Determine the magnitude of F_1 and the distance y if $x = 1.5$ m and $F_2 = 1000$ N.



Probs. 3–24/25

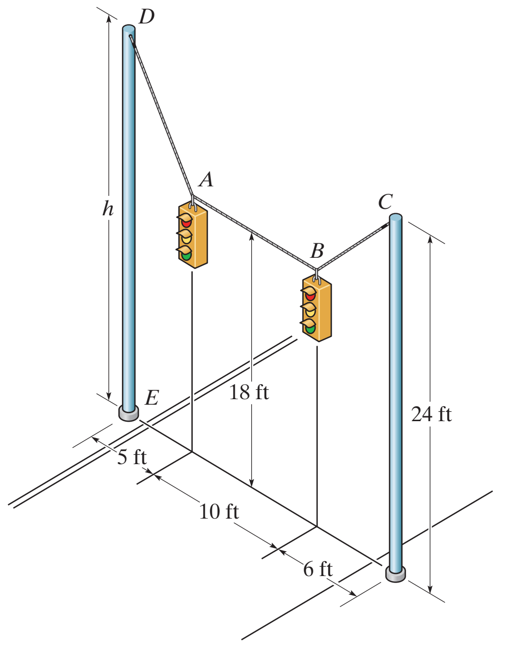
3–26. The 30-kg pipe is supported at A by a system of five cords. Determine the force in each cord for equilibrium.

3–27. Each cord can sustain a maximum tension of 500 N. Determine the largest mass of pipe that can be supported.



Probs. 3–26/27

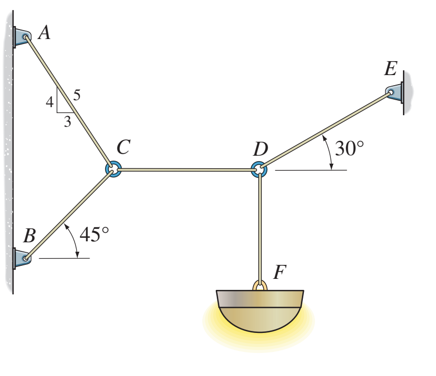
*3–28. The street-lights at A and B are suspended from the two poles as shown. If each light has a weight of 50 lb, determine the tension in each of the three supporting cables and the required height h of the pole DE so that cable AB is horizontal.



Prob. 3–28

3–29. Determine the tension developed in each cord required for equilibrium of the 20-kg lamp.

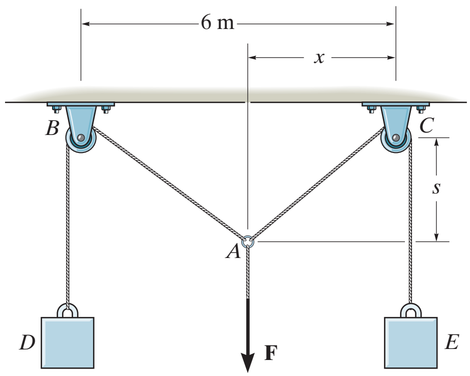
3–30. Determine the maximum mass of the lamp that the cord system can support so that no single cord develops a tension exceeding 400 N.



Probs. 3–29/30

3–31. Blocks D and E have a mass of 4 kg and 6 kg, respectively. If $x = 2$ m determine the force $\mathbf{F}$ and the sag s for equilibrium.

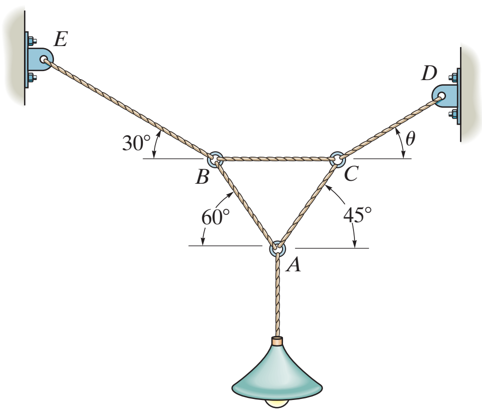
***3–32.** Blocks D and E have a mass of 4 kg and 6 kg, respectively. If $F = 80$ N, determine the sag s and distance x for equilibrium.



Probs. 3–31/32

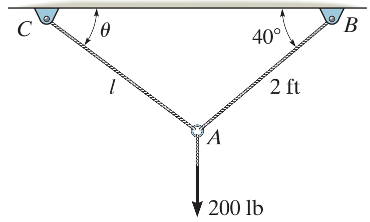
3–33. The lamp has a weight of 15 lb and is supported by the six cords connected together as shown. Determine the tension in each cord and the angle θ for equilibrium. Cord BC is horizontal.

3–34. Each cord can sustain a maximum tension of 20 lb. Determine the largest weight of the lamp that can be supported. Also, determine θ of cord DC for equilibrium.



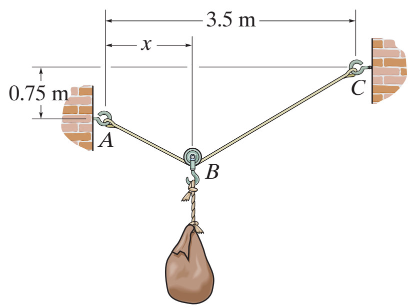
Probs. 3–33/34

3–35. The ring of negligible size is subjected to a vertical force of 200 lb. Determine the required length l of cord AC such that the tension acting in AC is 160 lb. Also, what is the force in cord AB? *Hint:* Use the equilibrium condition to determine the required angle θ for attachment, then determine l using trigonometry applied to triangle ABC.



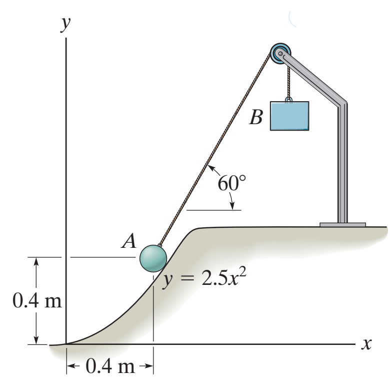
Prob. 3–35

***3–36.** Cable ABC has a length of 5 m. Determine the position x and the tension developed in ABC required for equilibrium of the 100-kg sack. Neglect the size of the pulley at B.



Prob. 3–36

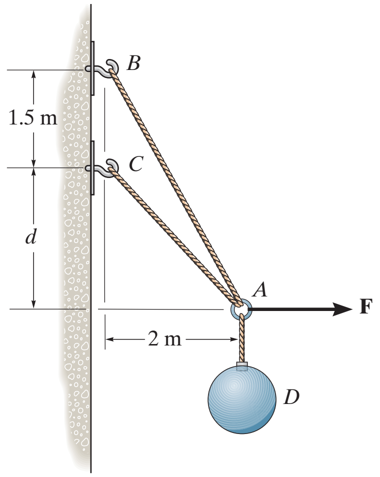
3–37. A 4-kg sphere rests on the smooth parabolic surface. Determine the normal force it exerts on the surface and the mass m_B of block B needed to hold it in the equilibrium position shown.



Prob. 3–37

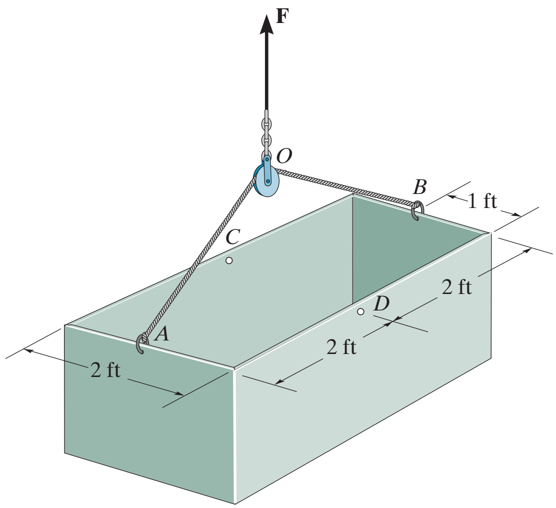
3–38. Determine the forces in cables AC and AB needed to hold the 20-kg ball D in equilibrium. Take $F = 300$ N and $d = 1$ m.

3–39. The ball D has a mass of 20 kg. If a force of $F = 100$ N is applied horizontally to the ring at A, determine the dimension d so that the force in cable AC is zero.



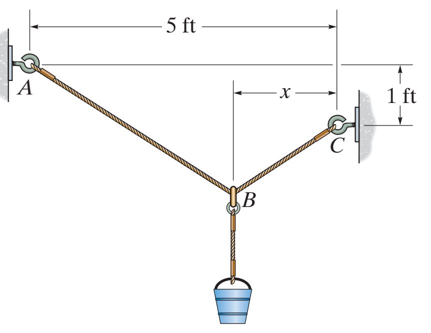
Probs. 3–38/39

***3–40.** The 200-lb uniform container is suspended by means of a 6-ft-long cable, which is attached to the sides of the tank and passes over the small pulley located at O. If the cable can be attached at either points A and B, or C and D, determine which attachment produces the least amount of tension in the cable. What is this tension?



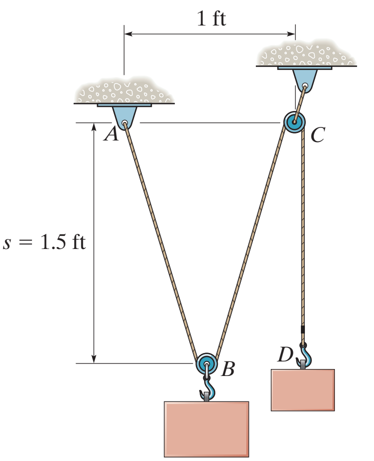
Prob. 3–40

3–41. The single elastic cord ABC is used to support the 40-lb load. Determine the position x and the tension in the cord that is required for equilibrium. The cord passes through the smooth ring at B and has an unstretched length of 6ft and stiffness of $k = 50$ lb/ft.



Prob. 3–41

3–42. A "scale" is constructed with a 4-ft-long cord and the 10-lb block D. The cord is fixed to a pin at A and passes over two *small* pulleys. Determine the weight of the suspended block B if the system is in equilibrium when $s = 1.5$ ft.



Prob. 3–42

CONCEPTUAL PROBLEMS

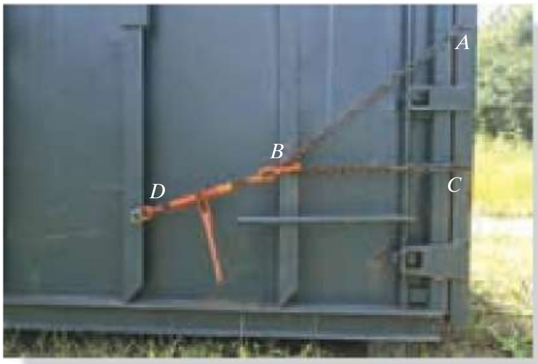
C3–1. The concrete wall panel is hoisted into position using the two cables AB and AC of equal length. Establish appropriate dimensions and use an equilibrium analysis to show that the longer the cables the less the force in each cable.

Prob. C3–1 (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

C3–2. The hoisting cables BA and BC each have a length of 20 ft. If the maximum tension that can be supported by each cable is 900 lb, determine the maximum distance AC between them in order to lift the uniform 1200-lb truss with constant velocity.

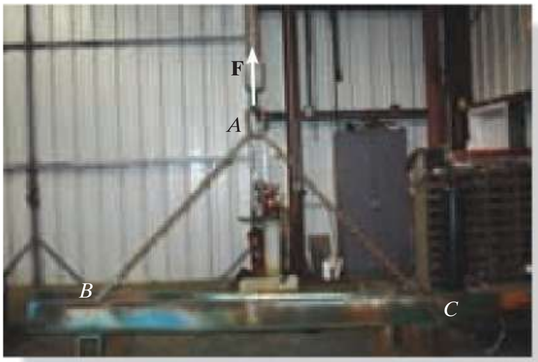
Prob. C3–2 (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

C3–3. The device DB is used to pull on the chain ABC to hold a door closed on the bin. If the angle between AB and BC is 30°, determine the angle between DB and BC for equilibrium.



Prob. C3–3 (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

C3–4. Chain AB is 1 m long and chain AC is 1.2 m long. If the distance BC is 1.5 m, and AB can support a maximum force of 2 kN, whereas AC can support a maximum force of 0.8 kN, determine the largest vertical force F that can be applied to the link at A.



Prob. C3–4 (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

3.4 Three-Dimensional Force Systems

In Section 3.1 we stated that the necessary and sufficient condition for particle equilibrium is

$$\Sigma \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{0} \tag{3–4}$$

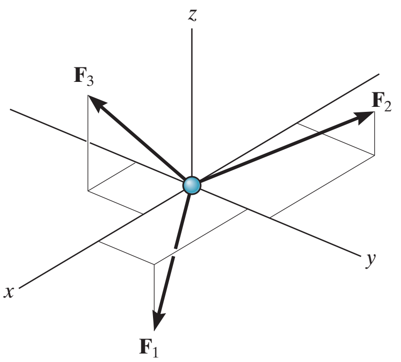


Fig. 3–9

In the case of a three-dimensional force system, as in Fig. 3–9, we can resolve the forces into their respective **i**, **j**, **k** components, so that $\Sigma F_x \mathbf{i} + \Sigma F_y \mathbf{j} + \Sigma F_z \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$. To satisfy this equation we require

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \Sigma F_x &= 0 \\ \Sigma F_y &= 0 \\ \Sigma F_z &= 0 \end{aligned}} \tag{3–5}$$

These three equations state that the *algebraic sum* of the components of all the forces acting on the particle along each of the coordinate axes must be zero. Using them we can solve for at most three unknowns, generally represented as coordinate direction angles or magnitudes of forces shown on the particle's free-body diagram.

Procedure for Analysis

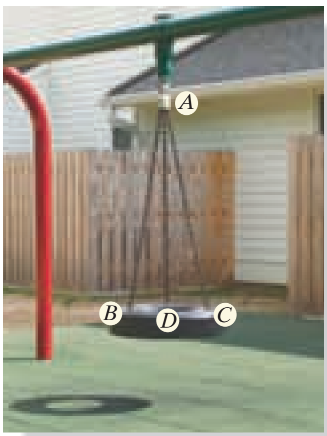
Three-dimensional force equilibrium problems for a particle can be solved using the following procedure.

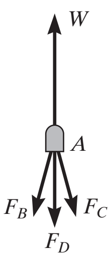
Free-Body Diagram.

- Establish the x, y, z axes in any suitable orientation.
- Label all the known and unknown force magnitudes and directions on the diagram.
- The sense of a force having an unknown magnitude can be assumed.

Equations of Equilibrium.

- Use the scalar equations of equilibrium, $\Sigma F_x = 0$, $\Sigma F_y = 0$, $\Sigma F_z = 0$, in cases where it is easy to resolve each force into its x, y, z components.
- If the three-dimensional geometry appears difficult, then first express each force on the free-body diagram as a Cartesian vector, substitute these vectors into $\Sigma \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{0}$, and then set the **i**, **j**, **k** components equal to zero.
- If the solution for a force yields a negative result, this indicates that its sense is the reverse of that shown on the free-body diagram.





The joint at A is subjected to the force from the support as well as forces from each of the three chains. If the tire and any load on it have a weight W, then the force at the support will be $\mathbf{W}$, and the three scalar equations of equilibrium can be applied to the free-body diagram of the joint in order to determine the chain forces, $\mathbf{F}_B$, $\mathbf{F}_C$, and $\mathbf{F}_D$. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

EXAMPLE 3.5

A 90-lb load is suspended from the hook shown in Fig. 3–10*a*. If the load is supported by two cables and a spring having a stiffness $k = 500\text{ lb/ft}$, determine the force in the cables and the stretch of the spring for equilibrium. Cable AD lies in the x–y plane and cable AC lies in the x–z plane.

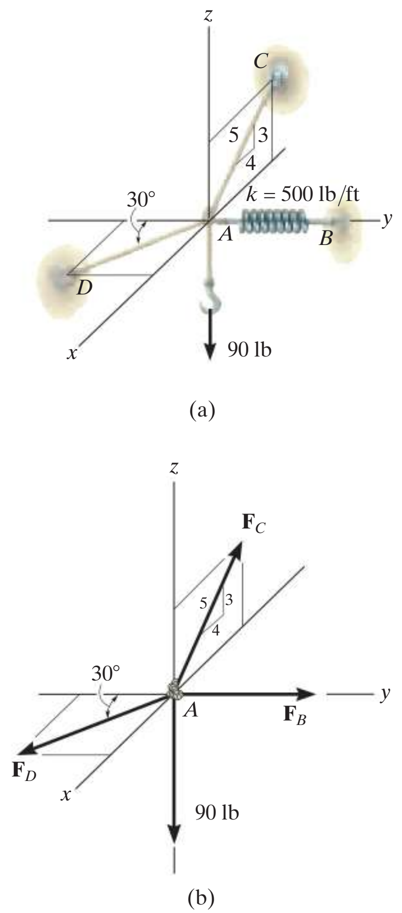


Fig. 3–10

SOLUTION

The stretch of the spring can be determined once the force in the spring is determined.

Free-Body Diagram. The connection at A is chosen for the equilibrium analysis since the cable forces are concurrent at this point. The free-body diagram is shown in Fig. 3–10*b*.

Equations of Equilibrium. By inspection, each force can easily be resolved into its x, y, z components, and therefore the three scalar equations of equilibrium can be used. Considering components directed along each positive axis as "positive," we have

$$\Sigma F_x = 0; \qquad F_D \sin 30° - \left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right) F_C = 0 \qquad (1)$$

$$\Sigma F_y = 0; \qquad -F_D \cos 30° + F_B = 0 \qquad (2)$$

$$\Sigma F_z = 0; \qquad \left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right) F_C - 90\text{ lb} = 0 \qquad (3)$$

Solving Eq. (3) for F_C, then Eq. (1) for F_D, and finally Eq. (2) for F_B, yields

$$F_C = 150\text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$F_D = 240\text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$F_B = 207.8\text{ lb} = 208\text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

The stretch of the spring is therefore

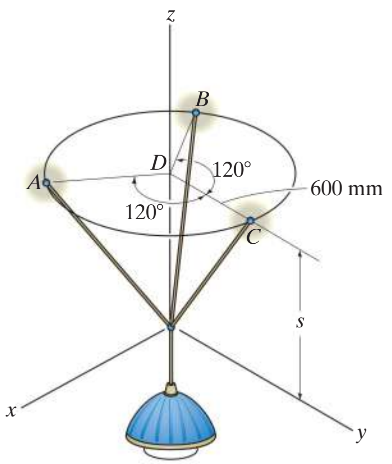
$$F_B = ks_{AB}$$

$$207.8\text{ lb} = (500\text{ lb/ft})(s_{AB})$$

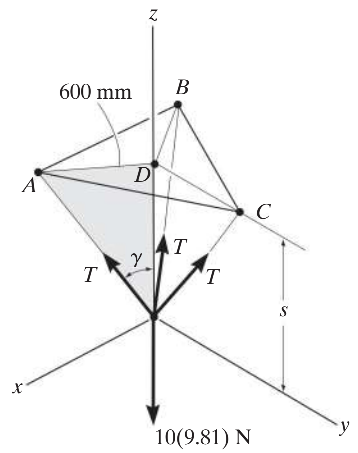
$$s_{AB} = 0.416\text{ ft} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

NOTE: Since the results for all the cable forces are positive, each cable is in tension; that is, it pulls on point A as expected, Fig. 3–10*b*.

The 10-kg lamp in Fig. 3–11*a* is suspended from the three equal-length cords. Determine its smallest vertical distance s from the ceiling if the force developed in any cord is not allowed to exceed 50 N.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 3–11

SOLUTION

Free-Body Diagram. Due to symmetry, Fig. 3–11*b*, the distance $DA = DB = DC = 600$ mm. It follows that from $\sum F_x = 0$ and $\sum F_y = 0$, the tension T in each cord will be the same. Also, the angle between each cord and the z axis is γ.

Equation of Equilibrium. Applying the equilibrium equation along the z axis, with $T = 50$ N, we have

$$\sum F_z = 0; \qquad 3[(50\text{ N})\cos\gamma] - 10(9.81)\text{ N} = 0$$

$$\gamma = \cos^{-1}\frac{98.1}{150} = 49.16^\circ$$

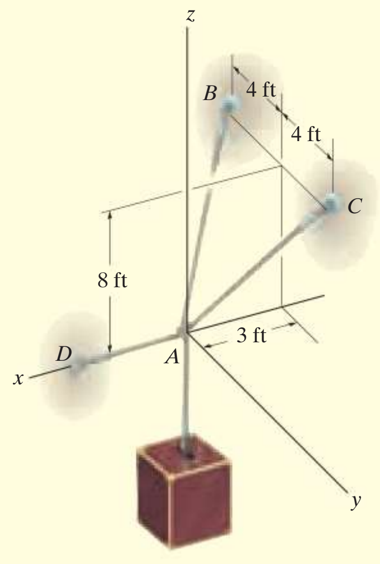
From the shaded triangle shown in Fig. 3–11*b*,

$$\tan 49.16^\circ = \frac{600\text{ mm}}{s}$$

$$s = 519\text{ mm} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

EXAMPLE 3.7

Determine the force in each cable used to support the 40-lb crate shown in Fig. 3–12*a*.



(a)

SOLUTION

Free-Body Diagram. As shown in Fig. 3–12*b*, the free-body diagram of point *A* is considered in order to "expose" the three unknown forces in the cables.

Equations of Equilibrium. First we will express each force in Cartesian vector form. Since the coordinates of points *B* and *C* are $B(-3\text{ ft}, -4\text{ ft}, 8\text{ ft})$ and $C(-3\text{ ft}, 4\text{ ft}, 8\text{ ft})$, we have

$$\mathbf{F}_B = F_B\left[\frac{-3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 8\mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{(-3)^2 + (-4)^2 + (8)^2}}\right]$$

$$= -0.318F_B\mathbf{i} - 0.424F_B\mathbf{j} + 0.848F_B\mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{F}_C = F_C\left[\frac{-3\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 8\mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{(-3)^2 + (4)^2 + (8)^2}}\right]$$

$$= -0.318F_C\mathbf{i} + 0.424F_C\mathbf{j} + 0.848F_C\mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{F}_D = F_D\mathbf{i}$$

$$\mathbf{W} = \{-40\mathbf{k}\}\text{ lb}$$

Equilibrium requires

$$\Sigma\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{0}; \qquad \mathbf{F}_B + \mathbf{F}_C + \mathbf{F}_D + \mathbf{W} = \mathbf{0}$$

$$-0.318F_B\mathbf{i} - 0.424F_B\mathbf{j} + 0.848F_B\mathbf{k}$$

$$-0.318F_C\mathbf{i} + 0.424F_C\mathbf{j} + 0.848F_C\mathbf{k} + F_D\mathbf{i} - 40\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$$

Equating the respective **i**, **j**, **k** components to zero yields

$$\Sigma F_x = 0; \qquad -0.318F_B - 0.318F_C + F_D = 0 \qquad (1)$$

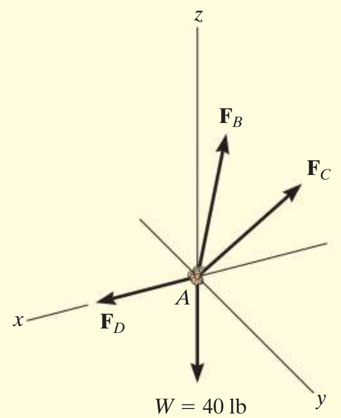
$$\Sigma F_y = 0; \qquad -0.424F_B + 0.424F_C = 0 \qquad (2)$$

$$\Sigma F_z = 0; \qquad 0.848F_B + 0.848F_C - 40 = 0 \qquad (3)$$

Equation (2) states that $F_B = F_C$. Thus, solving Eq. (3) for F_B and F_C and substituting the result into Eq. (1) to obtain F_D, we have

$$F_B = F_C = 23.6\text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$F_D = 15.0\text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$



(b)

Fig. 3–12

Determine the tension in each cord used to support the 100-kg crate shown in Fig. 3–13*a*.

SOLUTION

Free-Body Diagram. The force in each of the cords can be determined by investigating the equilibrium of point *A*. The free-body diagram is shown in Fig. 3–13*b*. The weight of the crate is $W = 100(9.81) = 981$ N.

Equations of Equilibrium. Each force on the free-body diagram is first expressed in Cartesian vector form. Using Eq. 2–9 for $\mathbf{F}_C$ and noting point $D(-1\text{ m}, 2\text{ m}, 2\text{ m})$ for $\mathbf{F}_D$, we have

$$\mathbf{F}_B = F_B\mathbf{i}$$

$$\mathbf{F}_C = F_C\cos 120°\mathbf{i} + F_C\cos 135°\mathbf{j} + F_C\cos 60°\mathbf{k}$$
$$= -0.5F_C\mathbf{i} - 0.707F_C\mathbf{j} + 0.5F_C\mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{F}_D = F_D\left[\frac{-1\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}}{\sqrt{(-1)^2 + (2)^2 + (2)^2}}\right]$$
$$= -0.333F_D\mathbf{i} + 0.667F_D\mathbf{j} + 0.667F_D\mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{W} = \{-981\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N}$$

Equilibrium requires

$$\Sigma\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{0}; \qquad \mathbf{F}_B + \mathbf{F}_C + \mathbf{F}_D + \mathbf{W} = \mathbf{0}$$
$$F_B\mathbf{i} - 0.5F_C\mathbf{i} - 0.707F_C\mathbf{j} + 0.5F_C\mathbf{k}$$
$$-0.333F_D\mathbf{i} + 0.667F_D\mathbf{j} + 0.667F_D\mathbf{k} - 981\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$$

Equating the respective **i**, **j**, **k** components to zero,

$$\Sigma F_x = 0; \qquad F_B - 0.5F_C - 0.333F_D = 0 \qquad (1)$$
$$\Sigma F_y = 0; \qquad -0.707F_C + 0.667F_D = 0 \qquad (2)$$
$$\Sigma F_z = 0; \qquad 0.5F_C + 0.667F_D - 981 = 0 \qquad (3)$$

Solving Eq. (2) for F_D in terms of F_C and substituting this into Eq. (3) yields F_C. F_D is then determined from Eq. (2). Finally, substituting the results into Eq. (1) gives F_B. Hence,

$$F_C = 813\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$
$$F_D = 862\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$
$$F_B = 694\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

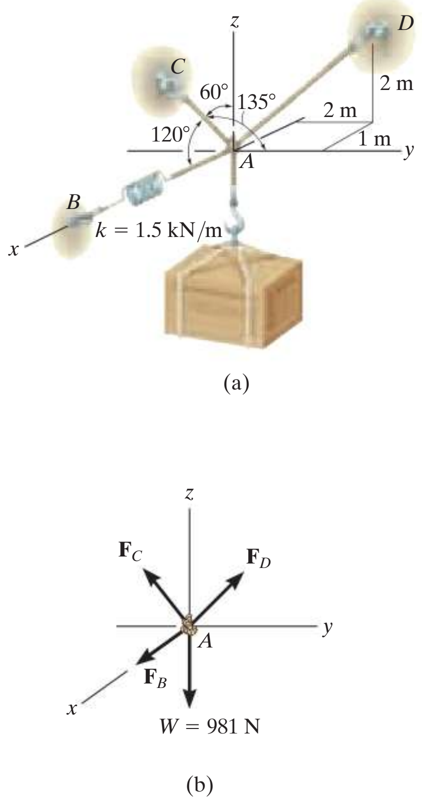
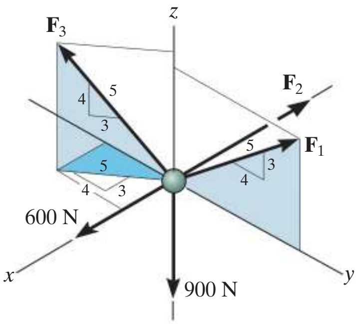


Fig. 3–13

FUNDAMENTAL PROBLEMS

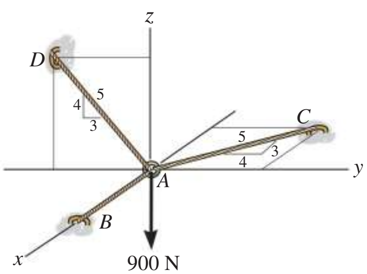
All problem solutions must include an FBD.

F3–7. Determine the magnitude of forces $\mathbf{F}_1, \mathbf{F}_2, \mathbf{F}_3,$ so that the particle is held in equilibrium.



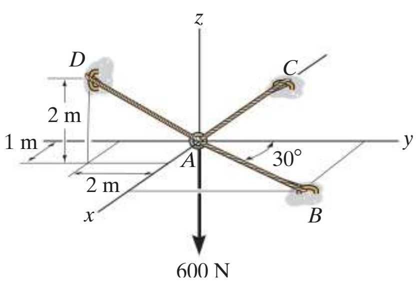
Prob. F3–7

F3–8. Determine the tension developed in cables AB, AC, and AD.



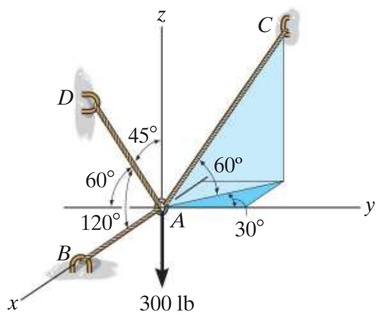
Prob. F3–8

F3–9. Determine the tension developed in cables AB, AC, and AD.



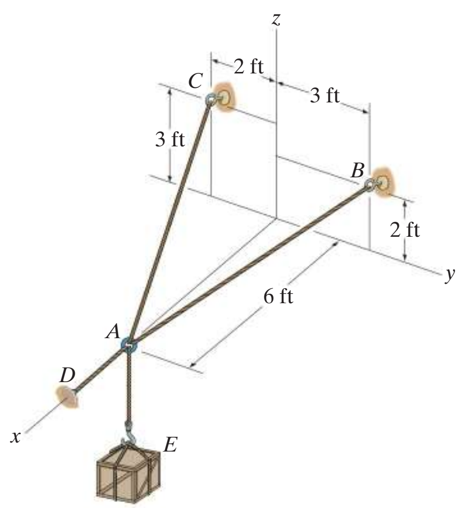
Prob. F3–9

F3–10. Determine the tension developed in cables AB, AC, and AD.



Prob. F3–10

F3–11. The 150-lb crate is supported by cables AB, AC, and AD. Determine the tension in these wires.

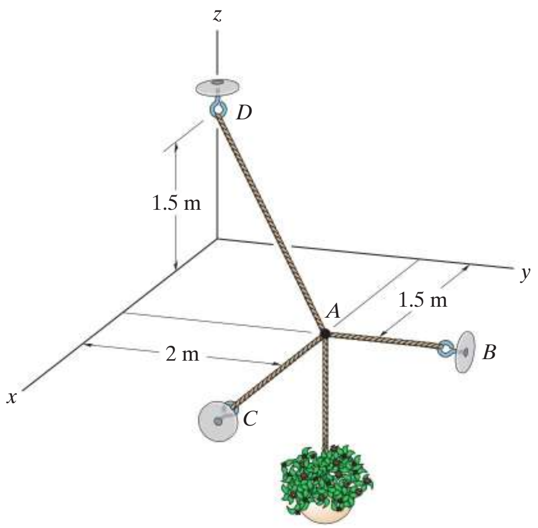


Prob. F3–11

PROBLEMS

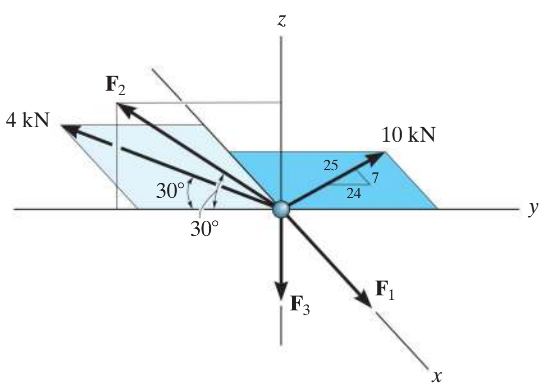
All problem solutions must include an FBD.

3–43. The three cables are used to support the 40-kg flowerpot. Determine the force developed in each cable for equilibrium.



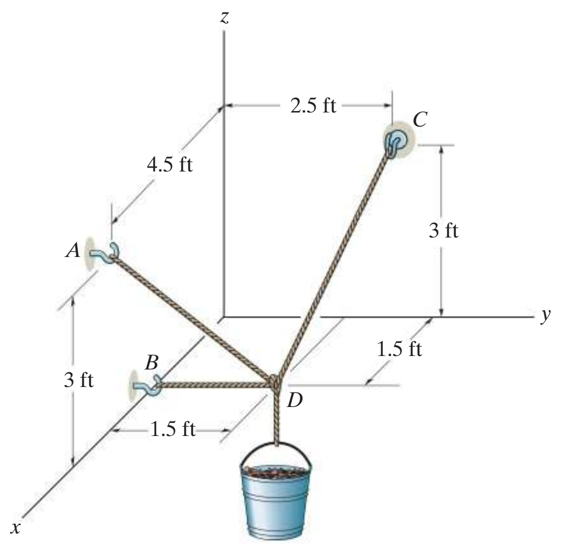
Prob. 3–43

***3–44.** Determine the magnitudes of $\mathbf{F}_1$, $\mathbf{F}_2$, and $\mathbf{F}_3$ for equilibrium of the particle.



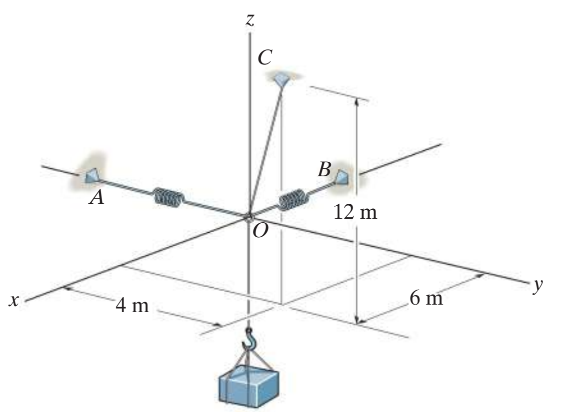
Prob. 3–44

3–45. If the bucket and its contents have a total weight of 20 lb, determine the force in the supporting cables *DA*, *DB*, and *DC*.



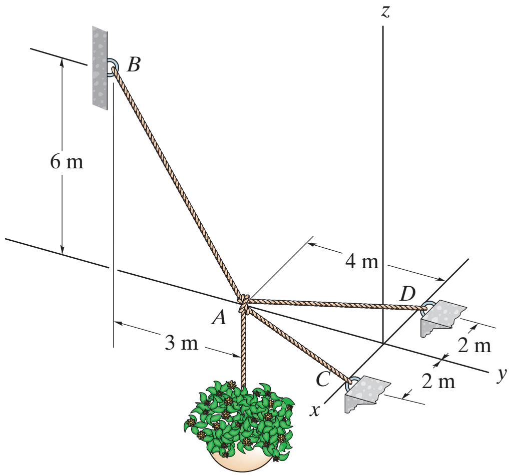
Prob. 3–45

3–46. Determine the stretch in each of the two springs required to hold the 20-kg crate in the equilibrium position shown. Each spring has an unstretched length of 2 m and a stiffness of $k = 300$ N/m.



Prob. 3–46

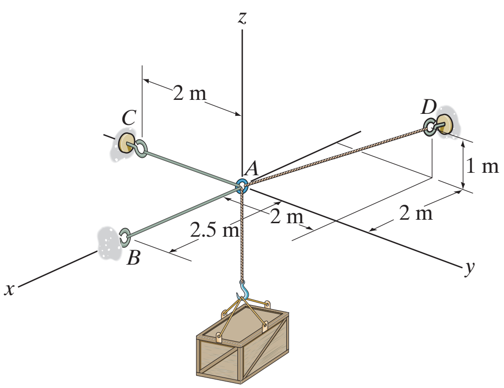
3–47. Determine the force in each cable needed to support the 20-kg flowerpot.



Prob. 3–47

***3–48.** Determine the tension in the cables in order to support the 100-kg crate in the equilibrium position shown.

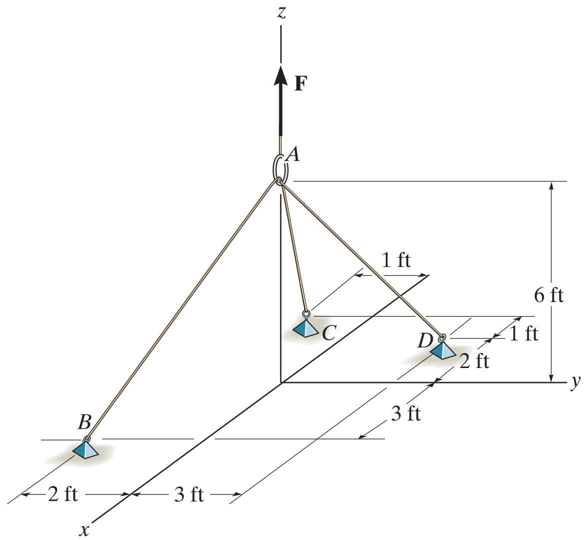
3–49. Determine the maximum mass of the crate so that the tension developed in any cable does not exceeded 3 kN.



Probs. 3–48/49

3–50. Determine the force in each cable if $F = 500$ lb.

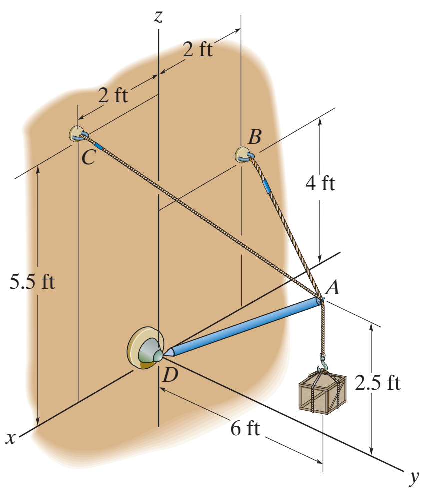
3–51. Determine the greatest force **F** that can be applied to the ring if each cable can support a maximum force of 800 lb.



Probs. 3–50/51

***3–52.** Determine the tension developed in cables AB and AC and the force developed along strut AD for equilibrium of the 400-lb crate.

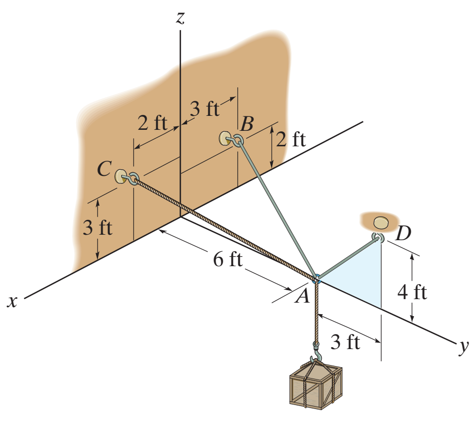
3–53. If the tension developed in each cable cannot exceed 300 lb, determine the largest weight of the crate that can be supported. Also, what is the force developed along strut AD?



Probs. 3–52/53

3–54. Determine the tension developed in each cable for equilibrium of the 300-lb crate.

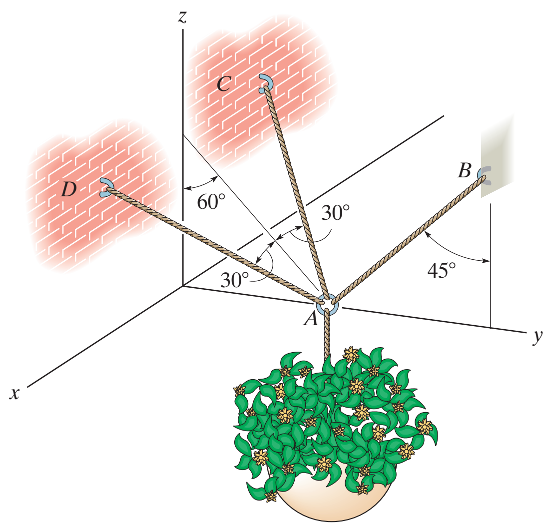
3–55. Determine the maximum weight of the crate that can be suspended from cables *AB*, *AC*, and *AD* so that the tension developed in any one of the cables does not exceed 250 lb.



Probs. 3–54/55

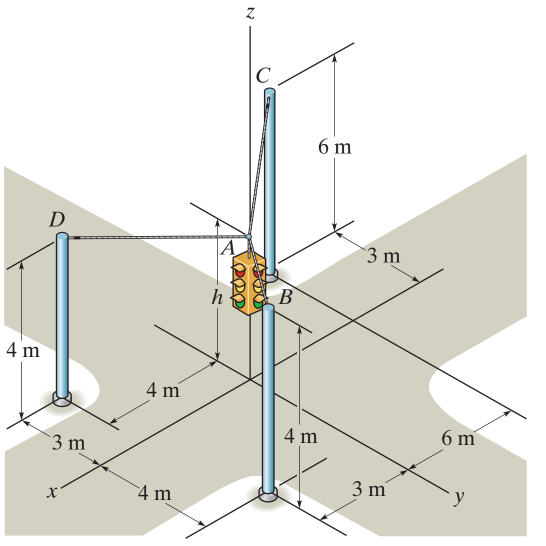
***3–56.** The 25-kg flowerpot is supported at *A* by the three cords. Determine the force acting in each cord for equilibrium.

3–57. If each cord can sustain a maximum tension of 50 N before it fails, determine the greatest weight of the flowerpot the cords can support.



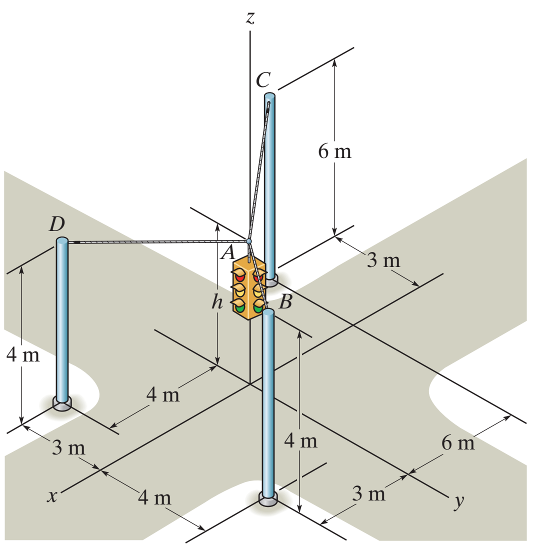
Probs. 3–56/57

3–58. Determine the tension developed in the three cables required to support the traffic light, which has a mass of 15 kg. Take $h = 4$ m.



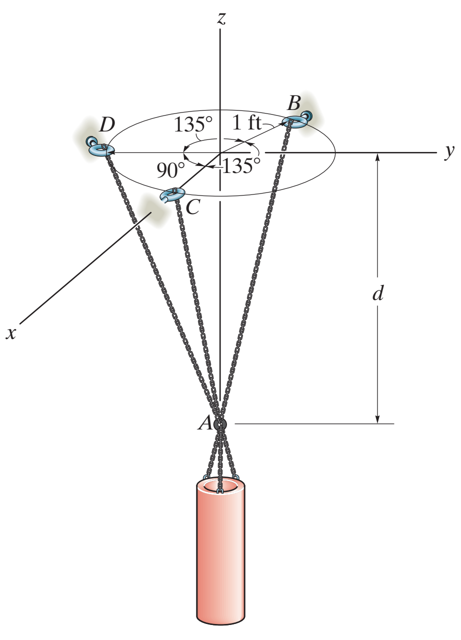
Prob. 3–58

3–59. Determine the tension developed in the three cables required to support the traffic light, which has a mass of 20 kg. Take $h = 3.5$ m.



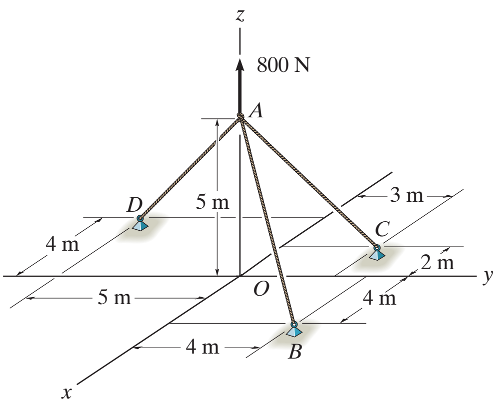
Prob. 3–59

***3–60.** The 800-lb cylinder is supported by three chains as shown. Determine the force in each chain for equilibrium. Take $d = 1$ ft.



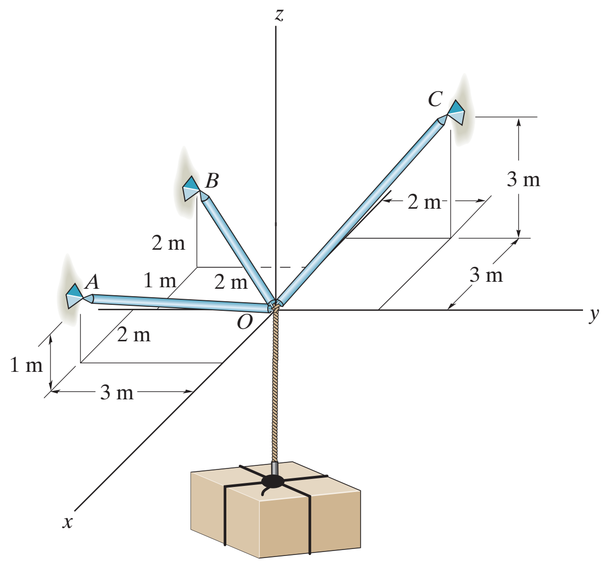
Prob. 3–60

3–61. Determine the tension in each cable for equilibrium.



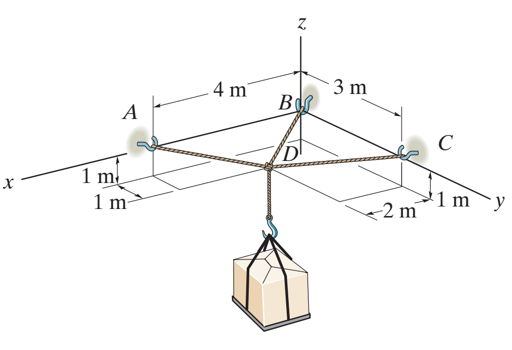
Prob. 3–61

3–62. If the maximum force in each rod can not exceed 1500 N, determine the greatest mass of the crate that can be supported.



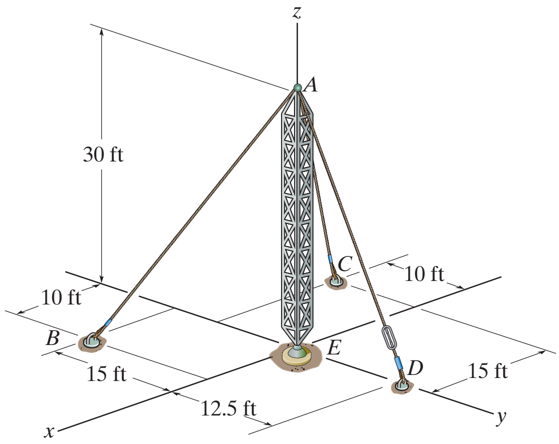
Prob. 3–62

3–63. The crate has a mass of 130 kg. Determine the tension developed in each cable for equilibrium.



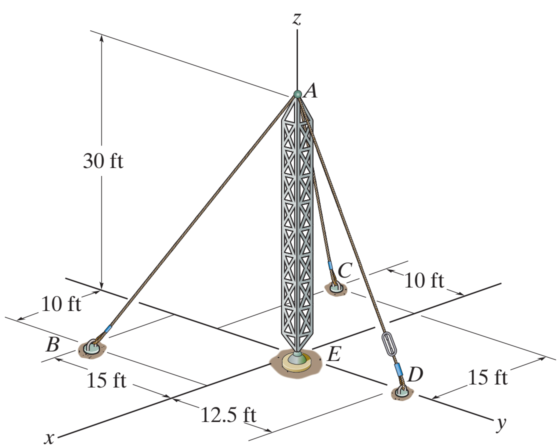
Prob. 3–63

***3–64.** If cable AD is tightened by a turnbuckle and develops a tension of 1300 lb, determine the tension developed in cables AB and AC and the force developed along the antenna tower AE at point A.



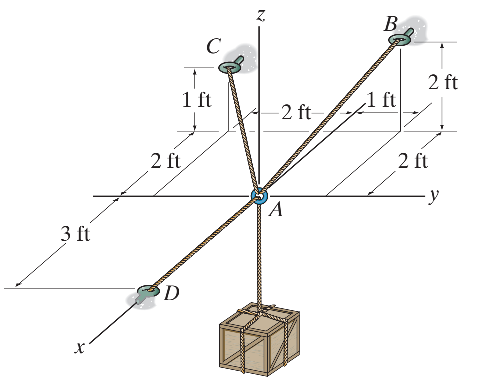
Prob. 3–64

3–65. If the tension developed in either cable AB or AC can not exceed 1000 lb, determine the maximum tension that can be developed in cable AD when it is tightened by the turnbuckle. Also, what is the force developed along the antenna tower at point A?



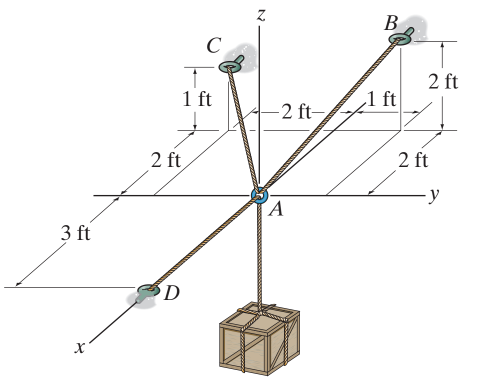
Prob. 3–65

3–66. Determine the tension developed in cables AB, AC, and AD required for equilibrium of the 300-lb crate.



Prob. 3–66

3–67. Determine the maximum weight of the crate so that the tension developed in any cable does not exceed 450 lb.



Prob. 3–67

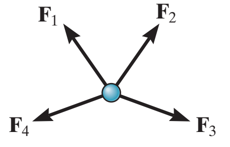
CHAPTER REVIEW

Particle Equilibrium

When a particle is at rest or moves with constant velocity, it is in equilibrium. This requires that all the forces acting on the particle form a zero resultant force.

$$F_R = \Sigma F = 0$$

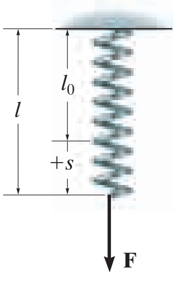
In order to account for all the forces that act on a particle, it is necessary to draw its free-body diagram. This diagram is an outlined shape of the particle that shows all the forces listed with their known or unknown magnitudes and directions.



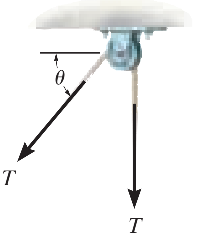
Two Dimensions

If the problem involves a linearly elastic spring, then the stretch or compression s of the spring can be related to the force applied to it.

$$F = ks$$



The tensile force developed in a *continuous cable* that passes over a frictionless pulley must have a *constant* magnitude throughout the cable to keep the cable in equilibrium.



The two scalar equations of force equilibrium can be applied with reference to an established x, y coordinate system.

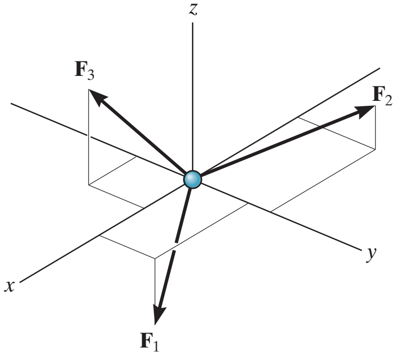
$$\Sigma F_x = 0$$
$$\Sigma F_y = 0$$

Three Dimensions

If the three-dimensional geometry is difficult to visualize, then the equilibrium equation should be applied using a Cartesian vector analysis. This requires first expressing each force on the free-body diagram as a Cartesian vector. When the forces are summed and set equal to zero, then the **i**, **j**, and **k** components are also zero.

$$\Sigma \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{0}$$

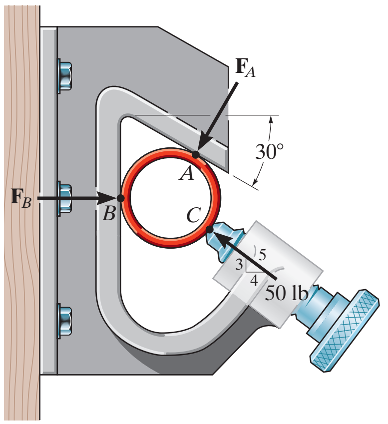
$$\Sigma F_x = 0$$
$$\Sigma F_y = 0$$
$$\Sigma F_z = 0$$



REVIEW PROBLEMS

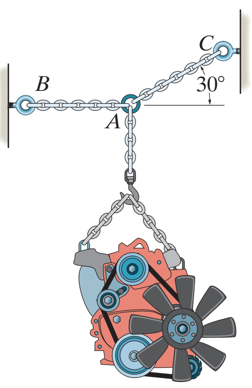
All problem solutions must include an FBD.

R3–1. The pipe is held in place by the vise. If the bolt exerts a force of 50 lb on the pipe in the direction shown, determine the forces F_A and F_B that the smooth contacts at A and B exert on the pipe.



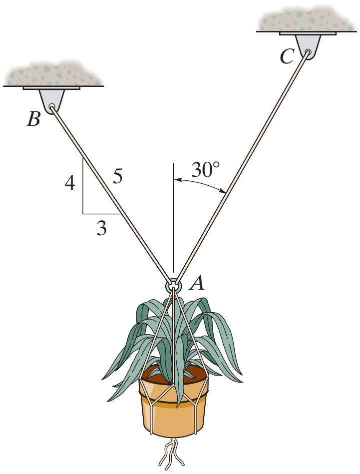
Prob. R3–1

R3–2. Determine the maximum weight of the engine that can be supported without exceeding a tension of 450 lb in chain AB and 480 lb in chain AC.



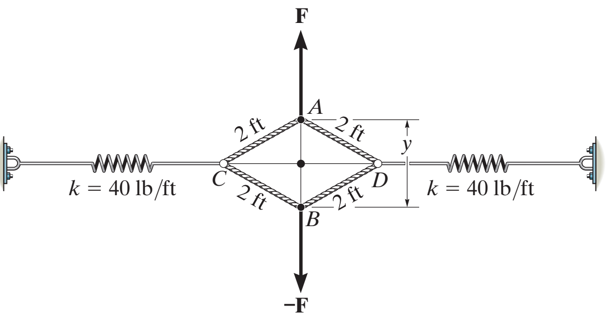
Prob. R3–2

R3–3. Determine the maximum weight of the flowerpot that can be supported without exceeding a cable tension of 50 lb in either cable AB or AC.



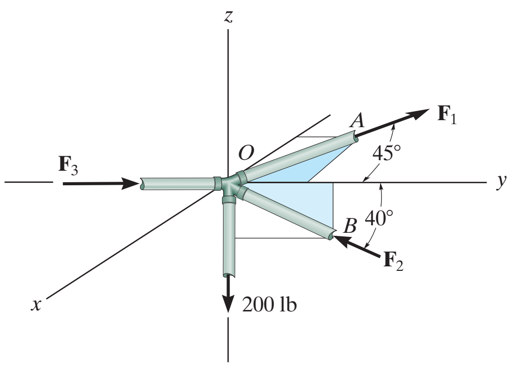
Prob. R3–3

R3–4. When y is zero, the springs sustain a force of 60 lb. Determine the magnitude of the applied vertical forces $\mathbf{F}$ and $-\mathbf{F}$ required to pull point A away from point B a distance of $y = 2$ ft. The ends of cords CAD and CBD are attached to rings at C and D.



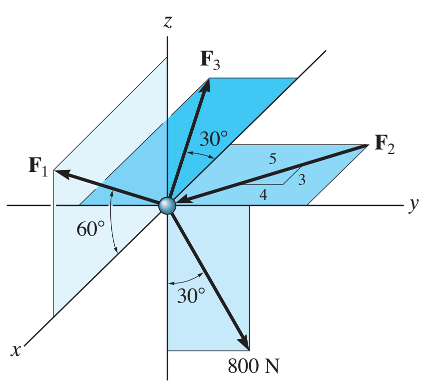
Prob. R3–4

R3–5. The joint of a space frame is subjected to four member forces. Member OA lies in the x–y plane and member OB lies in the y–z plane. Determine the force acting in each of the members required for equilibrium of the joint.



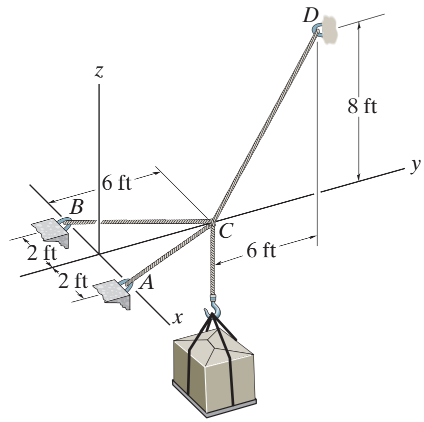
Prob. R3–5

R3–6. Determine the magnitudes of $\mathbf{F}_1$, $\mathbf{F}_2$, and $\mathbf{F}_3$ for equilibrium of the particle.



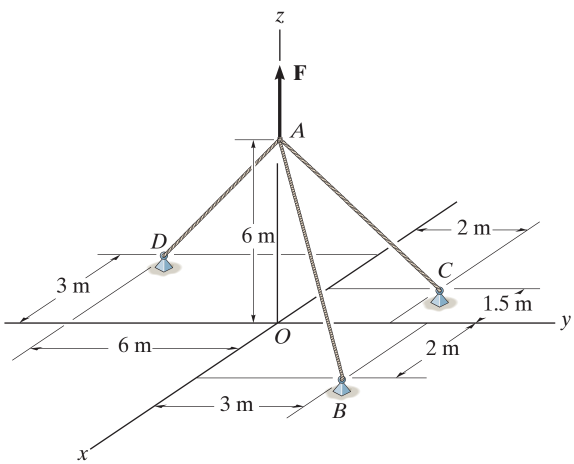
Prob. R3–6

R3–7. Determine the force in each cable needed to support the 500-lb load.



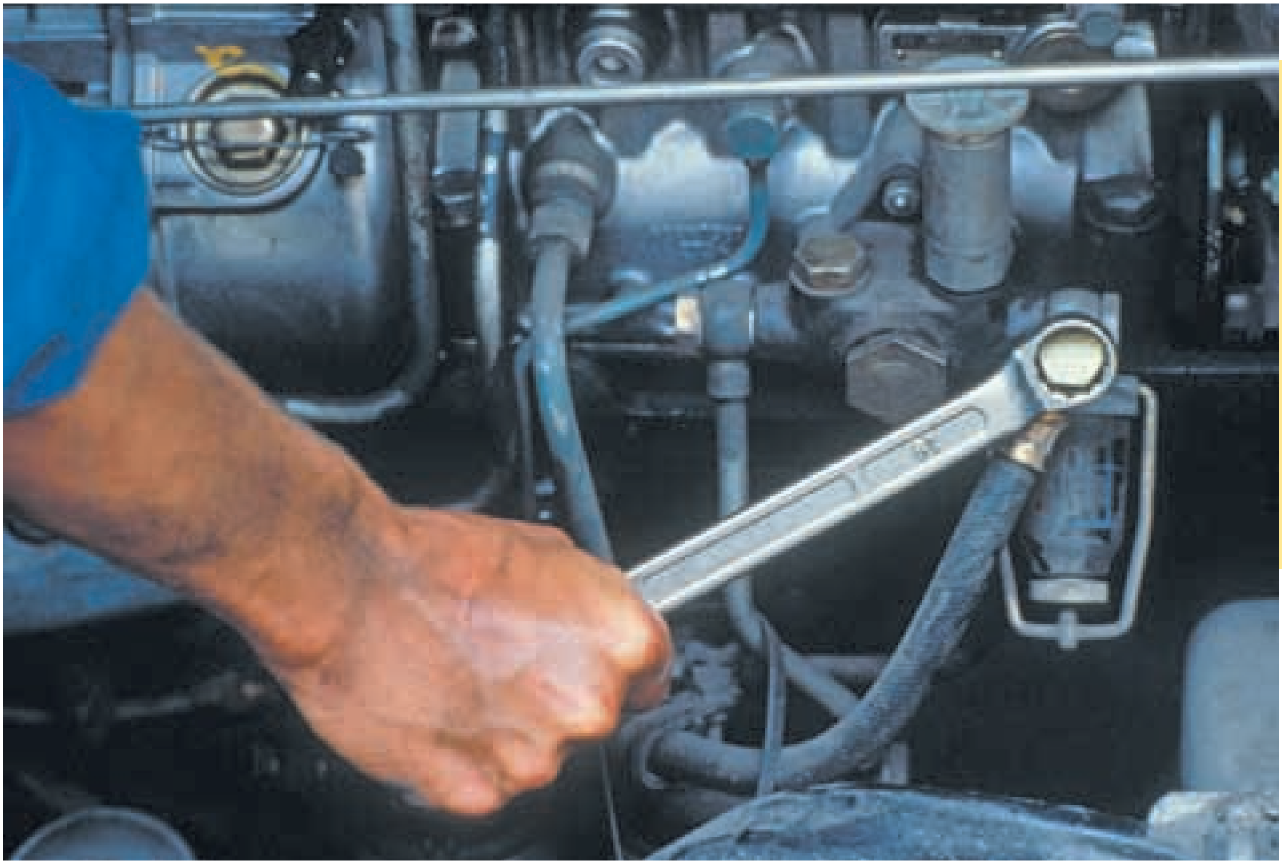
Prob. R3–7

R3–8. If cable AB is subjected to a tension of 700 N, determine the tension in cables AC and AD and the magnitude of the vertical force $\mathbf{F}$.



Prob. R3–8

Chapter 4



(© Rolf Adlercreutz/Alamy)

The force applied to this wrench will produce rotation or a tendency for rotation. This effect is called a moment, and in this chapter we will study how to determine the moment of a system of forces and calculate their resultants.

Force System Resultants

CHAPTER OBJECTIVES

- To discuss the concept of the moment of a force and show how to calculate it in two and three dimensions.
- To provide a method for finding the moment of a force about a specified axis.
- To define the moment of a couple.
- To show how to find the resultant effect of a nonconcurrent force system.
- To indicate how to reduce a simple distributed loading to a resultant force acting at a specified location.

4.1 Moment of a Force— Scalar Formulation

When a force is applied to a body it will produce a tendency for the body to rotate about a point that is not on the line of action of the force. This tendency to rotate is sometimes called a ***torque***, but most often it is called the moment of a force or simply the ***moment***. For example, consider a wrench used to unscrew the bolt in Fig. 4–1*a*. If a force is applied to the handle of the wrench it will tend to turn the bolt about point O (or the z axis). The magnitude of the moment is directly proportional to the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}$ and the perpendicular distance or *moment arm d*. The larger the force or the longer the moment arm, the greater the moment or turning effect. Note that if the force $\mathbf{F}$ is applied at an angle $\theta \neq 90°$, Fig. 4–1*b*, then it will be more difficult to turn the bolt since the moment arm $d' = d\sin\theta$ will be smaller than d. If $\mathbf{F}$ is applied along the wrench, Fig. 4–1*c*, its moment arm will be zero since the line of action of $\mathbf{F}$ will intersect point O (the z axis). As a result, the moment of $\mathbf{F}$ about O is also zero and no turning can occur.

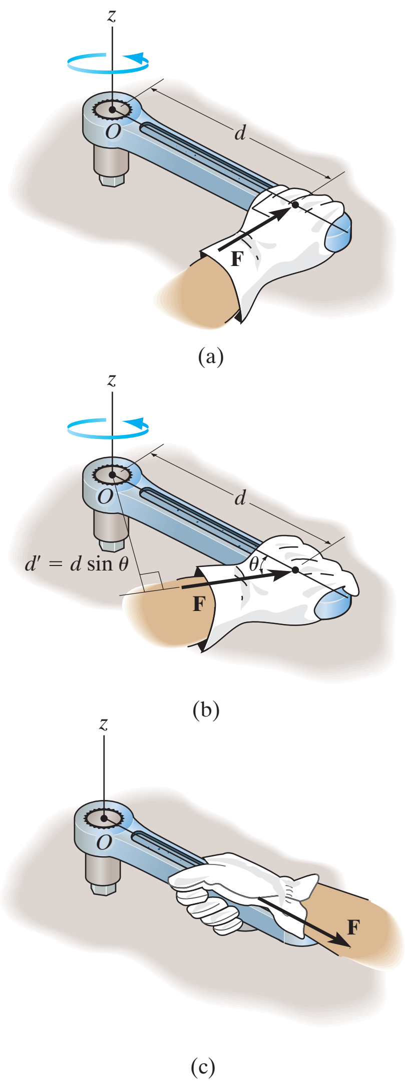


Fig. 4–1

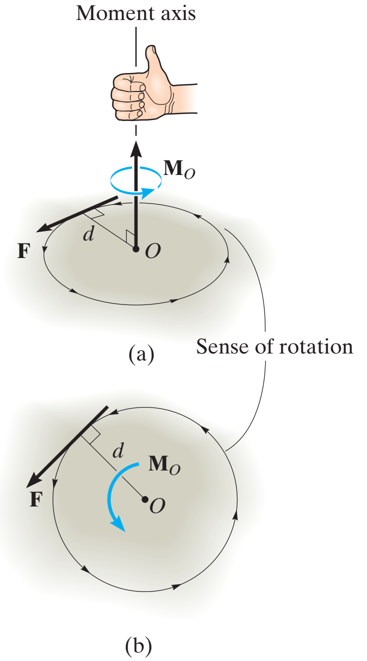


Fig. 4–2

We can generalize the above discussion and consider the force **F** and point O which lie in the shaded plane as shown in Fig. 4–2*a*. The moment $\mathbf{M}_O$ about point O, or about an axis passing through O and perpendicular to the plane, is a *vector quantity* since it has a specified magnitude and direction.

Magnitude. The magnitude of $\mathbf{M}_O$ is

$$\boxed{M_O = Fd} \tag{4–1}$$

where d is the ***moment arm*** or *perpendicular distance* from the axis at point O to the line of action of the force. Units of moment magnitude consist of force times distance, e.g., N · m or lb · ft.

Direction. The direction of $\mathbf{M}_O$ is defined by its ***moment axis***, which is perpendicular to the plane that contains the force **F** and its moment arm d. The right-hand rule is used to establish the sense of direction of $\mathbf{M}_O$. According to this rule, the natural curl of the fingers of the right hand, as they are drawn towards the palm, represent the rotation, or if no movement is possible, there is a tendency for rotation caused by the moment. As this action is performed, the thumb of the right hand will give the directional sense of $\mathbf{M}_O$, Fig. 4–2*a*. Notice that the moment vector is represented three-dimensionally by a curl around an arrow. In two dimensions this vector is represented only by the curl as in Fig. 4–2*b*. Since in this case the moment will tend to cause a counterclockwise rotation, the moment vector is actually directed out of the page.

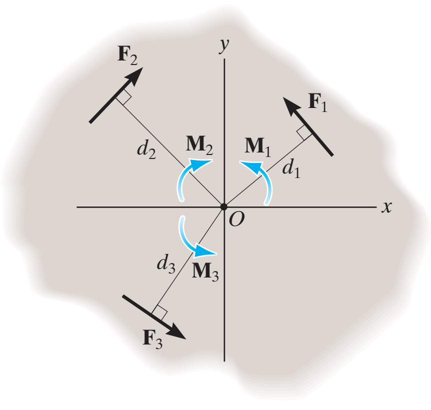


Fig. 4–3

Resultant Moment. For two-dimensional problems, where all the forces lie within the x–y plane, Fig. 4–3, the resultant moment $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$ about point O (the z axis) can be determined by *finding the algebraic sum* of the moments caused by all the forces in the system. As a convention, we will generally consider *positive moments* as *counterclockwise* since they are directed along the positive z axis (out of the page). *Clockwise moments* will be *negative*. Doing this, the directional sense of each moment can be represented by a *plus* or *minus* sign. Using this sign convention, with a symbolic curl to define the positive direction, the resultant moment in Fig. 4–3 is therefore

$$\circlearrowleft +(M_R)_o = \Sigma Fd; \qquad (M_R)_o = F_1 d_1 - F_2 d_2 + F_3 d_3$$

If the numerical result of this sum is a positive scalar, $(\mathbf{M}_R)_o$ will be a counterclockwise moment (out of the page); and if the result is negative, $(\mathbf{M}_R)_o$ will be a clockwise moment (into the page).

EXAMPLE 4.1

For each case illustrated in Fig. 4–4, determine the moment of the force about point O.

SOLUTION *(SCALAR ANALYSIS)*

The line of action of each force is extended as a dashed line in order to establish the moment arm d. Also illustrated is the tendency of rotation of the member as caused by the force. Furthermore, the orbit of the force about O is shown as a colored curl. Thus,

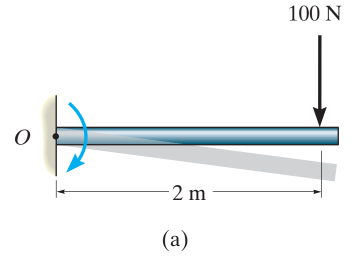
Fig. 4–4*a* $\quad M_O = (100\text{ N})(2\text{ m}) = 200\text{ N}\cdot\text{m} \circlearrowright$ *Ans.*

Fig. 4–4*b* $\quad M_O = (50\text{ N})(0.75\text{ m}) = 37.5\text{ N}\cdot\text{m} \circlearrowright$ *Ans.*

Fig. 4–4*c* $\quad M_O = (40\text{ lb})(4\text{ ft} + 2\cos 30^\circ\text{ ft}) = 229\text{ lb}\cdot\text{ft} \circlearrowright$ *Ans.*

Fig. 4–4*d* $\quad M_O = (60\text{ lb})(1\sin 45^\circ\text{ ft}) = 42.4\text{ lb}\cdot\text{ft} \circlearrowleft$ *Ans.*

Fig. 4–4*e* $\quad M_O = (7\text{ kN})(4\text{ m} - 1\text{ m}) = 21.0\text{ kN}\cdot\text{m} \circlearrowleft$ *Ans.*



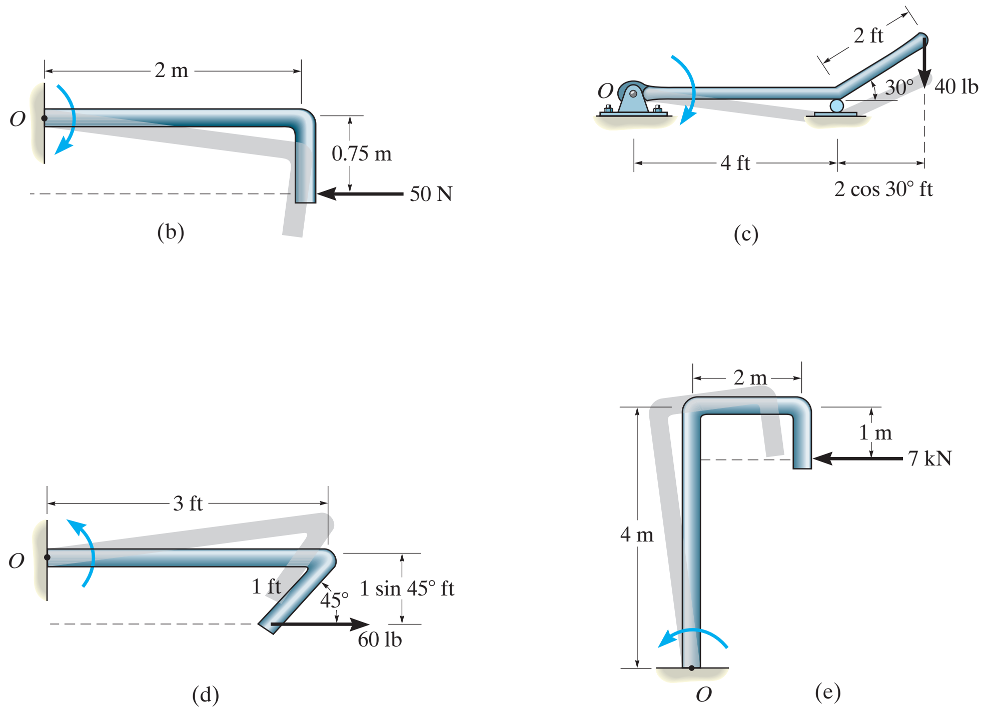


Fig. 4–4

EXAMPLE 4.2

Determine the resultant moment of the four forces acting on the rod shown in Fig. 4–5 about point O.

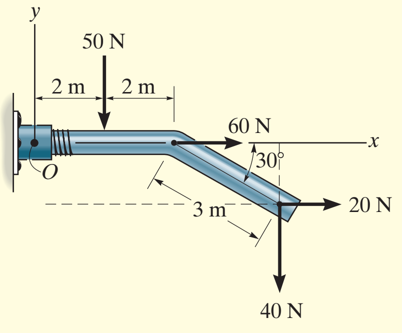


Fig. 4–5

SOLUTION

Assuming that positive moments act in the $+\mathbf{k}$ direction, i.e., counterclockwise, we have

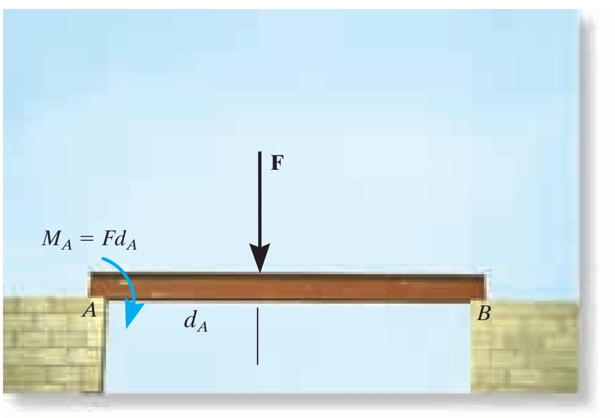
$$\circlearrowleft + (M_R)_o = \Sigma Fd;$$

$$(M_R)_o = -50\text{ N}(2\text{ m}) + 60\text{ N}(0) + 20\text{ N}(3 \sin 30^\circ\text{ m})$$

$$-40\text{ N}(4\text{ m} + 3 \cos 30^\circ\text{ m})$$

$$(M_R)_o = -334\text{ N}\cdot\text{m} = 334\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}\ \circlearrowright \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

For this calculation, note how the moment-arm distances for the 20-N and 40-N forces are established from the extended (dashed) lines of action of each of these forces.



As illustrated by the example problems, the moment of a force does not always cause a rotation. For example, the force **F** tends to rotate the beam clockwise about its support at A with a moment $M_A = Fd_A$. The actual rotation would occur if the support at B were removed. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

The ability to remove the nail will require the moment of $\mathbf{F}_H$ about point O to be larger than the moment of the force $\mathbf{F}_N$ about O that is needed to pull the nail out. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

4.2 Cross Product

The moment of a force will be formulated using Cartesian vectors in the next section. Before doing this, however, it is first necessary to expand our knowledge of vector algebra and introduce the cross-product method of vector multiplication, first used by Willard Gibbs in lectures given in the late 19th century.

The ***cross product*** of two vectors **A** and **B** yields the vector **C**, which is written

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} \tag{4–2}$$

and is read "**C** equals **A** cross **B**."

Magnitude. The *magnitude* of **C** is defined as the product of the magnitudes of **A** and **B** and the sine of the angle θ between their tails ($0° \leq \theta \leq 180°$). Thus, $C = AB \sin \theta$.

Direction. Vector **C** has a *direction* that is perpendicular to the plane containing **A** and **B** such that **C** is specified by the right-hand rule; i.e., curling the fingers of the right hand from vector **A** (cross) to vector **B**, the thumb points in the direction of **C**, as shown in Fig. 4–6.

Knowing both the magnitude and direction of **C**, we can write

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = (AB \sin \theta)\mathbf{u}_C \tag{4–3}$$

where the scalar $AB \sin\theta$ defines the *magnitude* of **C** and the unit vector $\mathbf{u}_C$ defines the *direction* of **C**. The terms of Eq. 4–3 are illustrated graphically in Fig. 4–6.

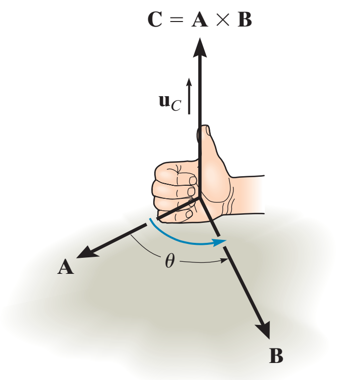


Fig. 4–6

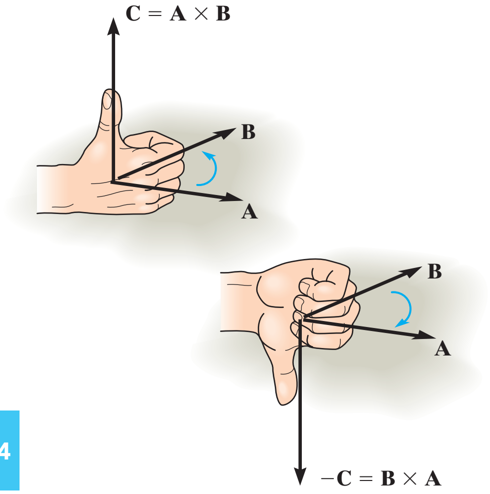


Fig. 4–7

Laws of Operation.

- The commutative law is *not* valid; i.e., $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} \neq \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$. Rather,

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$$

This is shown in Fig. 4–7 by using the right-hand rule. The cross product $\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$ yields a vector that has the same magnitude but acts in the opposite direction to $\mathbf{C}$; i.e., $\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A} = -\mathbf{C}$.

- If the cross product is multiplied by a scalar a, it obeys the associative law;

$$a(\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}) = (a\mathbf{A}) \times \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{A} \times (a\mathbf{B}) = (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B})a$$

This property is easily shown since the magnitude of the resultant vector $(|a|AB \sin\theta)$ and its direction are the same in each case.

- The vector cross product also obeys the distributive law of addition,

$$\mathbf{A} \times (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{D}) = (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}) + (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{D})$$

- The proof of this identity is left as an exercise (see Prob. 4–1). It is important to note that *proper order* of the cross products must be maintained, since they are not commutative.

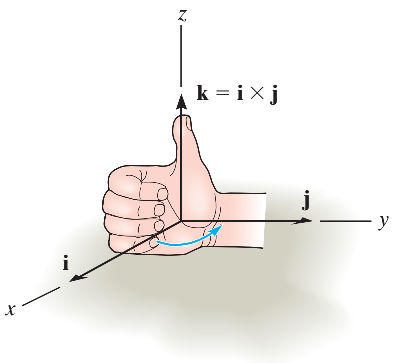


Fig. 4–8

Cartesian Vector Formulation. Equation 4–3 may be used to find the cross product of any pair of Cartesian unit vectors. For example, to find $\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j}$, the magnitude of the resultant vector is $(i)(j)(\sin 90°) = (1)(1)(1) = 1$, and its direction is determined using the right-hand rule. As shown in Fig. 4–8, the resultant vector points in the $+\mathbf{k}$ direction. Thus, $\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} = (1)\mathbf{k}$. In a similar manner,

$$\begin{array}{lll} \mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} & \mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k} = -\mathbf{j} & \mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i} = -\mathbf{k} & \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{j} = -\mathbf{i} & \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0} \end{array}$$

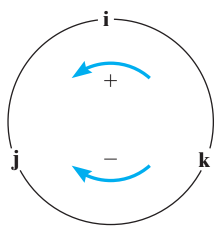


Fig. 4–9

These results should *not* be memorized; rather, it should be clearly understood how each is obtained by using the right-hand rule and the definition of the cross product. A simple scheme shown in Fig. 4–9 is helpful for obtaining the same results when the need arises. If the circle is constructed as shown, then "crossing" two unit vectors in a *counterclockwise* fashion around the circle yields the *positive* third unit vector; e.g., $\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j}$. "Crossing" *clockwise*, a *negative* unit vector is obtained; e.g., $\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k} = -\mathbf{j}$.

Let us now consider the cross product of two general vectors **A** and **B** which are expressed in Cartesian vector form. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} &= (A_x\mathbf{i} + A_y\mathbf{j} + A_z\mathbf{k}) \times (B_x\mathbf{i} + B_y\mathbf{j} + B_z\mathbf{k}) \\
&= A_xB_x(\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{i}) + A_xB_y(\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j}) + A_xB_z(\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k}) \\
&\quad + A_yB_x(\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i}) + A_yB_y(\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{j}) + A_yB_z(\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k}) \\
&\quad + A_zB_x(\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i}) + A_zB_y(\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{j}) + A_zB_z(\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{k})
\end{aligned}$$

Carrying out the cross-product operations and combining terms yields

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = (A_yB_z - A_zB_y)\mathbf{i} - (A_xB_z - A_zB_x)\mathbf{j} + (A_xB_y - A_yB_x)\mathbf{k} \tag{4–4}$$

This equation may also be written in a more compact determinant form as

$$\boxed{\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ A_x & A_y & A_z \\ B_x & B_y & B_z \end{vmatrix}} \tag{4–5}$$

Thus, to find the cross product of any two Cartesian vectors **A** and **B**, it is necessary to expand a determinant whose first row of elements consists of the unit vectors **i**, **j**, and **k** and whose second and third rows represent the *x, y, z* components of the two vectors **A** and **B**, respectively.*

*A determinant having three rows and three columns can be expanded using three minors, each of which is multiplied by one of the three terms in the first row. There are four elements in each minor, for example,

$$\begin{vmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{vmatrix}$$

By *definition*, this determinant notation represents the terms $(A_{11}A_{22} - A_{12}A_{21})$, which is simply the product of the two elements intersected by the arrow slanting downward to the right $(A_{11}A_{22})$ *minus* the product of the two elements intersected by the arrow slanting downward to the left $(A_{12}A_{21})$. For a 3×3 determinant, such as Eq. 4–5, the three minors can be generated in accordance with the following scheme:

For element **i**: $\begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ A_x & A_y & A_z \\ B_x & B_y & B_z \end{vmatrix} = \mathbf{i}(A_yB_z - A_zB_y)$

Remember the negative sign

For element **j**: $\begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ A_x & A_y & A_z \\ B_x & B_y & B_z \end{vmatrix} = -\mathbf{j}(A_xB_z - A_zB_x)$

For element **k**: $\begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ A_x & A_y & A_z \\ B_x & B_y & B_z \end{vmatrix} = \mathbf{k}(A_xB_y - A_yB_x)$

Adding the results and noting that the **j** element *must include the minus sign* yields the expanded form of $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$ given by Eq. 4–4.

4.3 Moment of a Force—Vector Formulation

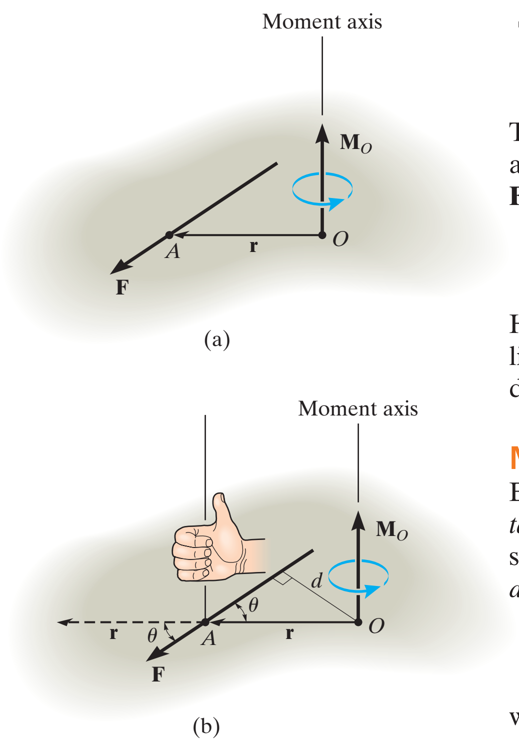


Fig. 4–10

The moment of a force $\mathbf{F}$ about point O, or actually about the moment axis passing through O and perpendicular to the plane containing O and $\mathbf{F}$, Fig. 4–10*a*, can be expressed using the vector cross product, namely,

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} \qquad (4\text{–}6)$$

Here $\mathbf{r}$ represents a position vector directed *from O* to *any point* on the line of action of $\mathbf{F}$. We will now show that indeed the moment $\mathbf{M}_O$, when determined by this cross product, has the proper magnitude and direction.

Magnitude. The magnitude of the cross product is defined from Eq. 4–3 as $M_O = rF \sin \theta$, where the angle θ is measured between the *tails* of $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{F}$. To establish this angle, $\mathbf{r}$ must be treated as a sliding vector so that θ can be constructed properly, Fig. 4–10*b*. Since the moment arm $d = r \sin \theta$, then

$$M_O = rF \sin \theta = F(r \sin \theta) = Fd$$

which agrees with Eq. 4–1.

Direction. The direction and sense of $\mathbf{M}_O$ in Eq. 4–6 are determined by the right-hand rule as it applies to the cross product. Thus, sliding $\mathbf{r}$ to the dashed position and curling the right-hand fingers from $\mathbf{r}$ toward $\mathbf{F}$, "$\mathbf{r}$ cross $\mathbf{F}$," the thumb is directed upward or perpendicular to the plane containing $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{F}$ and this is in the *same direction* as $\mathbf{M}_O$, the moment of the force about point O, Fig. 4–10*b*. Note that the "curl" of the fingers, like the curl around the moment vector, indicates the sense of rotation caused by the force. Since the cross product does not obey the commutative law, the order of $\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$ must be maintained to produce the correct sense of direction for $\mathbf{M}_O$.

Principle of Transmissibility. The cross product operation is often used in three dimensions since the perpendicular distance or moment arm from point O to the line of action of the force is not needed. In other words, we can use any position vector $\mathbf{r}$ measured from point O to any point on the line of action of the force $\mathbf{F}$, Fig. 4–11. Thus,

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{r}_1 \times \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{r}_2 \times \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{r}_3 \times \mathbf{F}$$

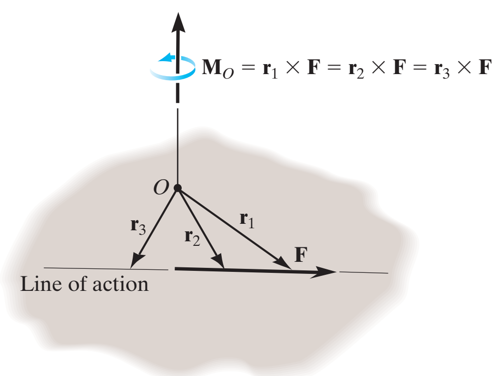


Fig. 4–11

Since $\mathbf{F}$ can be applied at any point along its line of action and still create this *same moment* about point O, then $\mathbf{F}$ can be considered a *sliding vector*. This property is called the *principle of transmissibility* of a force.

Cartesian Vector Formulation. If we establish x, y, z coordinate axes, then the position vector $\mathbf{r}$ and force $\mathbf{F}$ can be expressed as Cartesian vectors, Fig. 4–12*a*. Applying Eq. 4–5 we have

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ r_x & r_y & r_z \\ F_x & F_y & F_z \end{vmatrix} \tag{4–7}$$

where

r_x, r_y, r_z represent the x, y, z components of the position vector drawn from point O to *any point* on the line of action of the force

F_x, F_y, F_z represent the x, y, z components of the force vector

If the determinant is expanded, then like Eq. 4–4 we have

$$\mathbf{M}_O = (r_yF_z - r_zF_y)\mathbf{i} - (r_xF_z - r_zF_x)\mathbf{j} + (r_xF_y - r_yF_x)\mathbf{k} \tag{4–8}$$

The physical meaning of these three moment components becomes evident by studying Fig. 4–12*b*. For example, the $\mathbf{i}$ component of $\mathbf{M}_O$ can be determined from the moments of $\mathbf{F}_x$, $\mathbf{F}_y$, and $\mathbf{F}_z$ about the x axis. The component $\mathbf{F}_x$ does *not* create a moment or tendency to cause turning about the x axis since this force is *parallel* to the x axis. The line of action of $\mathbf{F}_y$ passes through point B, and so the magnitude of the moment of $\mathbf{F}_y$ about point A on the x axis is r_zF_y. By the right-hand rule this component acts in the *negative* $\mathbf{i}$ direction. Likewise, $\mathbf{F}_z$ passes through point C and so it contributes a moment component of $r_yF_z\mathbf{i}$ about the x axis. Thus, $(M_O)_x = (r_yF_z - r_zF_y)$ as shown in Eq. 4–8. As an exercise, establish the $\mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{k}$ components of $\mathbf{M}_O$ in this manner and show that indeed the expanded form of the determinant, Eq. 4–8, represents the moment of $\mathbf{F}$ about point O. Once $\mathbf{M}_O$ is determined, realize that it will always be *perpendicular* to the shaded plane containing vectors $\mathbf{r}$ and $\mathbf{F}$, Fig. 4–12*a*.

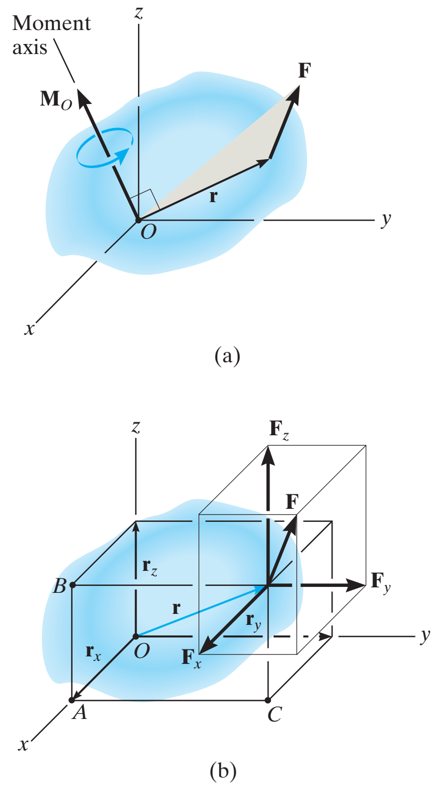


Fig. 4–12

Resultant Moment of a System of Forces. If a body is acted upon by a system of forces, Fig. 4–13, the resultant moment of the forces about point O can be determined by vector addition of the moment of each force. This resultant can be written symbolically as

$$(\mathbf{M}_R)_O = \Sigma(\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}) \tag{4–9}$$

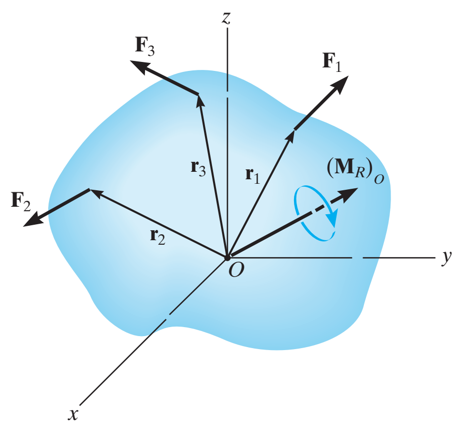
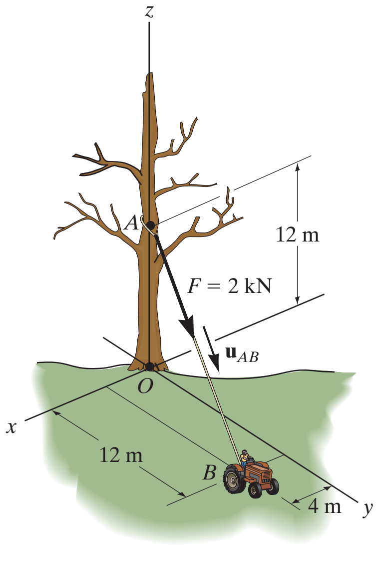


Fig. 4–13

EXAMPLE

Determine the moment produced by the force **F** in Fig. 4–14*a* about point *O*. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



(a)

SOLUTION

As shown in Fig. 4–14*b*, either $\mathbf{r}_A$ or $\mathbf{r}_B$ can be used to determine the moment about point *O*. These position vectors are

$$\mathbf{r}_A = \{12\mathbf{k}\}\text{ m} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{r}_B = \{4\mathbf{i} + 12\mathbf{j}\}\text{ m}$$

Force **F** expressed as a Cartesian vector is

$$\mathbf{F} = F\mathbf{u}_{AB} = 2\text{ kN}\left[\frac{\{4\mathbf{i} + 12\mathbf{j} - 12\mathbf{k}\}\text{ m}}{\sqrt{(4\text{ m})^2 + (12\text{ m})^2 + (-12\text{ m})^2}}\right]$$

$$= \{0.4588\mathbf{i} + 1.376\mathbf{j} - 1.376\mathbf{k}\}\text{ kN}$$

Thus

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{r}_A \times \mathbf{F} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 0 & 0 & 12 \\ 0.4588 & 1.376 & -1.376 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= [0(-1.376) - 12(1.376)]\mathbf{i} - [0(-1.376) - 12(0.4588)]\mathbf{j} + [0(1.376) - 0(0.4588)]\mathbf{k}$$

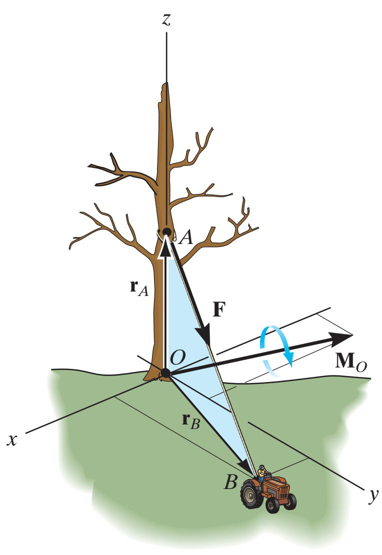
$$= \{-16.5\mathbf{i} + 5.51\mathbf{j}\}\text{ kN}\cdot\text{m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

or

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{r}_B \times \mathbf{F} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 4 & 12 & 0 \\ 0.4588 & 1.376 & -1.376 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= [12(-1.376) - 0(1.376)]\mathbf{i} - [4(-1.376) - 0(0.4588)]\mathbf{j} + [4(1.376) - 12(0.4588)]\mathbf{k}$$

$$= \{-16.5\mathbf{i} + 5.51\mathbf{j}\}\text{ kN}\cdot\text{m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$



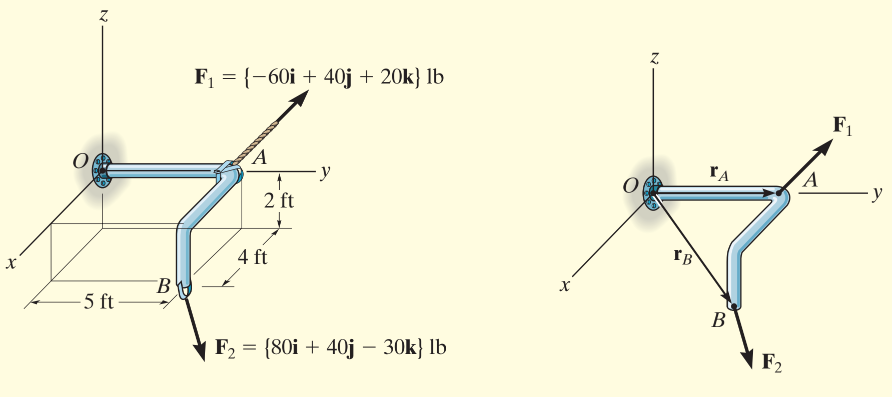
(b)

Fig. 4–14

NOTE: As shown in Fig. 4–14*b*, $\mathbf{M}_O$ acts perpendicular to the plane that contains $\mathbf{F}$, $\mathbf{r}_A$, and $\mathbf{r}_B$. Had this problem been worked using $M_O = Fd$, notice the difficulty that would arise in obtaining the moment arm *d*.

EXAMPLE 4.4

Two forces act on the rod shown in Fig. 4–15*a*. Determine the resultant moment they create about the flange at O. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



SOLUTION

Position vectors are directed from point O to each force as shown in Fig. 4–15*b*. These vectors are

$$\mathbf{r}_A = \{5\mathbf{j}\} \text{ ft}$$

$$\mathbf{r}_B = \{4\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}\} \text{ ft}$$

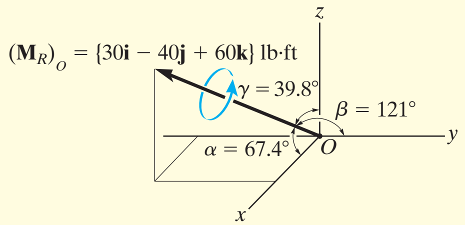


Fig. 4–15

The resultant moment about O is therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{M}_R)_O &= \Sigma(\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}) \\
&= \mathbf{r}_A \times \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{r}_B \times \mathbf{F}_2 \\
&= \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 0 & 5 & 0 \\ -60 & 40 & 20 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 4 & 5 & -2 \\ 80 & 40 & -30 \end{vmatrix} \\
&= [5(20) - 0(40)]\mathbf{i} - [0]\mathbf{j} + [0(40) - (5)(-60)]\mathbf{k} \\
&\quad + [5(-30) - (-2)(40)]\mathbf{i} - [4(-30) - (-2)(80)]\mathbf{j} + [4(40) - 5(80)]\mathbf{k} \\
&= \{30\mathbf{i} - 40\mathbf{j} + 60\mathbf{k}\} \text{ lb} \cdot \text{ft}
\end{aligned}$$

Ans.

NOTE: This result is shown in Fig. 4–15*c*. The coordinate direction angles were determined from the unit vector for $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$. Realize that the two forces tend to cause the rod to rotate about the moment axis in the manner shown by the curl indicated on the moment vector.

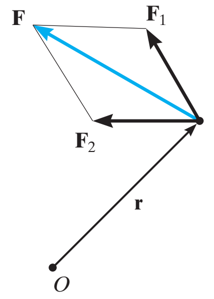


Fig. 4–16

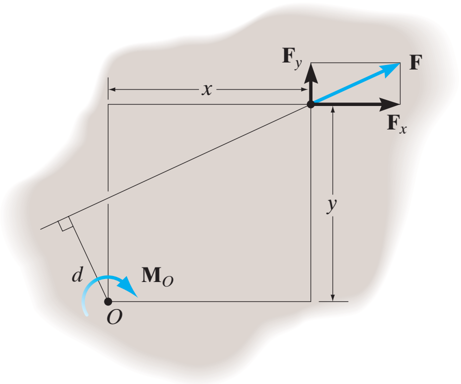
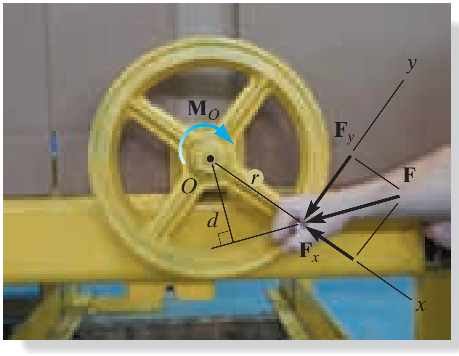


Fig. 4–17



The moment of the force about point O is $M_O = Fd$. But it is easier to find this moment using $M_O = F_x(0) + F_y r = F_y r$. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

4.4 Principle of Moments

A concept often used in mechanics is the ***principle of moments***, which is sometimes referred to as **Varignon's theorem** since it was orginally developed by the French mathematician Pierre Varignon (1654–1722). It states that *the moment of a force about a point is equal to the sum of the moments of the components of the force about the point*. This theorem can be proven easily using the vector cross product since the cross product obeys the *distributive law*. For example, consider the moments of the force $\mathbf{F}$ and two of its components about point O, Fig. 4–16. Since $\mathbf{F} = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$ we have

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{r} \times (\mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2) = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}_2$$

For two-dimensional problems, Fig. 4–17, we can use the principle of moments by resolving the force into its rectangular components and then determine the moment using a scalar analysis. Thus,

$$M_O = F_x y - F_y x$$

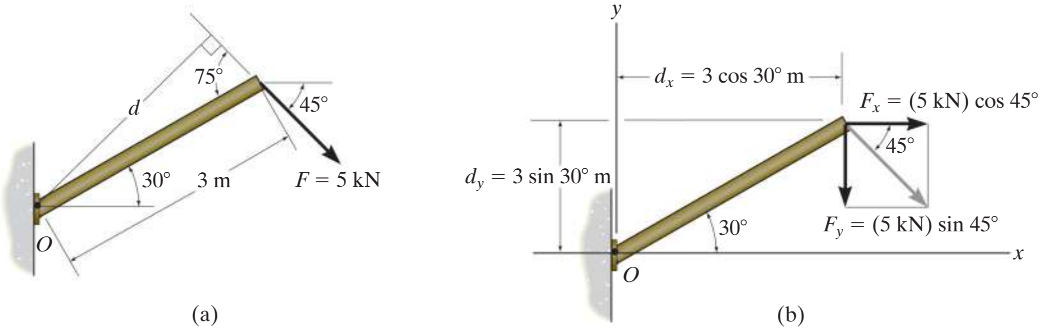
This method is generally easier than finding the same moment using $M_O = Fd$.

Important Points

- The moment of a force creates the tendency of a body to turn about an axis passing through a specific point O.
- Using the right-hand rule, the sense of rotation is indicated by the curl of the fingers, and the thumb is directed along the moment axis, or line of action of the moment.
- The magnitude of the moment is determined from $M_O = Fd$, where d is called the moment arm, which represents the perpendicular or shortest distance from point O to the line of action of the force.
- In three dimensions the vector cross product is used to determine the moment, i.e., $\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$. Remember that $\mathbf{r}$ is directed *from* point O *to any point* on the line of action of $\mathbf{F}$.

EXAMPLE 4.5

Determine the moment of the force in Fig. 4–18*a* about point *O*.



SOLUTION I

The moment arm *d* in Fig. 4–18*a* can be found from trigonometry.

$$d = (3 \text{ m}) \sin 75° = 2.898 \text{ m}$$

Thus,

$$M_O = Fd = (5 \text{ kN})(2.898 \text{ m}) = 14.5 \text{ kN} \cdot \text{m} \circlearrowright \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Since the force tends to rotate or orbit clockwise about point *O*, the moment is directed into the page.

SOLUTION II

The *x* and *y* components of the force are indicated in Fig. 4–18*b*. Considering counterclockwise moments as positive, and applying the principle of moments, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \circlearrowleft + M_O &= -F_x d_y - F_y d_x \\ &= -(5 \cos 45° \text{ kN})(3 \sin 30° \text{ m}) - (5 \sin 45° \text{ kN})(3 \cos 30° \text{ m}) \\ &= -14.5 \text{ kN} \cdot \text{m} = 14.5 \text{ kN} \cdot \text{m} \circlearrowright \qquad \textit{Ans.} \end{aligned}$$

SOLUTION III

The *x* and *y* axes can be set parallel and perpendicular to the rod's axis as shown in Fig. 4–18*c*. Here $\mathbf{F}_x$ produces no moment about point *O* since its line of action passes through this point. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \circlearrowleft + M_O &= -F_y d_x \\ &= -(5 \sin 75° \text{ kN})(3 \text{ m}) \\ &= -14.5 \text{ kN} \cdot \text{m} = 14.5 \text{ kN} \cdot \text{m} \circlearrowright \qquad \textit{Ans.} \end{aligned}$$

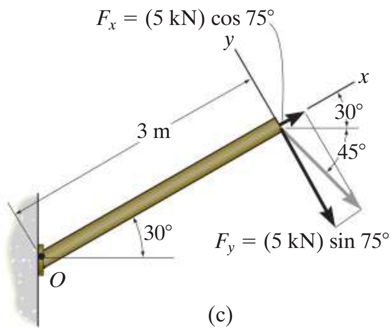


Fig. 4–18

Force **F** acts at the end of the angle bracket in Fig. 4–19*a*. Determine the moment of the force about point *O*.

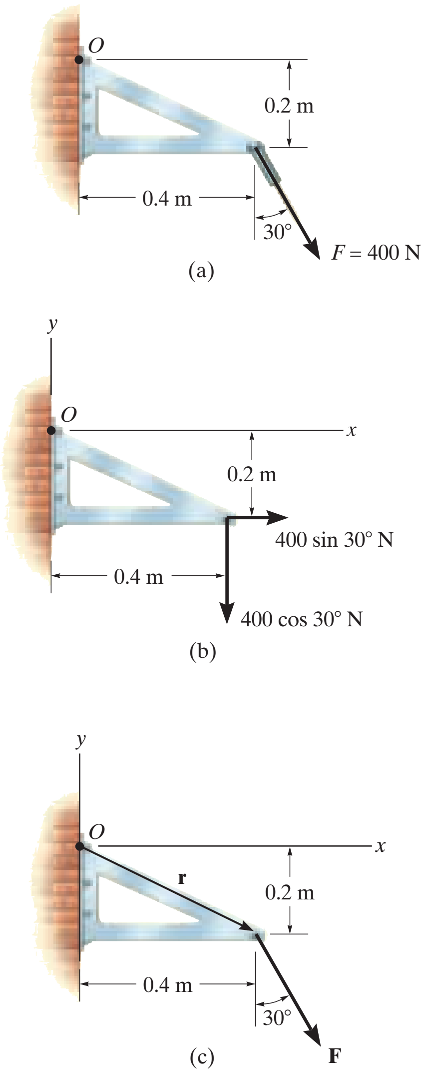


Fig. 4–19

SOLUTION I *(SCALAR ANALYSIS)*

The force is resolved into its *x* and *y* components, Fig. 4–19*b*, then

$$\curvearrowleft + M_O = 400 \sin 30^\circ \text{ N}(0.2 \text{ m}) - 400 \cos 30^\circ \text{ N}(0.4 \text{ m})$$
$$= -98.6 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m} = 98.6 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m} \curvearrowright$$

or

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \{-98.6\mathbf{k}\} \text{ N}\cdot\text{m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

SOLUTION II *(VECTOR ANALYSIS)*

Using a Cartesian vector approach, the force and position vectors, Fig. 4–19*c*, are

$$\mathbf{r} = \{0.4\mathbf{i} - 0.2\mathbf{j}\} \text{ m}$$
$$\mathbf{F} = \{400 \sin 30^\circ \mathbf{i} - 400 \cos 30^\circ \mathbf{j}\} \text{ N}$$
$$= \{200.0\mathbf{i} - 346.4\mathbf{j}\} \text{ N}$$

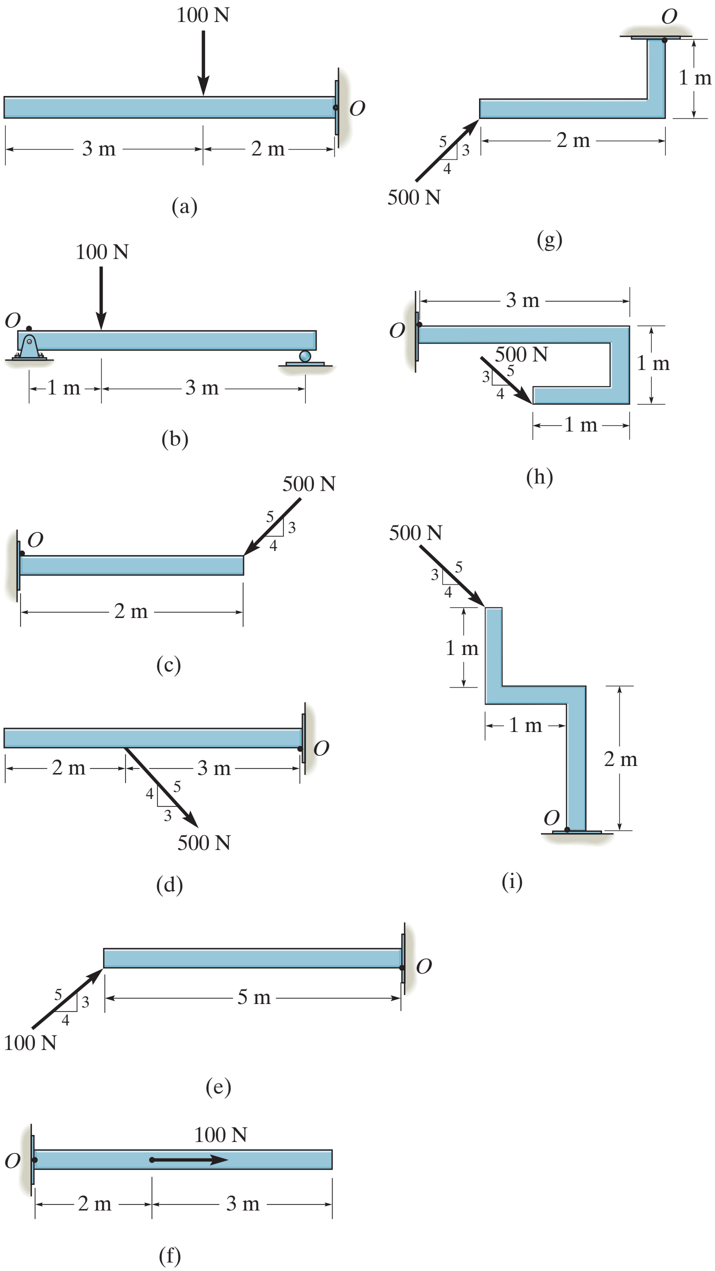
The moment is therefore

$$\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 0.4 & -0.2 & 0 \\ 200.0 & -346.4 & 0 \end{vmatrix}$$
$$= 0\mathbf{i} - 0\mathbf{j} + [0.4(-346.4) - (-0.2)(200.0)]\mathbf{k}$$
$$= \{-98.6\mathbf{k}\} \text{ N}\cdot\text{m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

NOTE: It is seen that the scalar analysis (Solution I) provides a more *convenient method* for analysis than Solution II since the direction of the moment and the moment arm for each component force are easy to establish. Hence, this method is generally recommended for solving problems displayed in two dimensions, whereas a Cartesian vector analysis is generally recommended only for solving three-dimensional problems.

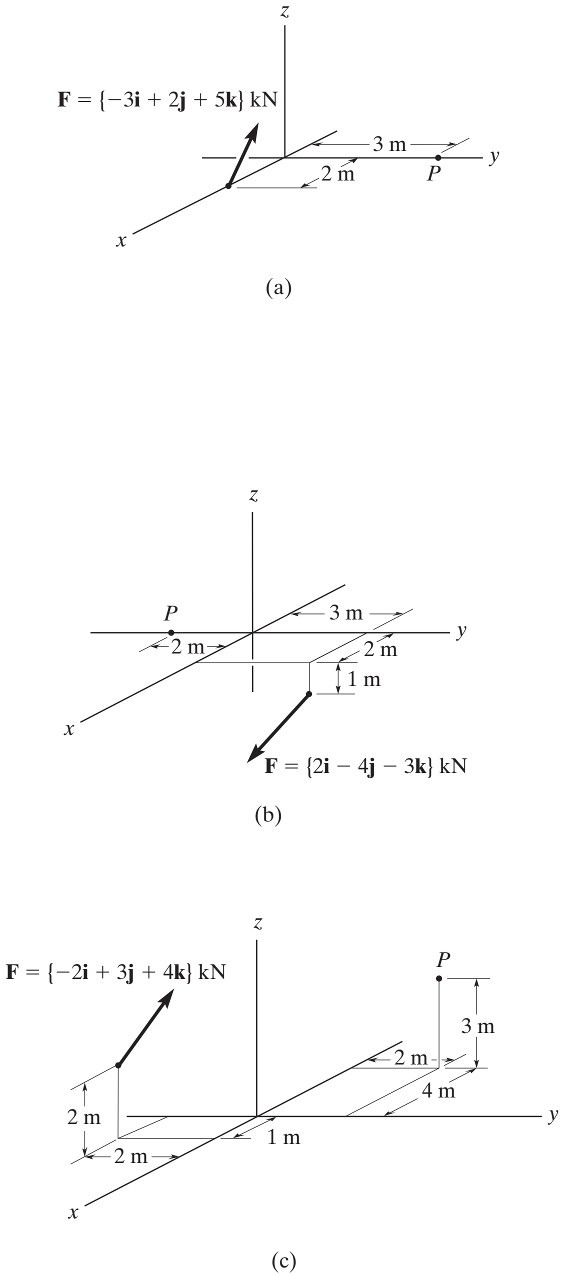
PRELIMINARY PROBLEMS

P4–1. In each case, determine the moment of the force about point O.



Prob. P4–1

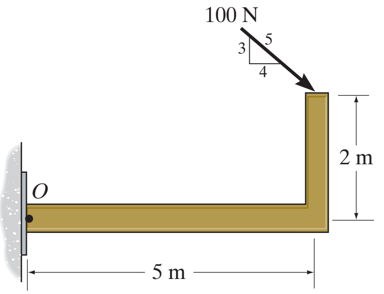
P4–2. In each case, set up the determinant to find the moment of the force about point P.



Prob. P4–2

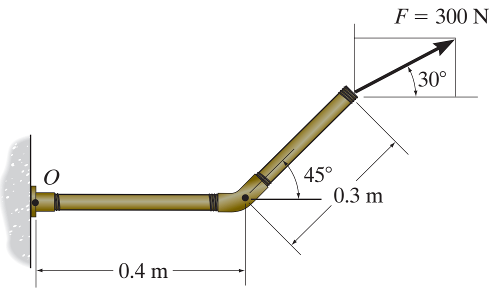
FUNDAMENTAL PROBLEMS

F4–1. Determine the moment of the force about point O.



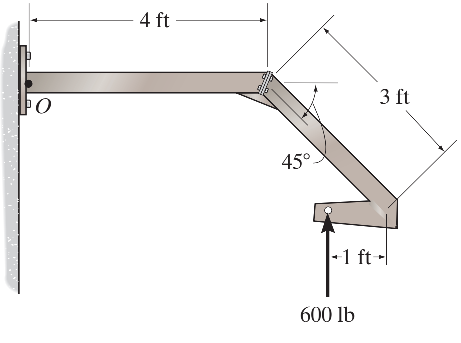
Prob. F4–1

F4–2. Determine the moment of the force about point O.



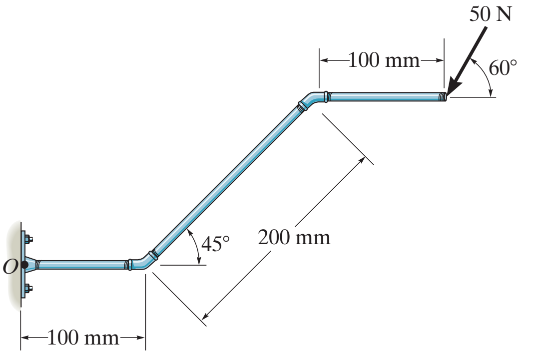
Prob. F4–2

F4–3. Determine the moment of the force about point O.



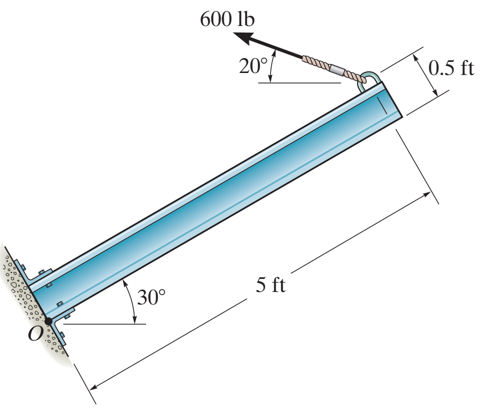
Prob. F4–3

F4–4. Determine the moment of the force about point O. Neglect the thickness of the member.



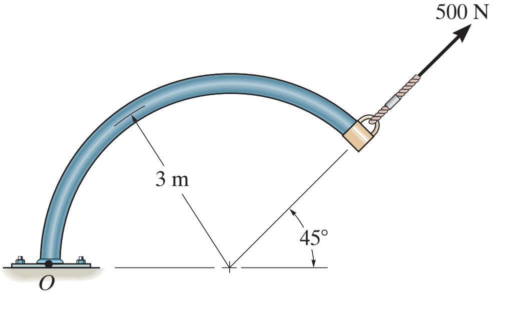
Prob. F4–4

F4–5. Determine the moment of the force about point O.



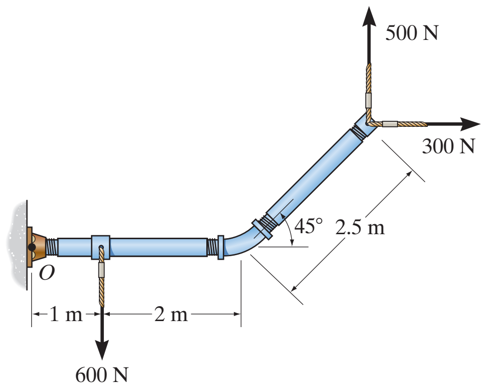
Prob. F4–5

F4–6. Determine the moment of the force about point O.



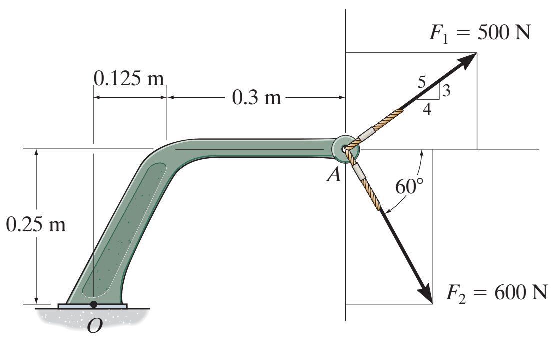
Prob. F4–6

F4–7. Determine the resultant moment produced by the forces about point O.



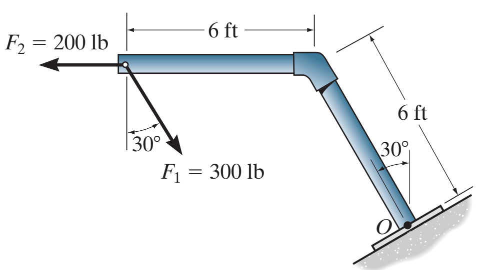
Prob. F4–7

F4–8. Determine the resultant moment produced by the forces about point O.



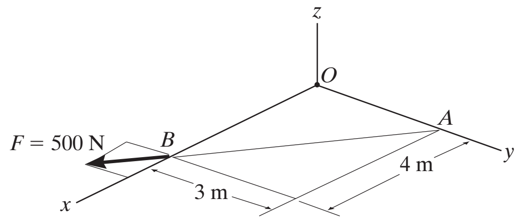
Prob. F4–8

F4–9. Determine the resultant moment produced by the forces about point O.



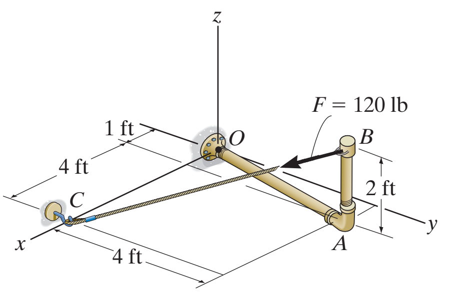
Prob. F4–9

F4–10. Determine the moment of force **F** about point O. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



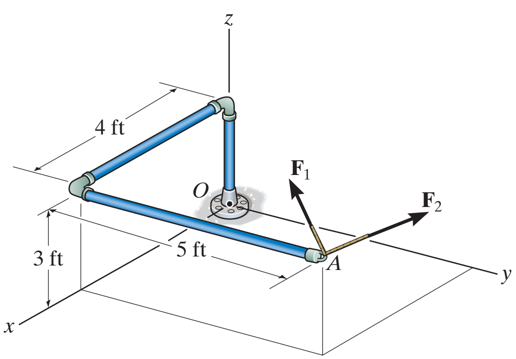
Prob. F4–10

F4–11. Determine the moment of force **F** about point O. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



Prob. F4–11

F4–12. If the two forces $\mathbf{F}_1 = \{100\mathbf{i} - 120\mathbf{j} + 75\mathbf{k}\}$ lb and $\mathbf{F}_2 = \{-200\mathbf{i} + 250\mathbf{j} + 100\mathbf{k}\}$ lb act at A, determine the resultant moment produced by these forces about point O. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



Prob. F4–12

PROBLEMS

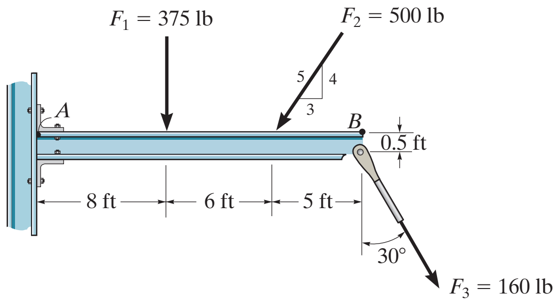
4–1. If **A, B**, and **D** are given vectors, prove the distributive law for the vector cross product, i.e., $\mathbf{A} \times (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{D}) = (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}) + (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{D})$.

4–2. Prove the triple scalar product identity $\mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C}) = (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}) \cdot \mathbf{C}$.

4–3. Given the three nonzero vectors **A, B**, and **C**, show that if $\mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C}) = 0$, the three vectors *must* lie in the same plane.

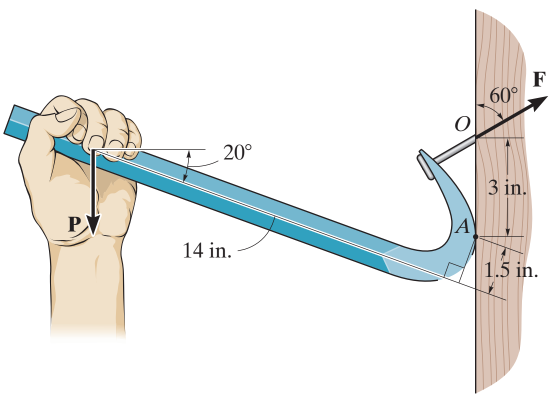
***4–4.** Determine the moment about point A of each of the three forces acting on the beam.

4–5. Determine the moment about point B of each of the three forces acting on the beam.



Probs. 4–4/5

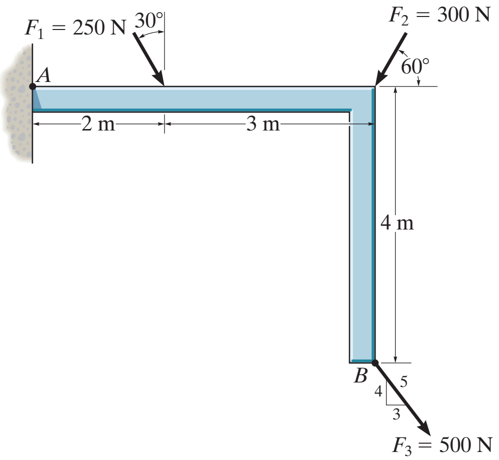
4–6. The crowbar is subjected to a vertical force of $P = 25$ lb at the grip, whereas it takes a force of $F = 155$ lb at the claw to pull the nail out. Find the moment of each force about point A and determine if **P** is sufficient to pull out the nail. The crowbar contacts the board at point A.



Prob. 4–6

4–7. Determine the moment of each of the three forces about point A.

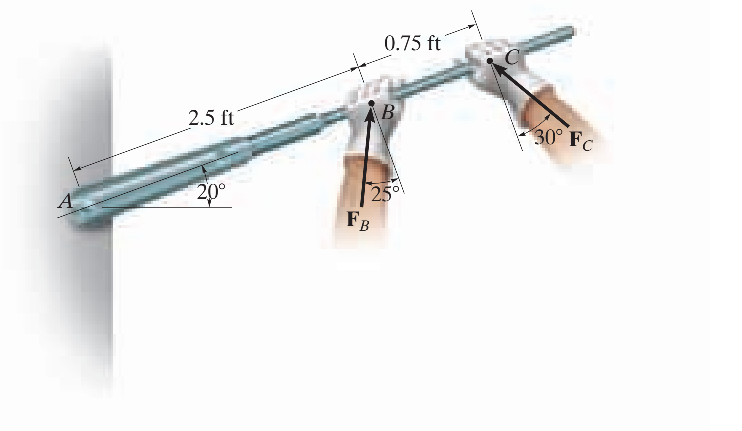
***4–8.** Determine the moment of each of the three forces about point B.



Probs. 4–7/8

4–9. Determine the moment of each force about the bolt located at A. Take $F_B = 40$ lb, $F_C = 50$ lb.

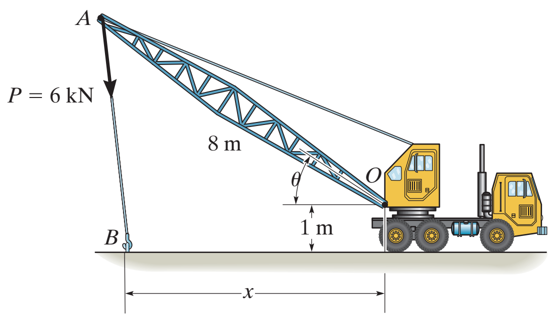
4–10. If $F_B = 30$ lb and $F_C = 45$ lb, determine the resultant moment about the bolt located at A.



Probs. 4–9/10

4–11. The towline exerts a force of $P = 6$ kN at the end of the 8-m-long crane boom. If $\theta = 30°$, determine the placement x of the hook at B so that this force creates a maximum moment about point O. What is this moment?

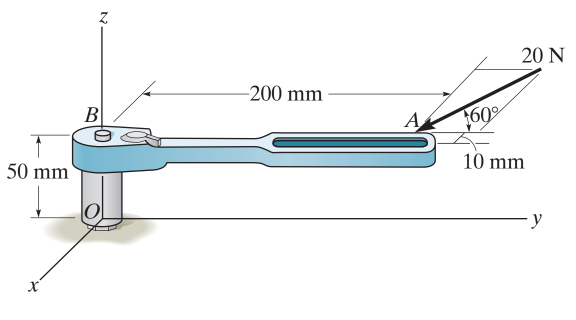
***4–12.** The towline exerts a force of $P = 6$ kN at the end of the 8-m-long crane boom. If $x = 10$ m, determine the position θ of the boom so that this force creates a maximum moment about point O. What is this moment?



Probs. 4–11/12

4–13. The 20-N horizontal force acts on the handle of the socket wrench. What is the moment of this force about point B. Specify the coordinate direction angles α, β, γ of the moment axis.

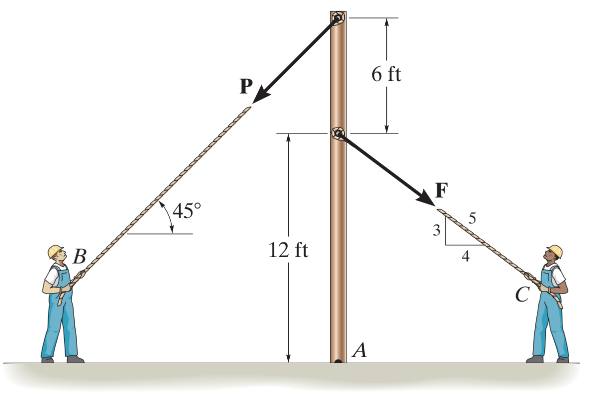
4–14. The 20-N horizontal force acts on the handle of the socket wrench. Determine the moment of this force about point O. Specify the coordinate direction angles α, β, γ of the moment axis.



Probs. 4–13/14

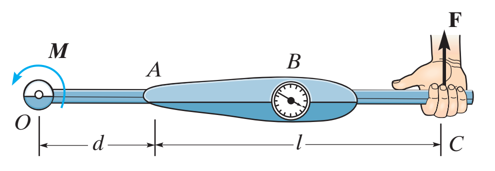
4–15. Two men exert forces of $F = 80$ lb and $P = 50$ lb on the ropes. Determine the moment of each force about A. Which way will the pole rotate, clockwise or counterclockwise?

***4–16.** If the man at B exerts a force of $P = 30$ lb on his rope, determine the magnitude of the force **F** the man at C must exert to prevent the pole from rotating, i.e., so the resultant moment about A of both forces is zero.



Probs. 4–15/16

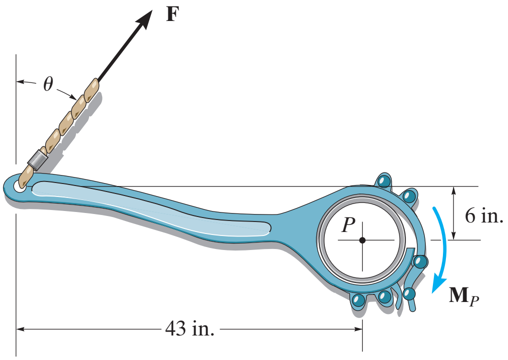
4–17. The torque wrench ABC is used to measure the moment or torque applied to a bolt when the bolt is located at A and a force is applied to the handle at C. The mechanic reads the torque on the scale at B. If an extension AO of length d is used on the wrench, determine the required scale reading if the desired torque on the bolt at O is to be M.



Prob. 4–17

4–18. The tongs are used to grip the ends of the drilling pipe P. Determine the torque (moment) M_P that the applied force $F = 150$ lb exerts on the pipe about point P as a function of θ. Plot this moment M_P versus θ for $0 \leq \theta \leq 90°$.

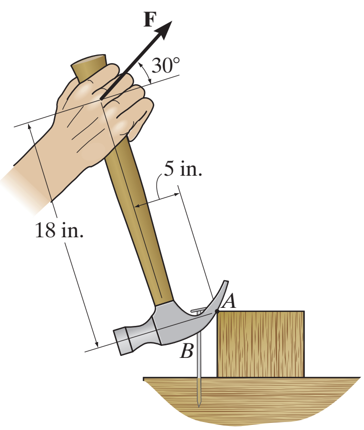
4–19. The tongs are used to grip the ends of the drilling pipe P. If a torque (moment) of $M_P = 800$ lb·ft is needed at P to turn the pipe, determine the cable force F that must be applied to the tongs. Set $\theta = 30°$.



Probs. 4–18/19

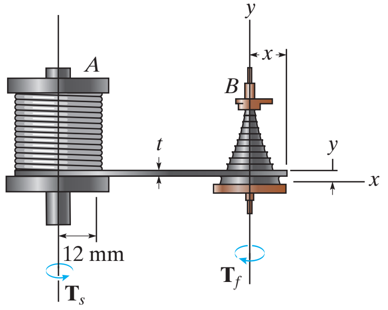
***4–20.** The handle of the hammer is subjected to the force of $F = 20$ lb. Determine the moment of this force about the point A.

4–21. In order to pull out the nail at B, the force **F** exerted on the handle of the hammer must produce a clockwise moment of 500 lb·in. about point A. Determine the required magnitude of force **F**.



Probs. 4–20/21

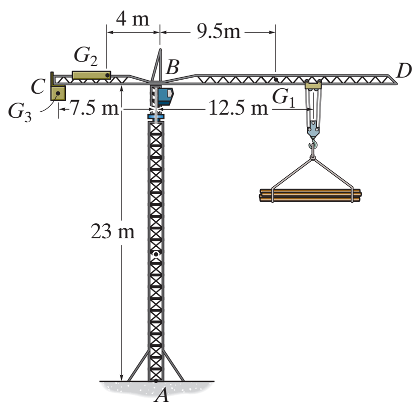
4–22. Old clocks were constructed using a *fusee* B to drive the gears and watch hands. The purpose of the fusee is to increase the leverage developed by the mainspring A as it uncoils and thereby loses some of its tension. The mainspring can develop a torque (moment) $T_s = k\theta$, where $k = 0.015$ N·m/rad is the torsional stiffness and θ is the angle of twist of the spring in radians. If the torque T_f developed by the fusee is to remain constant as the mainspring winds down, and $x = 10$ mm when $\theta = 4$ rad, determine the required radius of the fusee when $\theta = 3$ rad.



Prob. 4–22

4–23. The tower crane is used to hoist the 2-Mg load upward at constant velocity. The 1.5-Mg jib BD, 0.5-Mg jib BC, and 6-Mg counterweight C have centers of mass at G_1, G_2, and G_3, respectively. Determine the resultant moment produced by the load and the weights of the tower crane jibs about point A and about point B.

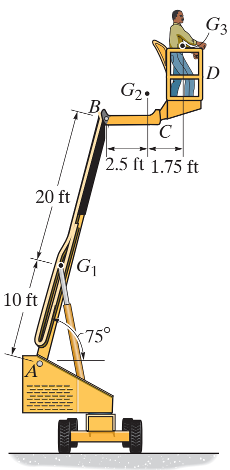
***4–24.** The tower crane is used to hoist a 2-Mg load upward at constant velocity. The 1.5-Mg jib BD and 0.5-Mg jib BC have centers of mass at G_1 and G_2, respectively. Determine the required mass of the counterweight C so that the resultant moment produced by the load and the weight of the tower crane jibs about point A is zero. The center of mass for the counterweight is located at G_3.



Probs. 4–23/24

4–25. If the 1500-lb boom AB, the 200-lb cage BCD, and the 175-lb man have centers of gravity located at points G_1, G_2, and G_3, respectively, determine the resultant moment produced by each weight about point A.

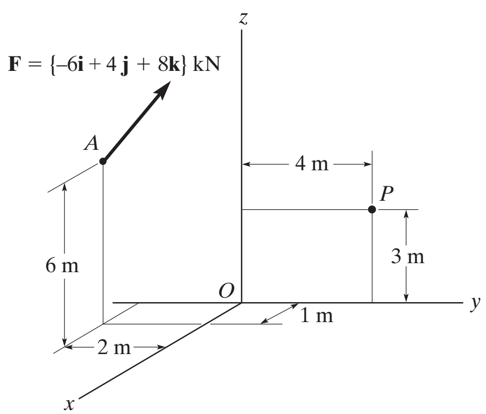
4–26. If the 1500-lb boom AB, the 200-lb cage BCD, and the 175-lb man have centers of gravity located at points G_1, G_2, and G_3, respectively, determine the resultant moment produced by all the weights about point A.



Probs. 4–25/26

4–27. Determine the moment of the force **F** about point O. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.

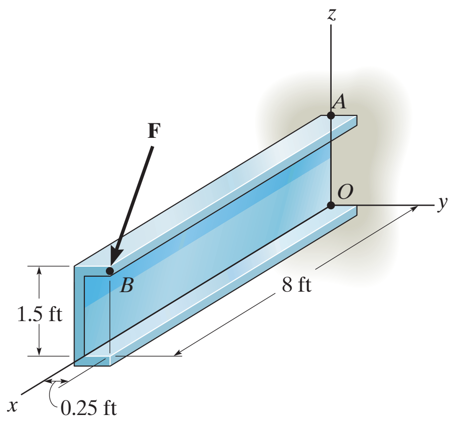
***4–28.** Determine the moment of the force **F** about point P. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



Probs. 4–27/28

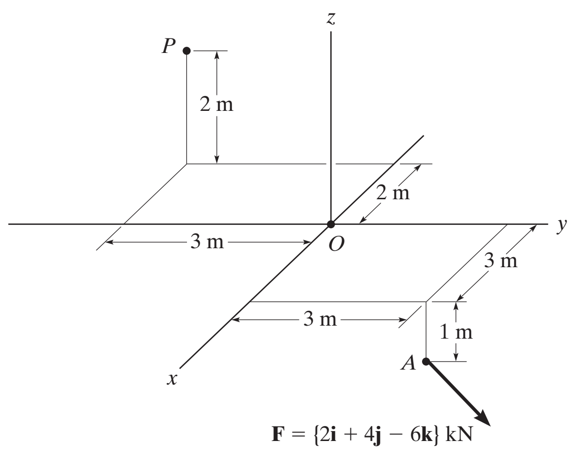
4–29. The force $\mathbf{F} = \{400\mathbf{i} - 100\mathbf{j} - 700\mathbf{k}\}$ lb acts at the end of the beam. Determine the moment of this force about point O.

4–30. The force $\mathbf{F} = \{400\mathbf{i} - 100\mathbf{j} - 700\mathbf{k}\}$ lb acts at the end of the beam. Determine the moment of this force about point A.



Probs. 4–29/30

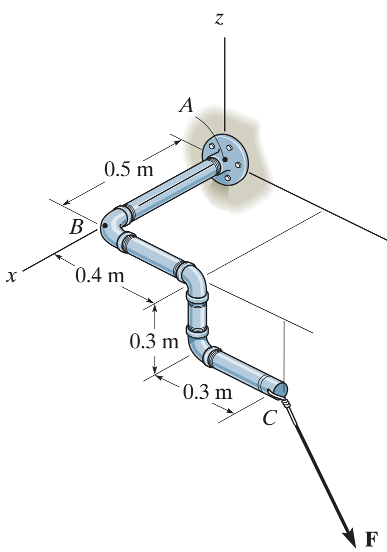
4–31. Determine the moment of the force **F** about point P. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



Prob. 4–31

*4–32. The pipe assembly is subjected to the force of $\mathbf{F} = \{600\mathbf{i} + 800\mathbf{j} - 500\mathbf{k}\}$ N. Determine the moment of this force about point A.

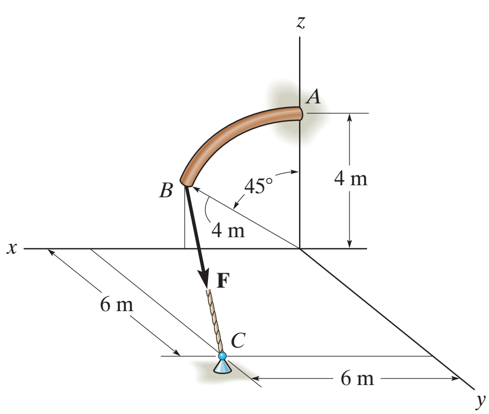
4–33. The pipe assembly is subjected to the force of $\mathbf{F} = \{600\mathbf{i} + 800\mathbf{j} - 500\mathbf{k}\}$ N. Determine the moment of this force about point B.



Probs. 4–32/33

4–34. Determine the moment of the force of $F = 600$ N about point A.

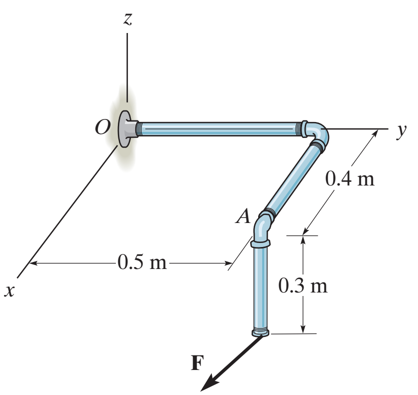
4–35. Determine the smallest force F that must be applied along the rope in order to cause the curved rod, which has a radius of 4 m, to fail at the support A. This requires a moment of $M = 1500\ \text{N} \cdot \text{m}$ to be developed at A.



Probs. 4–34/35

*4–36. Determine the coordinate direction angles α, β, γ of force $\mathbf{F}$, so that the moment of $\mathbf{F}$ about O is zero.

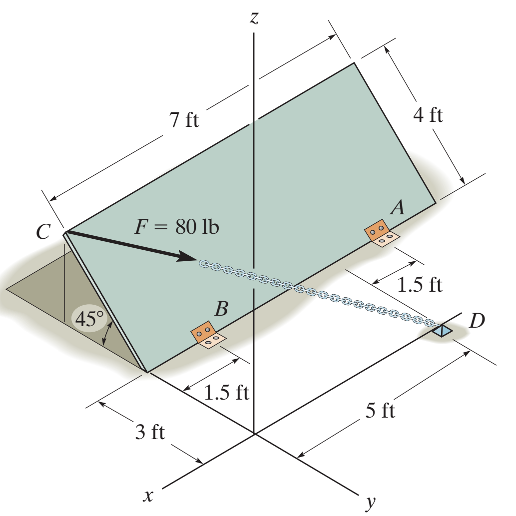
4–37. Determine the moment of force $\mathbf{F}$ about point O. The force has a magnitude of 800 N and coordinate direction angles of $\alpha = 60°$, $\beta = 120°$, $\gamma = 45°$. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



Probs. 4–36/37

4–38. Determine the moment of the force $\mathbf{F}$ about the door hinge at A. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.

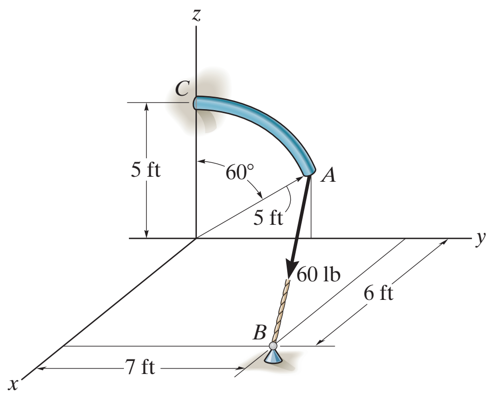
4–39. Determine the moment of the force $\mathbf{F}$ about the door hinge at B. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



Probs. 4–38/39

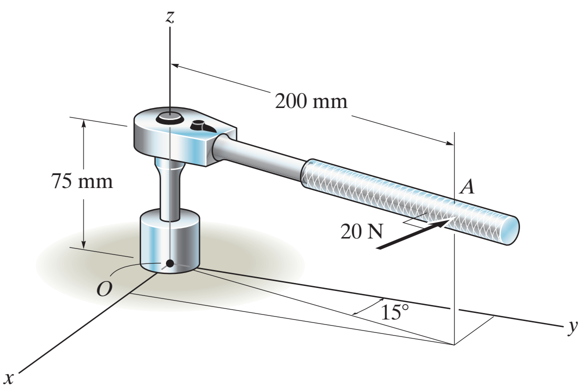
***4–40.** The curved rod has a radius of 5 ft. If a force of 60 lb acts at its end as shown, determine the moment of this force about point C.

4–41. Determine the smallest force F that must be applied along the rope in order to cause the curved rod, which has a radius of 5 ft, to fail at the support C. This requires a moment of $M = 80 \text{ lb} \cdot \text{ft}$ to be developed at C.



Probs. 4–40/41

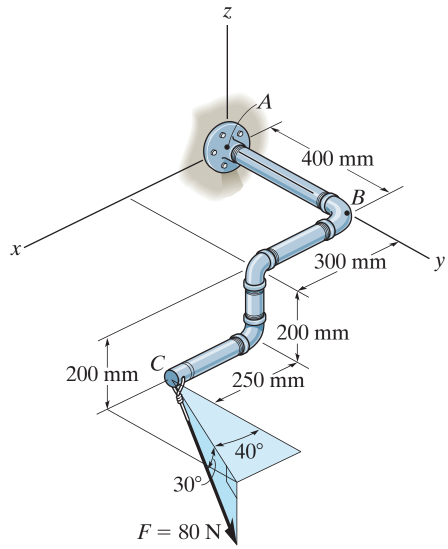
4–42. A 20-N horizontal force is applied perpendicular to the handle of the socket wrench. Determine the magnitude and the coordinate direction angles of the moment created by this force about point O.



Prob. 4–42

4–43. The pipe assembly is subjected to the 80-N force. Determine the moment of this force about point A.

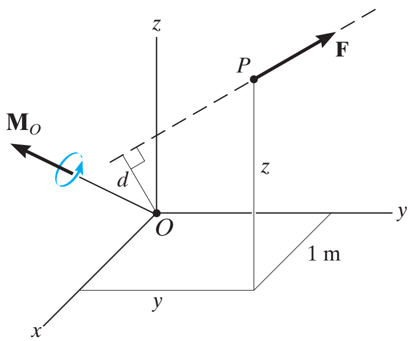
***4–44.** The pipe assembly is subjected to the 80-N force. Determine the moment of this force about point B.



Probs. 4–43/44

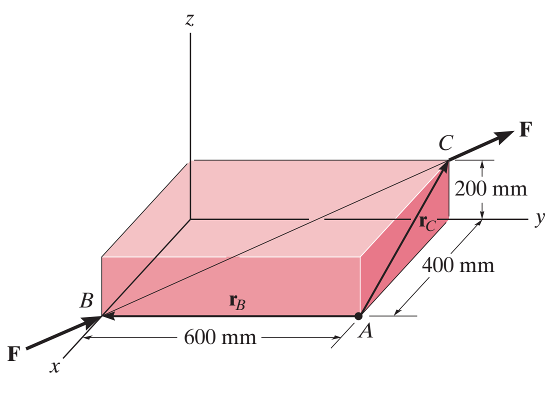
4–45. A force of $\mathbf{F} = \{6\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 1\mathbf{k}\}$ kN produces a moment of $\mathbf{M}_O = \{4\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} - 14\mathbf{k}\}$ kN·m about the origin, point O. If the force acts at a point having an x coordinate of $x = 1$ m, determine the y and z coordinates. *Note*: The figure shows $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{M}_O$ in an arbitrary position.

4–46. The force $\mathbf{F} = \{6\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} + 10\mathbf{k}\}$ N creates a moment about point O of $\mathbf{M}_O = \{-14\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}\}$ N·m. If the force passes through a point having an x coordinate of 1 m, determine the y and z coordinates of the point. Also, realizing that $M_O = Fd$, determine the perpendicular distance d from point O to the line of action of $\mathbf{F}$. *Note*: The figure shows $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{M}_O$ in an arbitrary position.



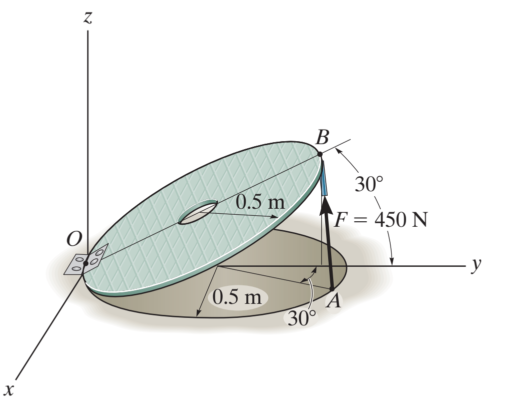
Probs. 4–45/46

4–47. A force **F** having a magnitude of $F = 100$ N acts along the diagonal of the parallelepiped. Determine the moment of **F** about the point A, using $\mathbf{M}_A = \mathbf{r}_B \times \mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{M}_A = \mathbf{r}_C \times \mathbf{F}$.



Prob. 4–47

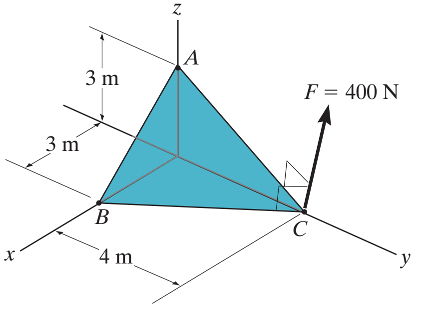
4–50. Strut AB of the 1-m-diameter hatch door exerts a force of 450 N on point B. Determine the moment of this force about point O.



Prob. 4–50

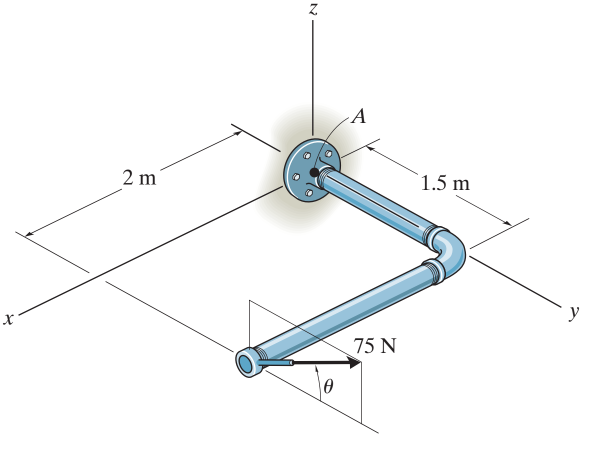
***4–48.** Force **F** acts perpendicular to the inclined plane. Determine the moment produced by **F** about point A. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.

4–49. Force **F** acts perpendicular to the inclined plane. Determine the moment produced by **F** about point B. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



Probs. 4–48/49

4–51. Using a ring collar, the 75-N force can act in the vertical plane at various angles θ. Determine the magnitude of the moment it produces about point A, plot the result of M (ordinate) versus θ (abscissa) for $0° \le \theta \le 180°$, and specify the angles that give the maximum and minimum moment.



Prob. 4–51

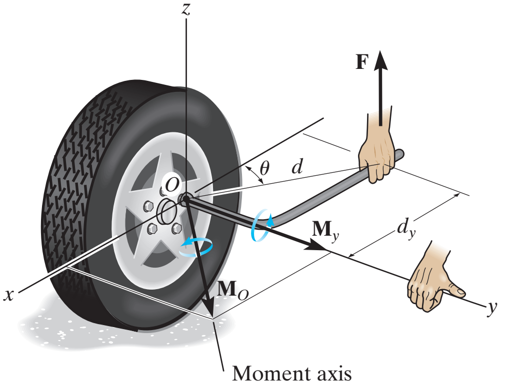
4.5 Moment of a Force about a Specified Axis

Sometimes, the moment produced by a force about a *specified axis* must be determined. For example, suppose the lug nut at O on the car tire in Fig. 4–20*a* needs to be loosened. The force applied to the wrench will create a tendency for the wrench and the nut to rotate about the *moment axis* passing through O; however, the nut can only rotate about the y axis. Therefore, to determine the turning effect, only the y component of the moment is needed, and the total moment produced is not important. To determine this component, we can use either a scalar or vector analysis.

Scalar Analysis. To use a scalar analysis in the case of the lug nut in Fig. 4–20*a*, the moment arm, or perpendicular distance from the axis to the line of action of the force, is $d_y = d\cos\theta$. Thus, the moment of $\mathbf{F}$ about the y axis is $M_y = F\,d_y = F(d\cos\theta)$. According to the right-hand rule, $\mathbf{M}_y$ is directed along the positive y axis as shown in the figure. In general, for any axis a, the moment is

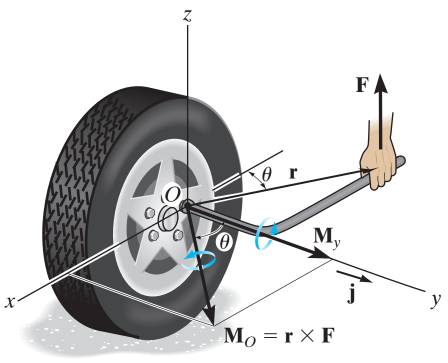
$$\boxed{M_a = Fd_a} \qquad (4\text{–}10)$$

(© Russell C. Hibbeler)



(a)

Fig. 4–20



(b)

Fig. 4–20 (cont.)

Vector Analysis. To find the moment of force **F** in Fig. 4–20*b* about the *y* axis using a vector analysis, we must first determine the moment of the force about *any point O* on the *y* axis by applying Eq. 4–7, $\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$. The component $\mathbf{M}_y$ along the *y* axis is the *projection* of $\mathbf{M}_O$ onto the *y* axis. It can be found using the *dot product* discussed in Chapter 2, so that $M_y = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{j} \cdot (\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F})$, where **j** is the unit vector for the *y* axis.

We can generalize this approach by letting $\mathbf{u}_a$ be the unit vector that specifies the direction of the *a* axis shown in Fig. 4–21. Then the moment of **F** about a point *O* on the axis is $\mathbf{M}_O = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$, and the projection of this moment onto the *a* axis is $M_a = \mathbf{u}_a \cdot (\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F})$. This combination is referred to as the *scalar triple product*. If the vectors are written in Cartesian form, we have

$$M_a = [u_{a_x}\mathbf{i} + u_{a_y}\mathbf{j} + u_{a_z}\mathbf{k}] \cdot \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ r_x & r_y & r_z \\ F_x & F_y & F_z \end{vmatrix}$$
$$= u_{a_x}(r_yF_z - r_zF_y) - u_{a_y}(r_xF_z - r_zF_x) + u_{a_z}(r_xF_y - r_yF_x)$$

This result can also be written in the form of a determinant, making it easier to memorize.*

$$\boxed{M_a = \mathbf{u}_a \cdot (\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}) = \begin{vmatrix} u_{a_x} & u_{a_y} & u_{a_z} \\ r_x & r_y & r_z \\ F_x & F_y & F_z \end{vmatrix}} \qquad (4\text{–}11)$$

where

$u_{a_x}, u_{a_y}, u_{a_z}$	represent the *x, y, z* components of the unit vector defining the direction of the *a* axis
r_x, r_y, r_z	represent the *x, y, z* components of the position vector extended from *any point O* on the *a* axis to *any point A* on the line of action of the force
F_x, F_y, F_z	represent the *x, y, z* components of the force vector.

When M_a is evaluated from Eq. 4–11, it will yield a positive or negative scalar. The sign of this scalar indicates the sense of direction of $\mathbf{M}_a$ along the *a* axis. If it is positive, then $\mathbf{M}_a$ will have the same sense as $\mathbf{u}_a$, whereas if it is negative, then $\mathbf{M}_a$ will act opposite to $\mathbf{u}_a$. Once the *a* axis is established, point your right-hand thumb in the direction of $\mathbf{M}_a$, and the curl of your fingers will indicate the sense of twist about the axis, Fig. 4–21.

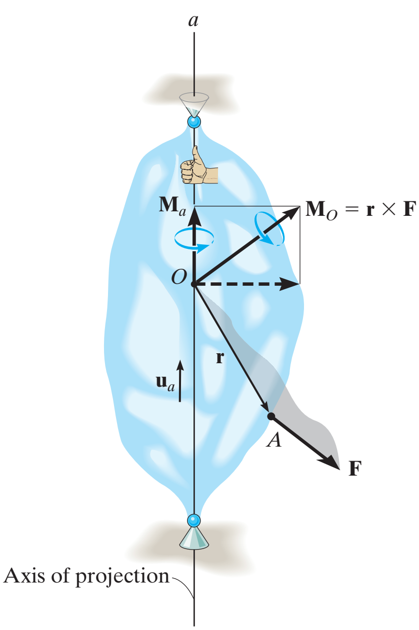


Fig. 4–21

*Take a minute to expand this determinant, to show that it will yield the above result.

Provided M_a is determined, we can then express $\mathbf{M}_a$ as a Cartesian vector, namely,

$$\mathbf{M}_a = M_a \mathbf{u}_a \tag{4–12}$$

The examples which follow illustrate numerical applications of the above concepts.

Important Points

- The moment of a force about a specified axis can be determined provided the perpendicular distance d_a from the force line of action to the axis can be determined. $M_a = Fd_a$.
- If vector analysis is used, $M_a = \mathbf{u}_a \cdot (\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F})$, where $\mathbf{u}_a$ defines the direction of the axis and $\mathbf{r}$ is extended from *any point* on the axis to *any point* on the line of action of the force.
- If M_a is calculated as a negative scalar, then the sense of direction of $\mathbf{M}_a$ is opposite to $\mathbf{u}_a$.
- The moment $\mathbf{M}_a$ expressed as a Cartesian vector is determined from $\mathbf{M}_a = M_a \mathbf{u}_a$.

EXAMPLE 4.7

Determine the resultant moment of the three forces in Fig. 4–22 about the x axis, the y axis, and the z axis.

SOLUTION

A force that is *parallel* to a coordinate axis or has a line of action that passes through the axis does *not* produce any moment or tendency for turning about that axis. Therefore, defining the positive direction of the moment of a force according to the right-hand rule, as shown in the figure, we have

$$M_x = (60 \text{ lb})(2 \text{ ft}) + (50 \text{ lb})(2 \text{ ft}) + 0 = 220 \text{ lb} \cdot \text{ft} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$M_y = 0 - (50 \text{ lb})(3 \text{ ft}) - (40 \text{ lb})(2 \text{ ft}) = -230 \text{ lb} \cdot \text{ft} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$M_z = 0 + 0 - (40 \text{ lb})(2 \text{ ft}) = -80 \text{ lb} \cdot \text{ft} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

The negative signs indicate that $\mathbf{M}_y$ and $\mathbf{M}_z$ act in the $-y$ and $-z$ directions, respectively.

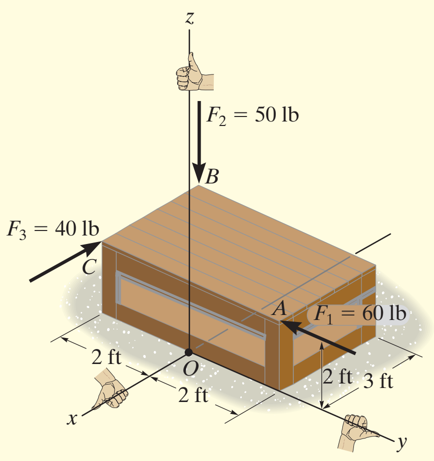
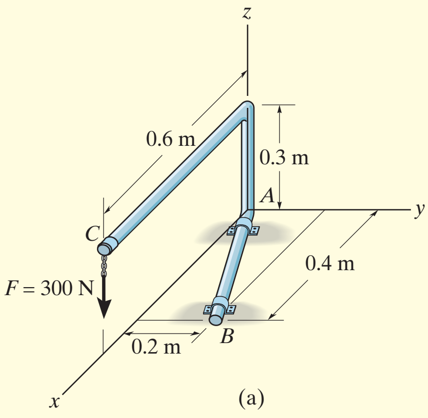
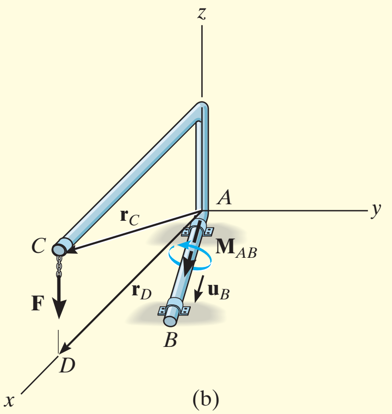


Fig. 4–22

EXAMPLE 4.8



(a)



(b)

Fig. 4–23

Determine the moment $\mathbf{M}_{AB}$ produced by the force $\mathbf{F}$ in Fig. 4–23*a*, which tends to rotate the rod about the AB axis.

SOLUTION

A vector analysis using $M_{AB} = \mathbf{u}_B \cdot (\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F})$ will be considered for the solution rather than trying to find the moment arm or perpendicular distance from the line of action of $\mathbf{F}$ to the AB axis. Each of the terms in the equation will now be identified.

Unit vector $\mathbf{u}_B$ defines the direction of the AB axis of the rod, Fig. 4–23*b*, where

$$\mathbf{u}_B = \frac{\mathbf{r}_B}{r_B} = \frac{\{0.4\mathbf{i} + 0.2\mathbf{j}\}\text{ m}}{\sqrt{(0.4\text{ m})^2 + (0.2\text{ m})^2}} = 0.8944\mathbf{i} + 0.4472\mathbf{j}$$

Vector $\mathbf{r}$ is directed from *any point* on the AB axis to *any point* on the line of action of the force. For example, position vectors $\mathbf{r}_C$ and $\mathbf{r}_D$ are suitable, Fig. 4–23*b*. (Although not shown, $\mathbf{r}_{BC}$ or $\mathbf{r}_{BD}$ can also be used.) For simplicity, we choose $\mathbf{r}_D$, where

$$\mathbf{r}_D = \{0.6\mathbf{i}\}\text{ m}$$

The force is

$$\mathbf{F} = \{-300\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N}$$

Substituting these vectors into the determinant form and expanding, we have

$$M_{AB} = \mathbf{u}_B \cdot (\mathbf{r}_D \times \mathbf{F}) = \begin{vmatrix} 0.8944 & 0.4472 & 0 \\ 0.6 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -300 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 0.8944[0(-300) - 0(0)] - 0.4472[0.6(-300) - 0(0)] + 0[0.6(0) - 0(0)]$$

$$= 80.50\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$$

This positive result indicates that the sense of $\mathbf{M}_{AB}$ is in the same direction as $\mathbf{u}_B$.

Expressing $\mathbf{M}_{AB}$ in Fig. 4–23*b* as a Cartesian vector yields

$$\mathbf{M}_{AB} = M_{AB}\mathbf{u}_B = (80.50\text{ N}\cdot\text{m})(0.8944\mathbf{i} + 0.4472\mathbf{j})$$

$$= \{72.0\mathbf{i} + 36.0\mathbf{j}\}\text{ N}\cdot\text{m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

NOTE: If axis AB is defined using a unit vector directed from B toward A, then in the above formulation $-\mathbf{u}_B$ would have to be used. This would lead to $M_{AB} = -80.50\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$. Consequently, $\mathbf{M}_{AB} = M_{AB}(-\mathbf{u}_B)$, and the same result would be obtained.

EXAMPLE 4.9

Determine the magnitude of the moment of force **F** about segment *OA* of the pipe assembly in Fig. 4–24*a*.

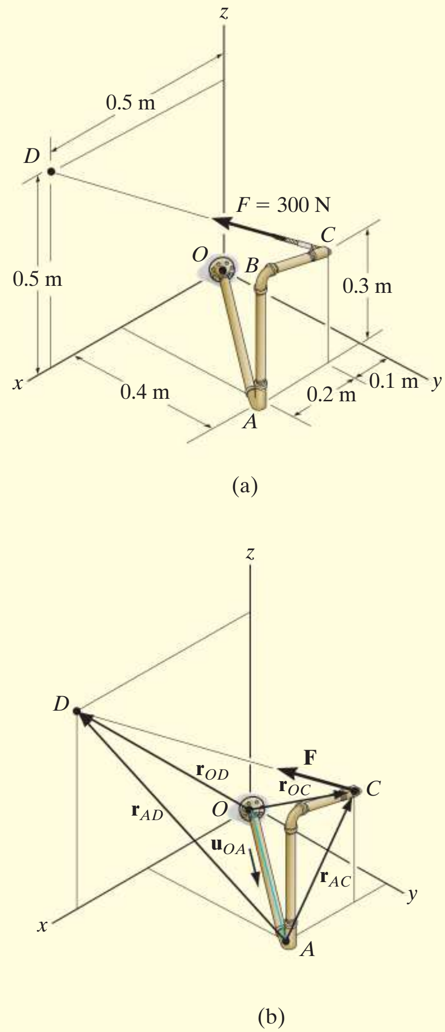


Fig. 4–24

SOLUTION

The moment of **F** about the *OA* axis is determined from $M_{OA} = \mathbf{u}_{OA} \cdot (\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F})$, where **r** is a position vector extending from any point on the *OA* axis to any point on the line of action of **F**. As indicated in Fig. 4–24*b*, either $\mathbf{r}_{OD}$, $\mathbf{r}_{OC}$, $\mathbf{r}_{AD}$, or $\mathbf{r}_{AC}$ can be used; however, $\mathbf{r}_{OD}$ will be considered since it will simplify the calculation.

The unit vector $\mathbf{u}_{OA}$, which specifies the direction of the *OA* axis, is

$$\mathbf{u}_{OA} = \frac{\mathbf{r}_{OA}}{r_{OA}} = \frac{\{0.3\mathbf{i} + 0.4\mathbf{j}\}\text{ m}}{\sqrt{(0.3\text{ m})^2 + (0.4\text{ m})^2}} = 0.6\mathbf{i} + 0.8\mathbf{j}$$

and the position vector $\mathbf{r}_{OD}$ is

$$\mathbf{r}_{OD} = \{0.5\mathbf{i} + 0.5\mathbf{k}\}\text{ m}$$

The force **F** expressed as a Cartesian vector is

$$\mathbf{F} = F\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}_{CD}}{r_{CD}}\right)$$

$$= (300\text{ N})\left[\frac{\{0.4\mathbf{i} - 0.4\mathbf{j} + 0.2\mathbf{k}\}\text{ m}}{\sqrt{(0.4\text{ m})^2 + (-0.4\text{ m})^2 + (0.2\text{ m})^2}}\right]$$

$$= \{200\mathbf{i} - 200\mathbf{j} + 100\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N}$$

Therefore,

$$M_{OA} = \mathbf{u}_{OA} \cdot (\mathbf{r}_{OD} \times \mathbf{F})$$

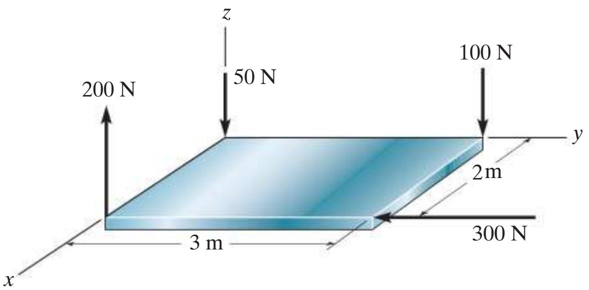
$$= \begin{vmatrix} 0.6 & 0.8 & 0 \\ 0.5 & 0 & 0.5 \\ 200 & -200 & 100 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 0.6[0(100) - (0.5)(-200)] - 0.8[0.5(100) - (0.5)(200)] + 0$$

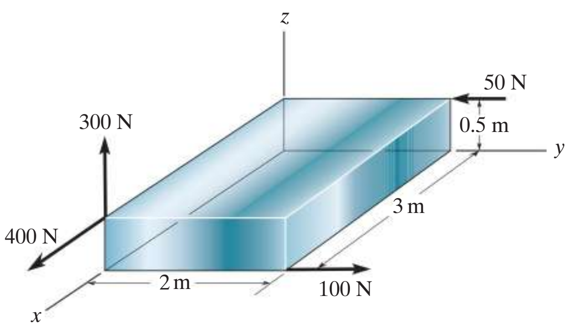
$$= 100\text{ N} \cdot \text{m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

PRELIMINARY PROBLEMS

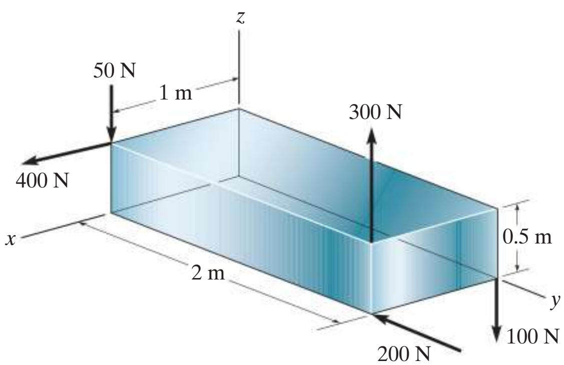
P4–3. In each case, determine the resultant moment of the forces acting about the x, y, and z axes.



(a)



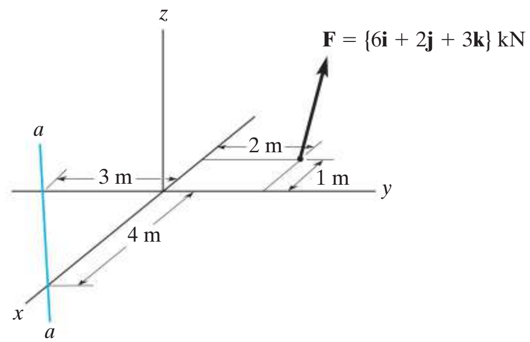
(b)



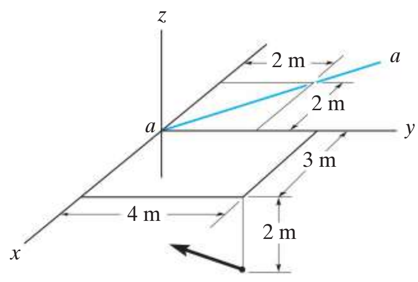
(c)

Prob. P4–3

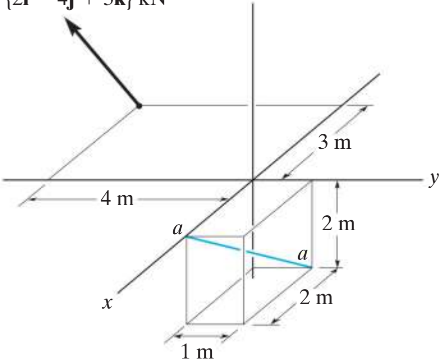
P4–4. In each case, set up the determinant needed to find the moment of the force about the a–a axes.



(a)



(b)



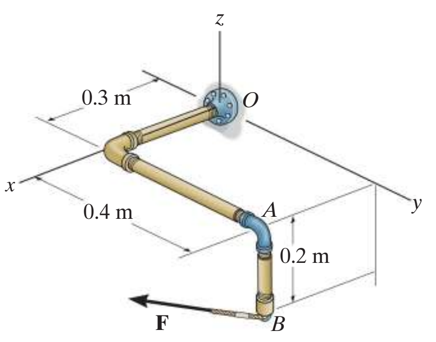
(c)

Prob. P4–4

FUNDAMENTAL PROBLEMS

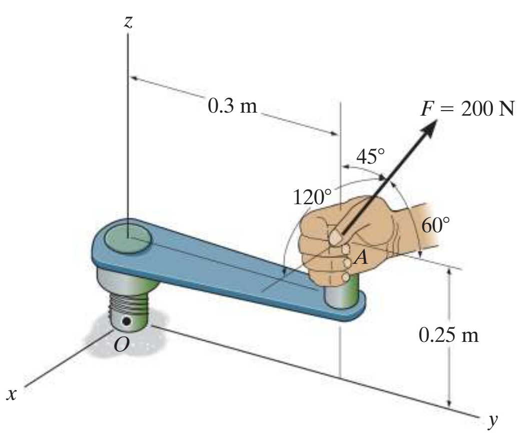
F4–13. Determine the magnitude of the moment of the force $\mathbf{F} = \{300\mathbf{i} - 200\mathbf{j} + 150\mathbf{k}\}$ N about the x axis.

F4–14. Determine the magnitude of the moment of the force $\mathbf{F} = \{300\mathbf{i} - 200\mathbf{j} + 150\mathbf{k}\}$ N about the OA axis.



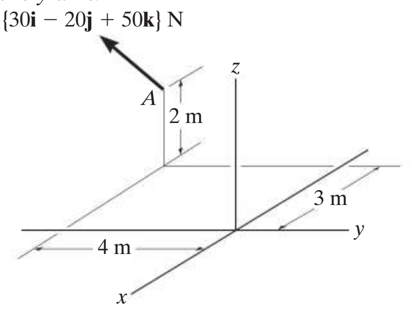
Probs. F4–13/14

F4–15. Determine the magnitude of the moment of the 200-N force about the x axis. Solve the problem using both a scalar and a vector analysis.



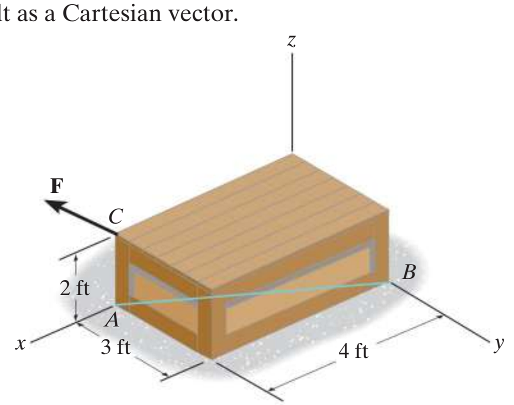
Prob. F4–15

F4–16. Determine the magnitude of the moment of the force about the y axis.



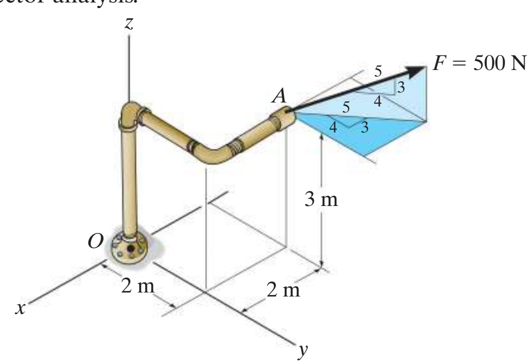
Prob. F4–16

F4–17. Determine the moment of the force $\mathbf{F} = \{50\mathbf{i} - 40\mathbf{j} + 20\mathbf{k}\}$ lb about the AB axis. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



Prob. F4–17

F4–18. Determine the moment of force $\mathbf{F}$ about the x, the y, and the z axes. Solve the problem using both a scalar and a vector analysis.

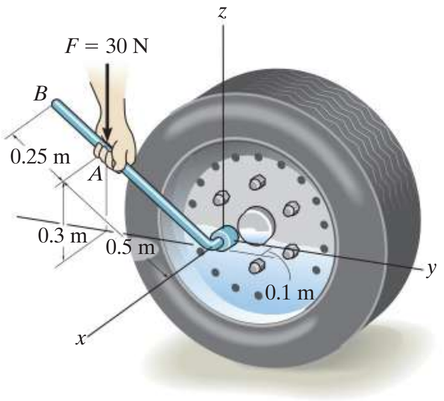


Prob. F4–18

PROBLEMS

*4–52. The lug nut on the wheel of the automobile is to be removed using the wrench and applying the vertical force of $F = 30$ N at A. Determine if this force is adequate, provided 14 N·m of torque about the x axis is initially required to turn the nut. If the 30-N force can be applied at A in any other direction, will it be possible to turn the nut?

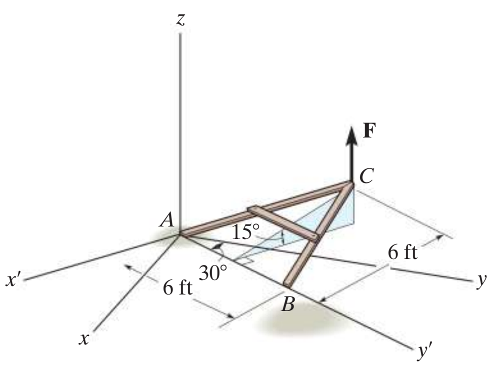
4–53. Solve Prob. 4–52 if the cheater pipe AB is slipped over the handle of the wrench and the 30-N force can be applied at any point and in any direction on the assembly.



Probs. 4–52/53

4–54. The A-frame is being hoisted into an upright position by the vertical force of $F = 80$ lb. Determine the moment of this force about the y' axis passing through points A and B when the frame is in the position shown.

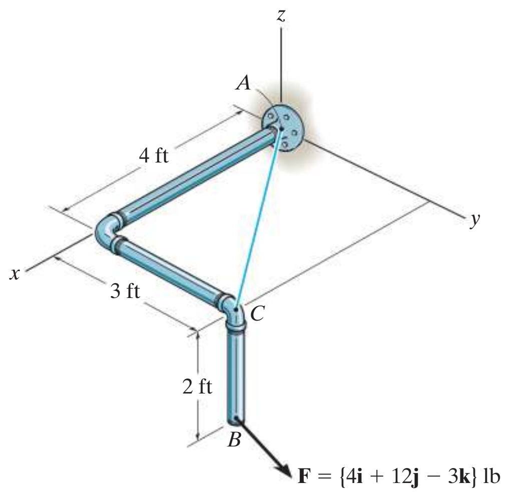
4–55. The A-frame is being hoisted into an upright position by the vertical force of $F = 80$ lb. Determine the moment of this force about the x axis when the frame is in the position shown.



Probs. 4–54/55

*4–56. Determine the magnitude of the moments of the force **F** about the x, y, and z axes. Solve the problem (a) using a Cartesian vector approach and (b) using a scalar approach.

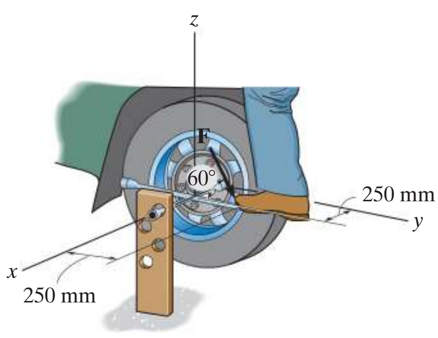
4–57. Determine the moment of this force **F** about an axis extending between A and C. Express the result as a Cartesian vector.



Probs. 4–56/57

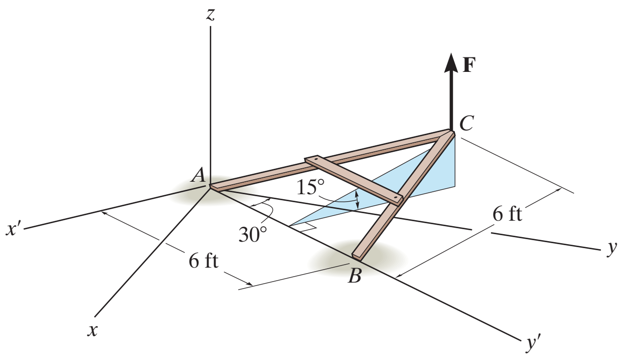
4–58. The board is used to hold the end of a four-way lug wrench in the position shown when the man applies a force of $F = 100$ N. Determine the magnitude of the moment produced by this force about the x axis. Force **F** lies in a vertical plane.

4–59. The board is used to hold the end of a four-way lug wrench in position. If a torque of 30 N·m about the x axis is required to tighten the nut, determine the required magnitude of the force **F** that the man's foot must apply on the end of the wrench in order to turn it. Force **F** lies in a vertical plane.



Probs. 4–58/59

***4–60.** The A-frame is being hoisted into an upright position by the vertical force of $F = 80$ lb. Determine the moment of this force about the y axis when the frame is in the position shown.

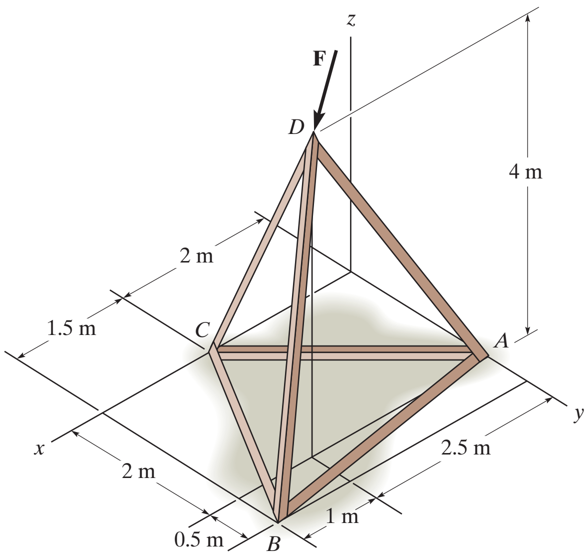


Prob. 4–60

4–61. Determine the magnitude of the moment of the force $\mathbf{F} = \{50\mathbf{i} - 20\mathbf{j} - 80\mathbf{k}\}$ N about the base line AB of the tripod.

4–62. Determine the magnitude of the moment of the force $\mathbf{F} = \{50\mathbf{i} - 20\mathbf{j} - 80\mathbf{k}\}$ N about the base line BC of the tripod.

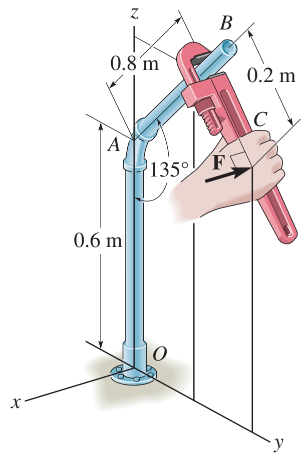
4–63. Determine the magnitude of the moment of the force $\mathbf{F} = \{50\mathbf{i} - 20\mathbf{j} - 80\mathbf{k}\}$ N about the base line CA of the tripod.



Probs. 4–61/62/63

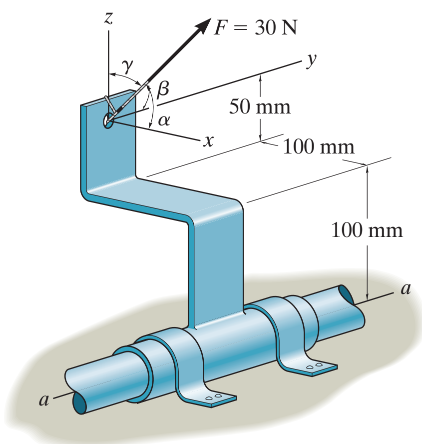
***4–64.** A horizontal force of $\mathbf{F} = \{-50\mathbf{i}\}$ N is applied perpendicular to the handle of the pipe wrench. Determine the moment that this force exerts along the axis OA (z axis) of the pipe assembly. Both the wrench and pipe assembly, $OABC$, lie in the y-z plane. *Suggestion:* Use a scalar analysis.

4–65. Determine the magnitude of the horizontal force $\mathbf{F} = -F\mathbf{i}$ acting on the handle of the wrench so that this force produces a component of the moment along the OA axis (z axis) of the pipe assembly of $\mathbf{M}_z = \{4\mathbf{k}\}$ N·m. Both the wrench and the pipe assembly, $OABC$, lie in the y-z plane. *Suggestion*: Use a scalar analysis.



Probs. 4–64/65

4–66. The force of $F = 30$ N acts on the bracket as shown. Determine the moment of the force about the a–a axis of the pipe if $\alpha = 60°$, $\beta = 60°$, and $\gamma = 45°$. Also, determine the coordinate direction angles of F in order to produce the maximum moment about the a–a axis. What is this moment?



Prob. 4–66

4.6 Moment of a Couple

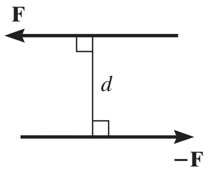


Fig. 4–25

A ***couple*** is defined as two parallel forces that have the same magnitude, but opposite directions, and are separated by a perpendicular distance d, Fig. 4–25. Since the resultant force is zero, the only effect of a couple is to produce an actual rotation, or if no movement is possible, there is a tendency of rotation in a specified direction. For example, imagine that you are driving a car with both hands on the steering wheel and you are making a turn. One hand will push up on the wheel while the other hand pulls down, which causes the steering wheel to rotate.

The moment produced by a couple is called a ***couple moment***. We can determine its value by finding the sum of the moments of both couple forces about *any* arbitrary point. For example, in Fig. 4–26, position vectors $\mathbf{r}_A$ and $\mathbf{r}_B$ are directed from point O to points A and B lying on the line of action of $-\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{F}$. The couple moment determined about O is therefore

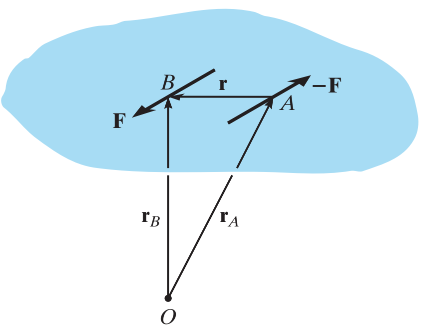


Fig. 4–26

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{r}_B \times \mathbf{F} + \mathbf{r}_A \times -\mathbf{F} = (\mathbf{r}_B - \mathbf{r}_A) \times \mathbf{F}$$

However $\mathbf{r}_B = \mathbf{r}_A + \mathbf{r}$ or $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}_B - \mathbf{r}_A$, so that

$$\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} \tag{4–13}$$

This result indicates that a couple moment is a ***free vector***, i.e., it can act at *any point* since $\mathbf{M}$ depends *only* upon the position vector $\mathbf{r}$ directed *between* the forces and *not* the position vectors $\mathbf{r}_A$ and $\mathbf{r}_B$, directed from the arbitrary point O to the forces. This concept is unlike the moment of a force, which requires a definite point (or axis) about which moments are determined.

Scalar Formulation. The moment of a couple, $\mathbf{M}$, Fig. 4–27, is defined as having a *magnitude* of

$$\boxed{M = Fd} \tag{4–14}$$

where F is the magnitude of one of the forces and d is the perpendicular distance or moment arm between the forces. The *direction* and sense of the couple moment are determined by the right-hand rule, where the thumb indicates this direction when the fingers are curled with the sense of rotation caused by the couple forces. In all cases, $\mathbf{M}$ will act perpendicular to the plane containing these forces.

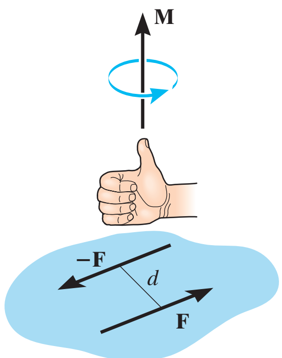


Fig. 4–27

Vector Formulation. The moment of a couple can also be expressed by the vector cross product using Eq. 4–13, i.e.,

$$\boxed{\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}} \tag{4–15}$$

Application of this equation is easily remembered if one thinks of taking the moments of both forces about a point lying on the line of action of one of the forces. For example, if moments are taken about point A in Fig. 4–26, the moment of $-\mathbf{F}$ is *zero* about this point, and the moment of $\mathbf{F}$ is defined from Eq. 4–15. Therefore, in the formulation $\mathbf{r}$ is crossed with the force $\mathbf{F}$ to which it is directed.

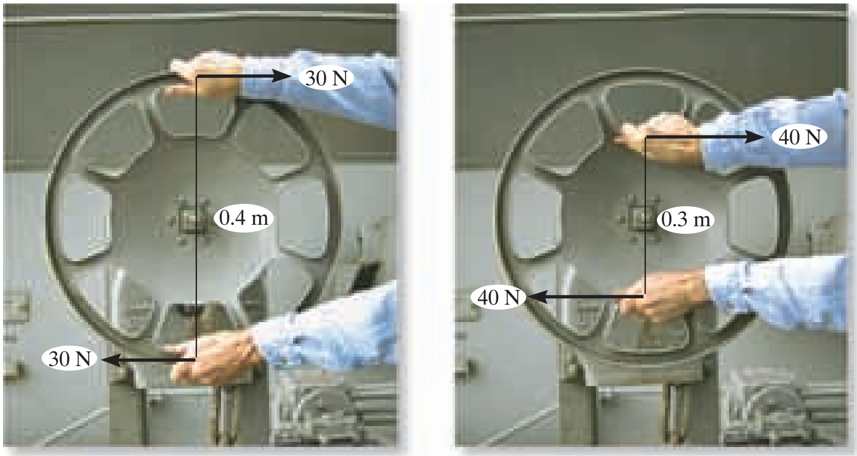


Fig. 4–28 (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Equivalent Couples. If two couples produce a moment with the *same magnitude and direction*, then these two couples are *equivalent*. For example, the two couples shown in Fig. 4–28 are *equivalent* because each couple moment has a magnitude of $M = 30\text{ N}(0.4\text{ m}) = 40\text{ N}(0.3\text{ m}) = 12\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$, and each is directed into the plane of the page. Notice that larger forces are required in the second case to create the same turning effect because the hands are placed closer together. Also, if the wheel was connected to the shaft at a point other than at its center, then the wheel would still turn when each couple is applied since the $12\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ couple is a free vector.

Resultant Couple Moment. Since couple moments are vectors, their resultant can be determined by vector addition. For example, consider the couple moments $\mathbf{M}_1$ and $\mathbf{M}_2$ acting on the pipe in Fig. 4–29*a*. Since each couple moment is a free vector, we can join their tails at any arbitrary point and find the resultant couple moment, $\mathbf{M}_R = \mathbf{M}_1 + \mathbf{M}_2$ as shown in Fig. 4–29*b*.

If more than two couple moments act on the body, we may generalize this concept and write the vector resultant as

$$\mathbf{M}_R = \Sigma(\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}) \tag{4–16}$$

These concepts are illustrated numerically in the examples that follow. In general, problems projected in two dimensions should be solved using a scalar analysis since the moment arms and force components are easy to determine.

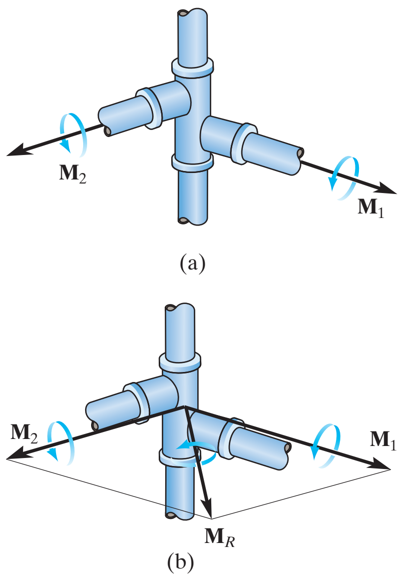


Fig. 4–29

Steering wheels on vehicles have been made smaller than on older vehicles because power steering does not require the driver to apply a large couple moment to the rim of the wheel. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Important Points

- A couple moment is produced by two noncollinear forces that are equal in magnitude but opposite in direction. Its effect is to produce pure rotation, or tendency for rotation in a specified direction.
- A couple moment is a free vector, and as a result it causes the same rotational effect on a body regardless of where the couple moment is applied to the body.
- The moment of the two couple forces can be determined about *any point*. For convenience, this point is often chosen on the line of action of one of the forces in order to eliminate the moment of this force about the point.
- In three dimensions the couple moment is often determined using the vector formulation, $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$, where $\mathbf{r}$ is directed from *any point* on the line of action of one of the forces to *any point* on the line of action of the other force $\mathbf{F}$.
- A resultant couple moment is simply the vector sum of all the couple moments of the system.

EXAMPLE 4.10

Determine the resultant couple moment of the three couples acting on the plate in Fig. 4–30.

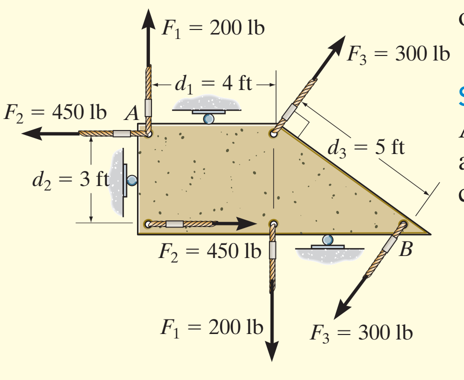


Fig. 4–30

SOLUTION

As shown the perpendicular distances between each pair of couple forces are $d_1 = 4$ ft, $d_2 = 3$ ft, and $d_3 = 5$ ft. Considering counterclockwise couple moments as positive, we have

$$\circlearrowleft + M_R = \Sigma M; \quad M_R = -F_1 d_1 + F_2 d_2 - F_3 d_3$$

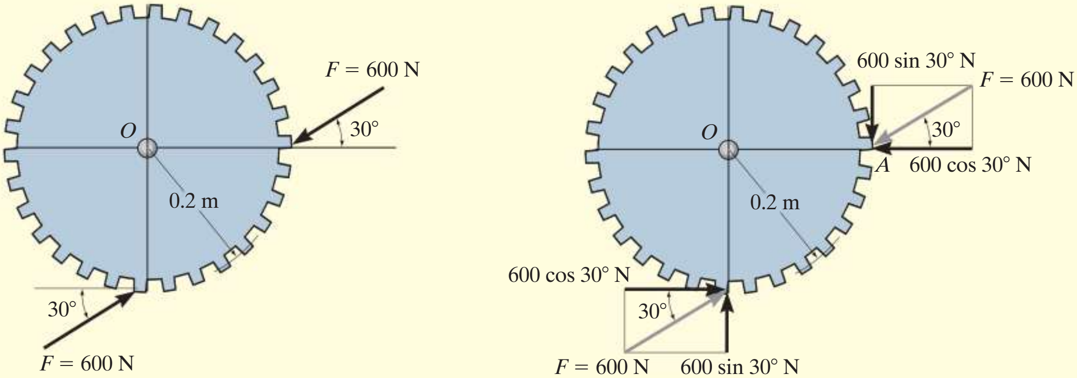
$$= -(200 \text{ lb})(4 \text{ ft}) + (450 \text{ lb})(3 \text{ ft}) - (300 \text{ lb})(5 \text{ ft})$$

$$= -950 \text{ lb} \cdot \text{ft} = 950 \text{ lb} \cdot \text{ft} \circlearrowright \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

The negative sign indicates that $\mathbf{M}_R$ has a clockwise rotational sense.

EXAMPLE 4.11

Determine the magnitude and direction of the couple moment acting on the gear in Fig. 4–31*a*.



(a) (b)

SOLUTION

The easiest solution requires resolving each force into its components as shown in Fig. 4–31*b*. The couple moment can be determined by summing the moments of these force components about any point, for example, the center *O* of the gear or point *A*. If we consider counterclockwise moments as positive, we have

$$\circlearrowleft + M = \Sigma M_O; \quad M = (600 \cos 30^\circ \text{ N})(0.2 \text{ m}) - (600 \sin 30^\circ \text{ N})(0.2 \text{ m})$$

$$= 43.9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m} \circlearrowleft \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

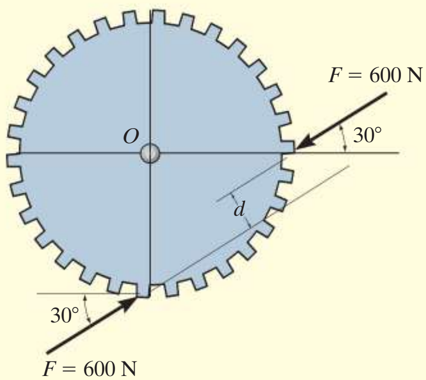
or

$$\circlearrowleft + M = \Sigma M_A; \quad M = (600 \cos 30^\circ \text{ N})(0.2 \text{ m}) - (600 \sin 30^\circ \text{ N})(0.2 \text{ m})$$

$$= 43.9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m} \circlearrowleft \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

This positive result indicates that **M** has a counterclockwise rotational sense, so it is directed outward, perpendicular to the page.

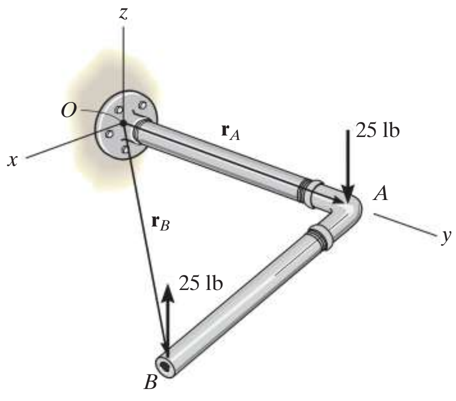
NOTE: The same result can also be obtained using $M = Fd$, where d is the perpendicular distance between the lines of action of the couple forces, Fig. 4–31*c*. However, the computation for d is more involved. Realize that the couple moment is a free vector and can act at any point on the gear and produce the same turning effect about point *O*.



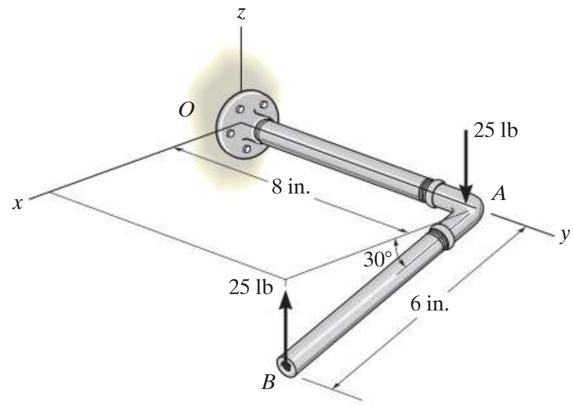
(c)

Fig. 4–31

Determine the couple moment acting on the pipe shown in Fig. 4–32*a*. Segment *AB* is directed 30° below the *x*–*y* plane.



(b)

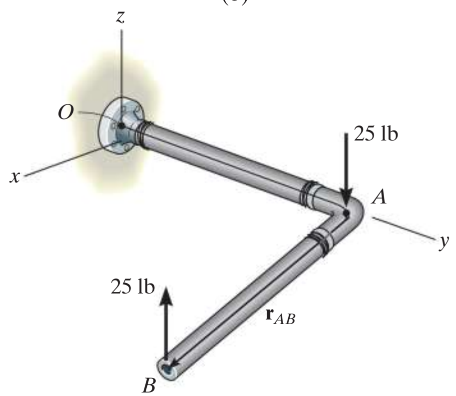


(a)

SOLUTION I *(VECTOR ANALYSIS)*

The moment of the two couple forces can be found about *any point*. If point *O* is considered, Fig. 4–32*b*, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{M} &= \mathbf{r}_A \times (-25\mathbf{k}) + \mathbf{r}_B \times (25\mathbf{k}) \\
&= (8\mathbf{j}) \times (-25\mathbf{k}) + (6 \cos 30^\circ \mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} - 6 \sin 30^\circ \mathbf{k}) \times (25\mathbf{k}) \\
&= -200\mathbf{i} - 129.9\mathbf{j} + 200\mathbf{i} \\
&= \{-130\mathbf{j}\}\ \text{lb} \cdot \text{in.} \qquad \textit{Ans.}
\end{aligned}
$$



(c)

It is *easier* to take moments of the couple forces about a point lying on the line of action of one of the forces, e.g., point *A*, Fig. 4–32*c*. In this case the moment of the force at *A* is zero, so that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{M} &= \mathbf{r}_{AB} \times (25\mathbf{k}) \\
&= (6 \cos 30^\circ \mathbf{i} - 6 \sin 30^\circ \mathbf{k}) \times (25\mathbf{k}) \\
&= \{-130\mathbf{j}\}\ \text{lb} \cdot \text{in.} \qquad \textit{Ans.}
\end{aligned}
$$

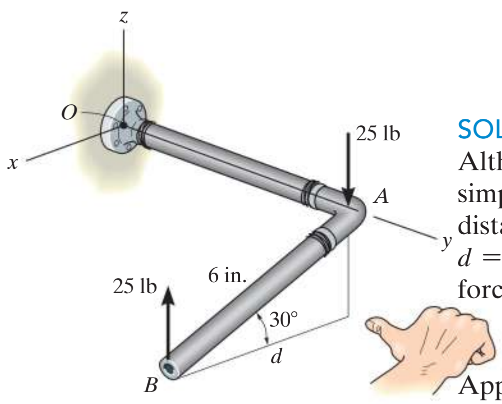
SOLUTION II *(SCALAR ANALYSIS)*

Although this problem is shown in three dimensions, the geometry is simple enough to use the scalar equation $M = Fd$. The perpendicular distance between the lines of action of the couple forces is $d = 6 \cos 30^\circ = 5.196$ in., Fig. 4–32*d*. Hence, taking moments of the forces about either point *A* or point *B* yields

$$M = Fd = 25 \text{ lb } (5.196 \text{ in.}) = 129.9 \text{ lb} \cdot \text{in.}$$

Applying the right-hand rule, **M** acts in the $-\mathbf{j}$ direction. Thus,

$$\mathbf{M} = \{-130\mathbf{j}\}\ \text{lb} \cdot \text{in.} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$



(d)

Fig. 4–32

EXAMPLE 4.13

Replace the two couples acting on the pipe column in Fig. 4–33*a* by a resultant couple moment.

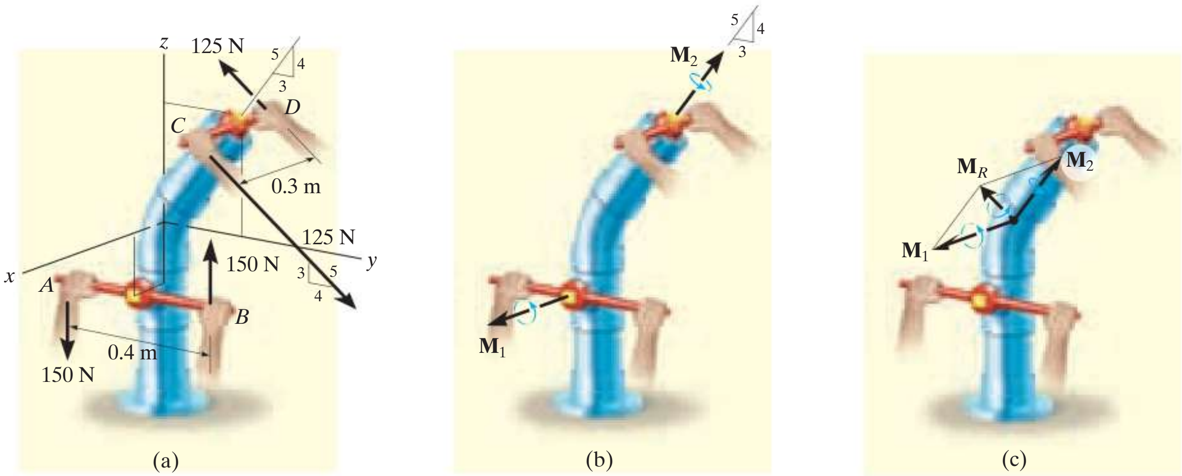


Fig. 4–33

SOLUTION *(VECTOR ANALYSIS)*

The couple moment $\mathbf{M}_1$, developed by the forces at A and B, can easily be determined from a scalar formulation.

$$M_1 = Fd = 150\text{ N}(0.4\text{ m}) = 60\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$$

By the right-hand rule, $\mathbf{M}_1$ acts in the $+\mathbf{i}$ direction, Fig. 4–33*b*. Hence,

$$\mathbf{M}_1 = \{60\mathbf{i}\}\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$$

Vector analysis will be used to determine $\mathbf{M}_2$, caused by forces at C and D. If moments are calculated about point D, Fig. 4–33*a*, $\mathbf{M}_2 = \mathbf{r}_{DC} \times \mathbf{F}_C$, then

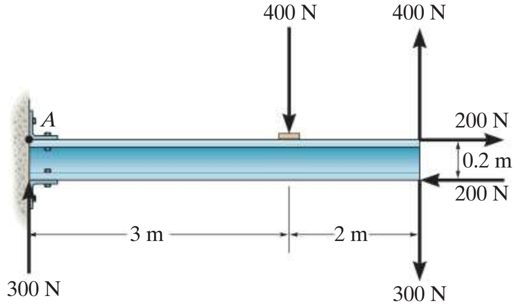
$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{M}_2 = \mathbf{r}_{DC} \times \mathbf{F}_C &= (0.3\mathbf{i}) \times \left[125\left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right)\mathbf{j} - 125\left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right)\mathbf{k}\right] \\ &= (0.3\mathbf{i}) \times [100\mathbf{j} - 75\mathbf{k}] = 30(\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{j}) - 22.5(\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{k}) \\ &= \{22.5\mathbf{j} + 30\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}\end{aligned}$$

Since $\mathbf{M}_1$ and $\mathbf{M}_2$ are free vectors, they may be moved to some arbitrary point and added vectorially, Fig. 4–33*c*. The resultant couple moment becomes

$$\mathbf{M}_R = \mathbf{M}_1 + \mathbf{M}_2 = \{60\mathbf{i} + 22.5\mathbf{j} + 30\mathbf{k}\}\text{ N}\cdot\text{m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

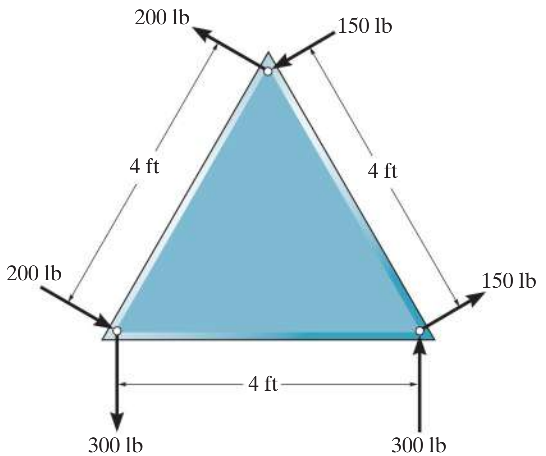
FUNDAMENTAL PROBLEMS

F4–19. Determine the resultant couple moment acting on the beam.



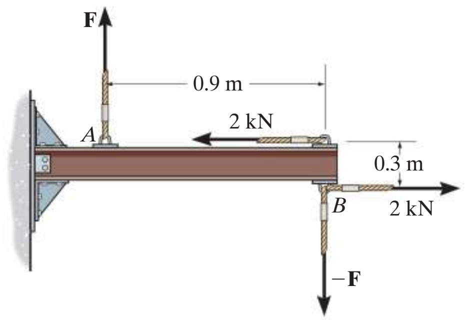
Prob. F4–19

F4–20. Determine the resultant couple moment acting on the triangular plate.



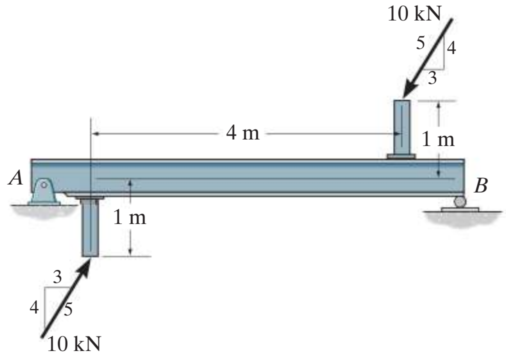
Prob. F4–20

F4–21. Determine the magnitude of **F** so that the resultant couple moment acting on the beam is 1.5 kN · m clockwise.



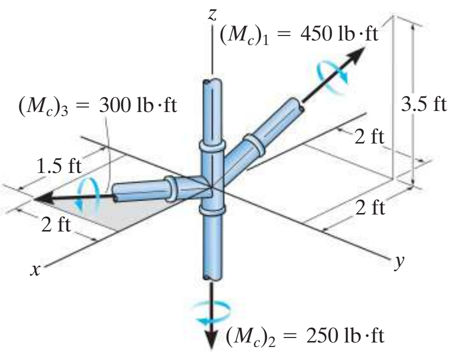
Prob. F4–21

F4–22. Determine the couple moment acting on the beam.



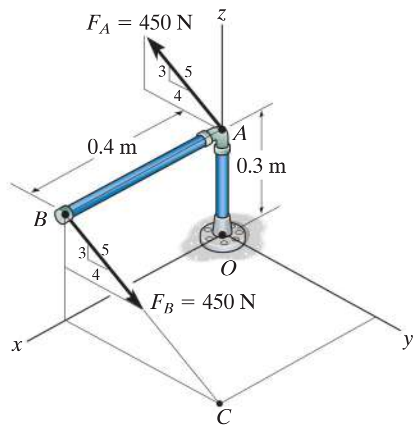
Prob. F4–22

F4–23. Determine the resultant couple moment acting on the pipe assembly.



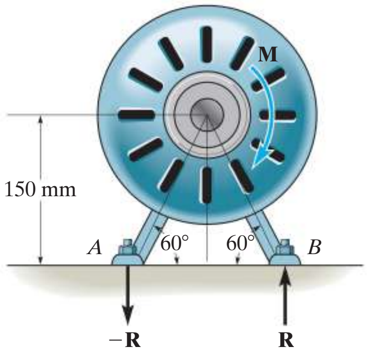
Prob. F4–23

F4–24. Determine the couple moment acting on the pipe assembly and express the result as a Cartesian vector.



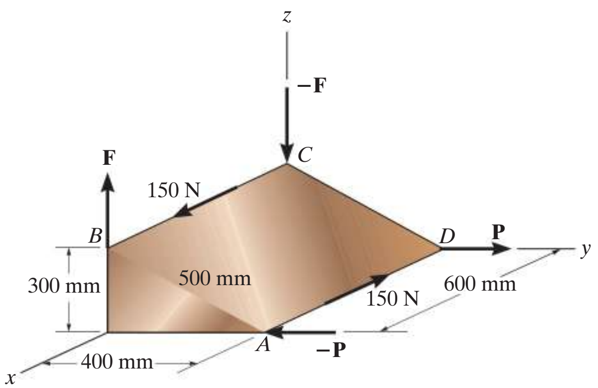
Prob. F4–24

4–67. A clockwise couple $M = 5\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$ is resisted by the shaft of the electric motor. Determine the magnitude of the reactive forces $-\mathbf{R}$ and $\mathbf{R}$ which act at supports A and B so that the resultant of the two couples is zero.



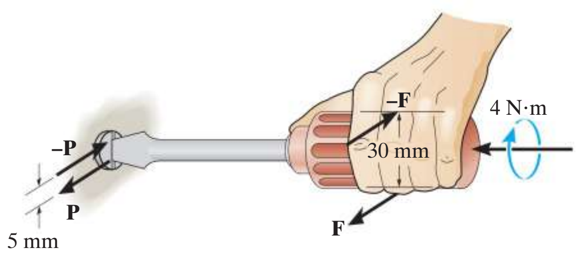
Prob. 4–67

4–69. If the resultant couple of the three couples acting on the triangular block is to be zero, determine the magnitude of forces **F** and **P**.



Prob. 4–69

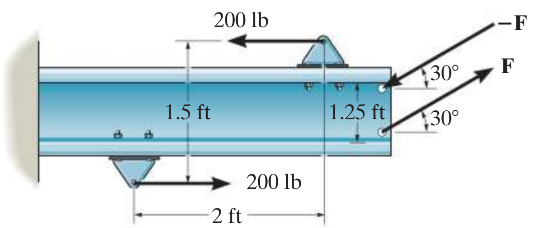
***4–68.** A twist of $4\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$ is applied to the handle of the screwdriver. Resolve this couple moment into a pair of couple forces **F** exerted on the handle and **P** exerted on the blade.



Prob. 4–68

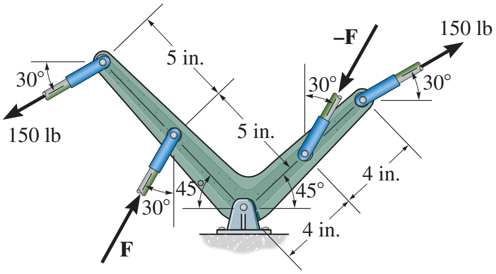
4–70. Two couples act on the beam. If $F = 125$ lb, determine the resultant couple moment.

4–71. Two couples act on the beam. Determine the magnitude of **F** so that the resultant couple moment is $450\ \text{lb}\cdot\text{ft}$, counterclockwise. Where on the beam does the resultant couple moment act?



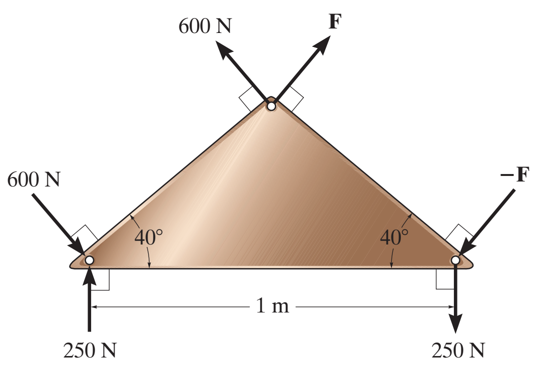
Probs. 4–70/71

*4–72. Determine the magnitude of the couple forces **F** so that the resultant couple moment on the crank is zero.



Prob. 4–72

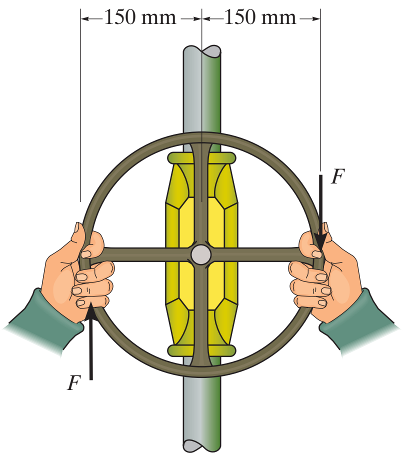
4–73. The ends of the triangular plate are subjected to three couples. Determine the magnitude of the force **F** so that the resultant couple moment is 400 N · m clockwise.



Prob. 4–73

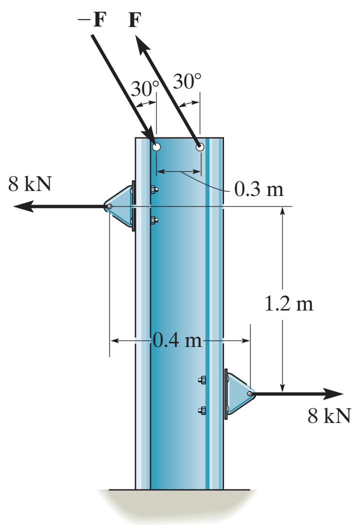
4–74. The man tries to open the valve by applying the couple forces of $F = 75$ N to the wheel. Determine the couple moment produced.

4–75. If the valve can be opened with a couple moment of 25 N · m, determine the required magnitude of each couple force which must be applied to the wheel.



Probs. 4–74/75

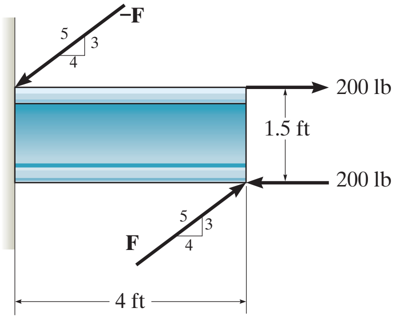
*4–76. Determine the magnitude of **F** so that the resultant couple moment is 12 kN · m, counterclockwise. Where on the beam does the resultant couple moment act?



Prob. 4–76

4–77. Two couples act on the beam as shown. If $F = 150$ lb, determine the resultant couple moment.

4–78. Two couples act on the beam as shown. Determine the magnitude of **F** so that the resultant couple moment is 300 lb · ft counterclockwise. Where on the beam does the resultant couple act?

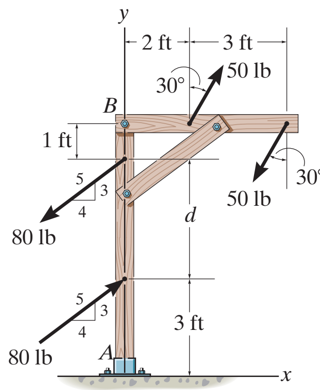


Probs. 4–77/78

4–79. Two couples act on the frame. If the resultant couple moment is to be zero, determine the distance d between the 80-lb couple forces.

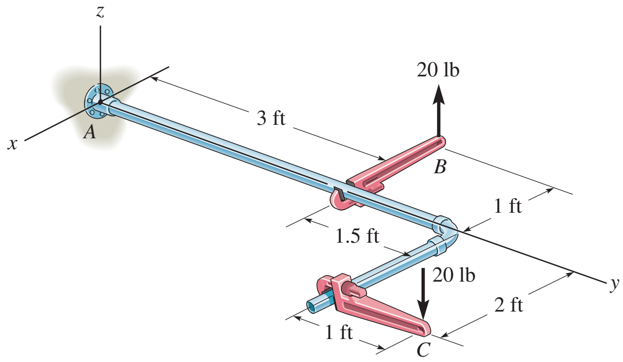
***4–80.** Two couples act on the frame. If $d = 4$ ft, determine the resultant couple moment. Compute the result by resolving each force into x and y components and (a) finding the moment of each couple (Eq. 4–13) and (b) summing the moments of all the force components about point A.

4–81. Two couples act on the frame. If $d = 4$ ft, determine the resultant couple moment. Compute the result by resolving each force into x and y components and (a) finding the moment of each couple (Eq. 4–13) and (b) summing the moments of all the force components about point B.



Probs. 4–79/80/81

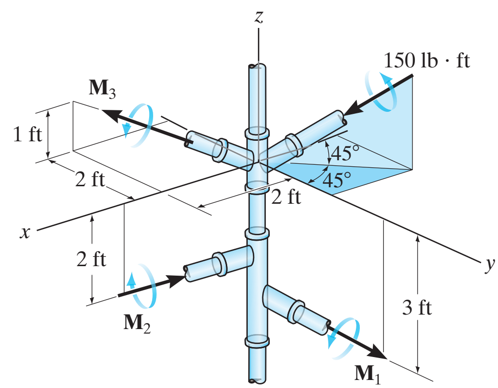
4–82. Express the moment of the couple acting on the pipe assembly in Cartesian vector form. What is the magnitude of the couple moment?



Prob. 4–82

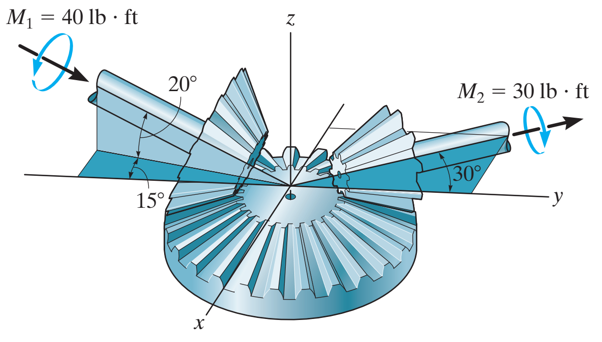
4–83. If $M_1 = 180$ lb · ft, $M_2 = 90$ lb · ft, and $M_3 = 120$ lb · ft, determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant couple moment.

***4–84.** Determine the magnitudes of couple moments $\mathbf{M}_1$, $\mathbf{M}_2$, and $\mathbf{M}_3$ so that the resultant couple moment is zero.



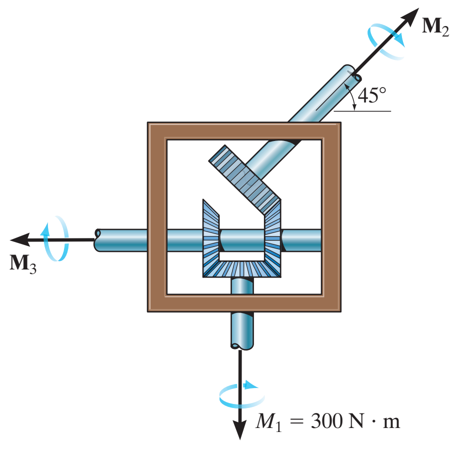
Probs. 4–83/84

4–85. The gears are subjected to the couple moments shown. Determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant couple moment.



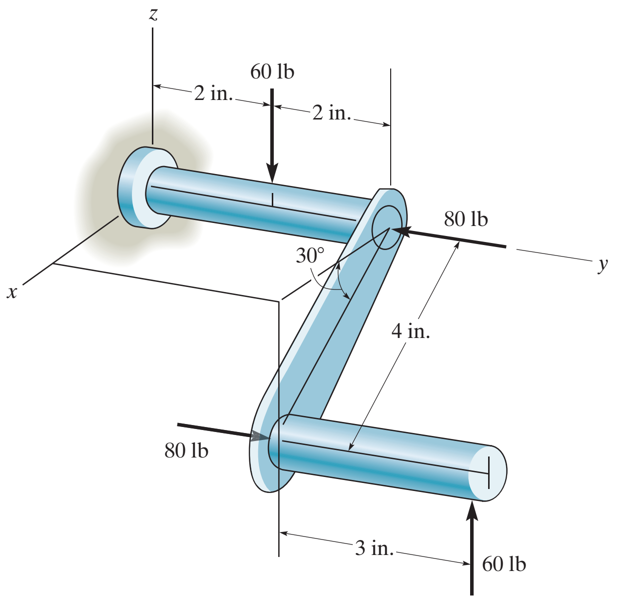
Prob. 4–85

4–86. Determine the required magnitude of the couple moments $\mathbf{M}_2$ and $\mathbf{M}_3$ so that the resultant couple moment is zero.



Prob. 4–86

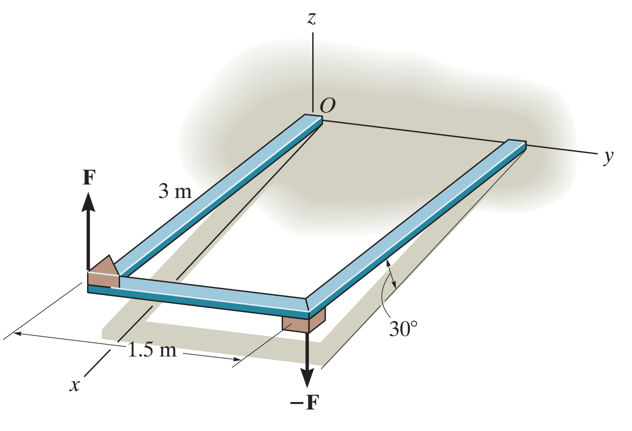
4–87. Determine the resultant couple moment of the two couples that act on the assembly. Specify its magnitude and coordinate direction angles.



Prob. 4–87

***4–88.** Express the moment of the couple acting on the frame in Cartesian vector form. The forces are applied perpendicular to the frame. What is the magnitude of the couple moment? Take $F = 50$ N.

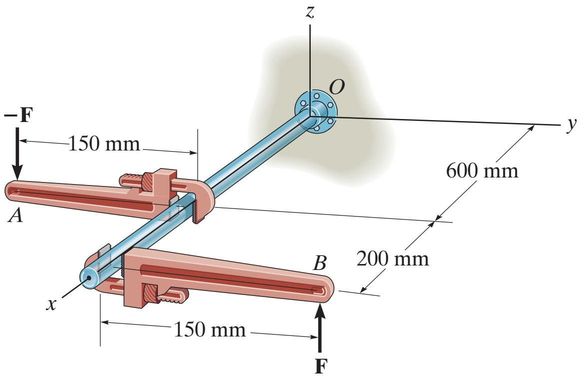
4–89. In order to turn over the frame, a couple moment is applied as shown. If the component of this couple moment along the x axis is $\mathbf{M}_x = \{-20\mathbf{i}\}$ N · m, determine the magnitude F of the couple forces.



Probs. 4–88/89

4–90. Express the moment of the couple acting on the pipe in Cartesian vector form. What is the magnitude of the couple moment? Take $F = 125$ N.

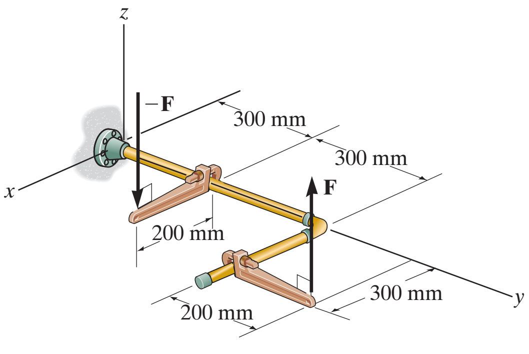
4–91. If the couple moment acting on the pipe has a magnitude of $300\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$, determine the magnitude F of the forces applied to the wrenches.



Probs. 4–90/91

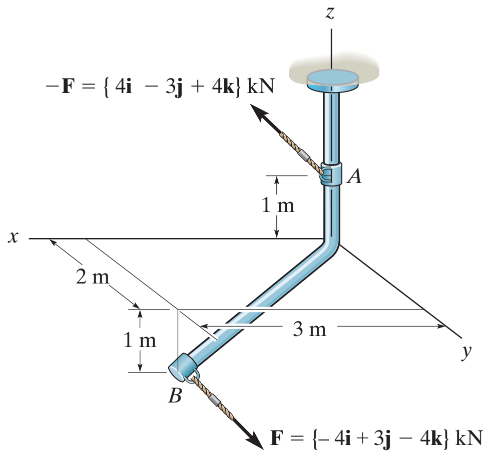
***4–92.** If $F = 80$ N, determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the couple moment. The pipe assembly lies in the x–y plane.

4–93. If the magnitude of the couple moment acting on the pipe assembly is $50\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$, determine the magnitude of the couple forces applied to each wrench. The pipe assembly lies in the x–y plane.



Probs. 4–92/93

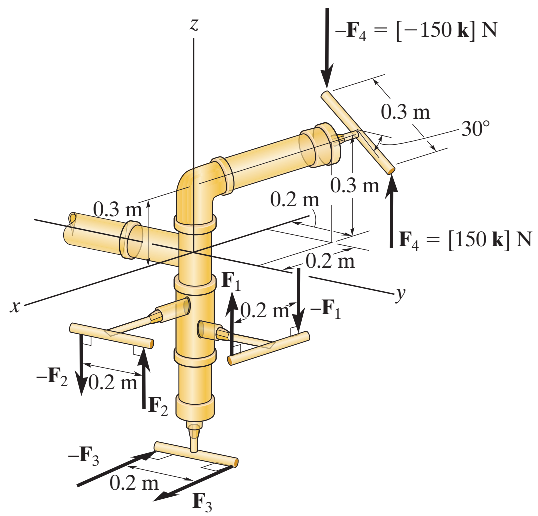
4–94. Express the moment of the couple acting on the rod in Cartesian vector form. What is the magnitude of the couple moment?



Prob. 4–94

4–95. If $F_1 = 100$ N, $F_2 = 120$ N, and $F_3 = 80$ N, determine the magnitude and coordinate direction angles of the resultant couple moment.

***4–96.** Determine the required magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_1$, $\mathbf{F}_2$, and $\mathbf{F}_3$ so that the resultant couple moment is $(\mathbf{M}_c)_R = [50\mathbf{i} - 45\mathbf{j} - 20\mathbf{k}]\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$.



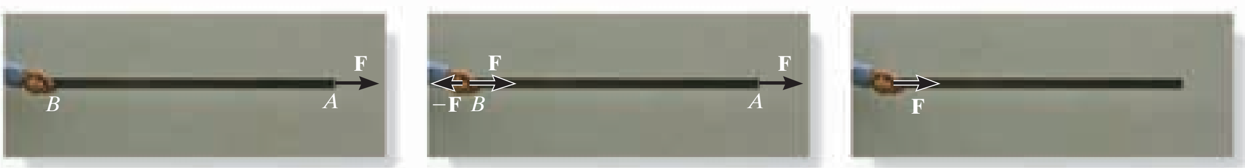
Probs. 4–95/96

4.7 Simplification of a Force and Couple System

Sometimes it is convenient to reduce a system of forces and couple moments acting on a body to a simpler form by replacing it with an ***equivalent system***, consisting of a single resultant force acting at a specific point and a resultant couple moment. A system is equivalent if the ***external effects*** it produces on a body are the same as those caused by the original force and couple moment system. In this context, the external effects of a system refer to the *translating and rotating motion* of the body if the body is free to move, or it refers to the *reactive forces* at the supports if the body is held fixed.

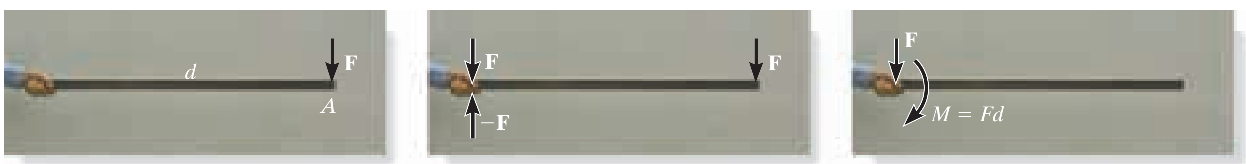
For example, consider holding the stick in Fig. 4–34*a*, which is subjected to the force **F** at point A. If we attach a pair of equal but opposite forces **F** and −**F** at point B, which is *on the line of action* of **F**, Fig. 4–34*b*, we observe that −**F** at B and **F** at A will cancel each other, leaving only **F** at B, Fig. 4–34*c*. Force **F** has now been moved from A to B without modifying its *external effects* on the stick; i.e., the reaction at the grip remains the same. This demonstrates the ***principle of transmissibility***, which states that a force acting on a body (stick) is a ***sliding vector*** since it can be applied at any point along its line of action.

We can also use the above procedure to move a force to a point that is *not* on the line of action of the force. If **F** is applied perpendicular to the stick, as in Fig. 4–35*a*, then we can attach a pair of equal but opposite forces **F** and −**F** to B, Fig. 4–35*b*. Force **F** is now applied at B, and the other two forces, **F** at A and −**F** at B, form a couple that produces the couple moment $M = Fd$, Fig. 4–35*c*. Therefore, the force **F** can be moved from A to B provided a couple moment **M** is added to maintain an equivalent system. This couple moment is determined by taking the moment of **F** about B. Since **M** is actually a *free vector*, it can act at any point on the stick. In both cases the systems are equivalent, which causes a downward force **F** and clockwise couple moment $M = Fd$ to be felt at the grip.



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 4–34 (© Russell C. Hibbeler)



(a) (b) (c)

Fig. 4–35 (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

System of Forces and Couple Moments. Using the above method, a system of several forces and couple moments acting on a body can be reduced to an equivalent single resultant force acting at a point O and a resultant couple moment. For example, in Fig. 4–36*a*, O is not on the line of action of $\mathbf{F}_1$, and so this force can be moved to point O provided a couple moment $(\mathbf{M}_O)_1 = \mathbf{r}_1 \times \mathbf{F}$ is added to the body. Similarly, the couple moment $(\mathbf{M}_O)_2 = \mathbf{r}_2 \times \mathbf{F}_2$ should be added to the body when we move $\mathbf{F}_2$ to point O. Finally, since the couple moment $\mathbf{M}$ is a free vector, it can just be moved to point O. By doing this, we obtain the equivalent system shown in Fig. 4–36*b*, which produces the same external effects (support reactions) on the body as that of the force and couple system shown in Fig. 4–36*a*. If we sum the forces and couple moments, we obtain the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2$ and the resultant couple moment $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O = \mathbf{M} + (\mathbf{M}_O)_1 + (\mathbf{M}_O)_2$, Fig. 4–36*c*.

Notice that $\mathbf{F}_R$ is independent of the location of point O since it is simply a summation of the forces. However, $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$ depends upon this location since the moments $\mathbf{M}_1$ and $\mathbf{M}_2$ are determined using the position vectors $\mathbf{r}_1$ and $\mathbf{r}_2$, which extend from O to each force. Also note that $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$ is a free vector and can act at *any point* on the body, although point O is generally chosen as its point of application.

We can generalize the above method of reducing a force and couple system to an equivalent resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ acting at point O and a resultant couple moment $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$ by using the following two equations.

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F}_R &= \Sigma \mathbf{F} \\ (\mathbf{M}_R)_O &= \Sigma \mathbf{M}_O + \Sigma \mathbf{M} \end{aligned}} \qquad (4\text{–}17)$$

The first equation states that the resultant force of the system is equivalent to the sum of all the forces; and the second equation states that the resultant couple moment of the system is equivalent to the sum of all the couple moments $\Sigma\mathbf{M}$ plus the moments of all the forces $\Sigma\mathbf{M}_O$ about point O. If the force system lies in the x–y plane and any couple moments are perpendicular to this plane, then the above equations reduce to the following three scalar equations.

$$\boxed{\begin{aligned} (F_R)_x &= \Sigma F_x \\ (F_R)_y &= \Sigma F_y \\ (M_R)_O &= \Sigma M_O + \Sigma M \end{aligned}} \qquad (4\text{–}18)$$

Here the resultant force is determined from the vector sum of its two components $(F_R)_x$ and $(F_R)_y$.

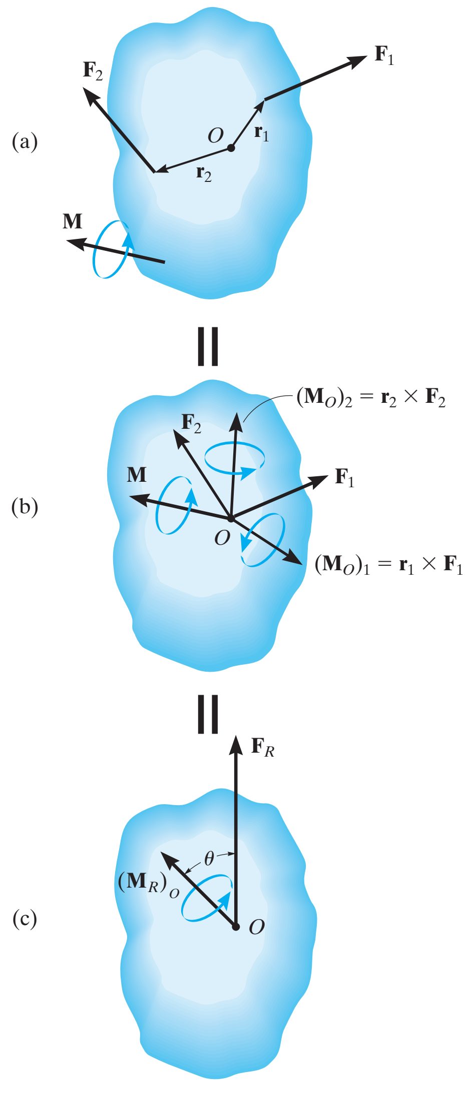
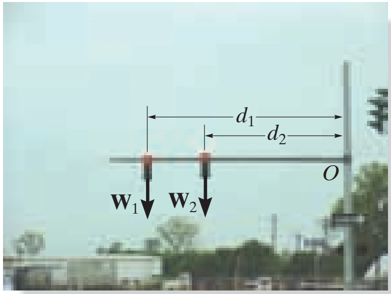
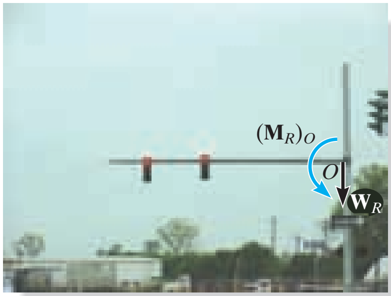


Fig. 4–36





The weights of these traffic lights can be replaced by their equivalent resultant force $W_R = W_1 + W_2$ and a couple moment $(M_R)_O = W_1 d_1 + W_2 d_2$ at the support, O. In both cases the support must provide the same resistance to translation and rotation in order to keep the member in the horizontal position. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Important Points

- Force is a sliding vector, since it will create the same external effects on a body when it is applied at any point P along its line of action. This is called the principle of transmissibility.
- A couple moment is a free vector since it will create the same external effects on a body when it is applied at any point P on the body.
- When a force is moved to another point P that is not on its line of action, it will create the same external effects on the body if a couple moment is also applied to the body. The couple moment is determined by taking the moment of the force about point P.

Procedure for Analysis

The following points should be kept in mind when simplifying a force and couple moment system to an equivalent resultant force and couple system.

- Establish the coordinate axes with the origin located at point O and the axes having a selected orientation.

Force Summation.

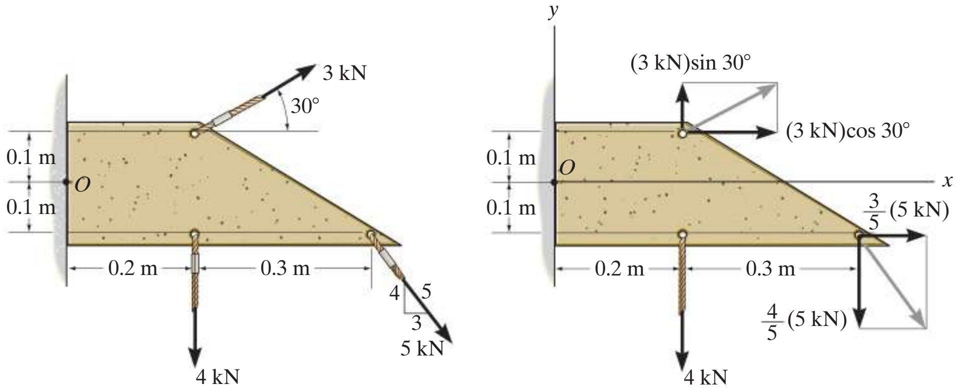
- If the force system is *coplanar*, resolve each force into its x and y components. If a component is directed along the positive x or y axis, it represents a positive scalar; whereas if it is directed along the negative x or y axis, it is a negative scalar.
- In three dimensions, represent each force as a Cartesian vector before summing the forces.

Moment Summation.

- When determining the moments of a *coplanar* force system about point O, it is generally advantageous to use the principle of moments, i.e., determine the moments of the components of each force, rather than the moment of the force itself.
- In three dimensions use the vector cross product to determine the moment of each force about point O. Here the position vectors extend from O to any point on the line of action of each force.

EXAMPLE 4.14

Replace the force and couple system shown in Fig. 4–37*a* by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment acting at point O.



(a) (b)

SOLUTION

Force Summation. The 3 kN and 5 kN forces are resolved into their x and y components as shown in Fig. 4–37*b*. We have

$$\overset{+}{\rightarrow}(F_R)_x = \Sigma F_x; \qquad (F_R)_x = (3\text{ kN})\cos 30^\circ + \left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right)(5\text{ kN}) = 5.598\text{ kN} \rightarrow$$

$$+\uparrow (F_R)_y = \Sigma F_y; \qquad (F_R)_y = (3\text{ kN})\sin 30^\circ - \left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right)(5\text{ kN}) - 4\text{ kN} = -6.50\text{ kN} = 6.50\text{ kN}\downarrow$$

Using the Pythagorean theorem, Fig. 4–37*c*, the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_R$ is

$$F_R = \sqrt{(F_R)_x^{\,2} + (F_R)_y^{\,2}} = \sqrt{(5.598\text{ kN})^2 + (6.50\text{ kN})^2} = 8.58\text{ kN} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Its direction θ is

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{(F_R)_y}{(F_R)_x}\right) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{6.50\text{ kN}}{5.598\text{ kN}}\right) = 49.3^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Moment Summation. The moments of 3 kN and 5 kN about point O will be determined using their x and y components. Referring to Fig. 4–37*b*, we have

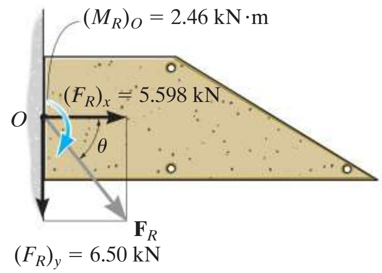
$$\circlearrowleft + (M_R)_O = \Sigma M_O;$$

$$(M_R)_O = (3\text{ kN})\sin 30^\circ(0.2\text{ m}) - (3\text{ kN})\cos 30^\circ(0.1\text{ m}) + \left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right)(5\text{ kN})\,(0.1\text{ m}) - \left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right)(5\text{ kN})\,(0.5\text{ m}) - (4\text{ kN})(0.2\text{ m})$$

$$= -2.46\text{ kN}\cdot\text{m} = 2.46\text{ kN}\cdot\text{m} \circlearrowright \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

This clockwise moment is shown in Fig. 4–37*c*.

NOTE: Realize that the resultant force and couple moment in Fig. 4–37*c* will produce the same external effects or reactions at the supports as those produced by the force system, Fig. 4–37*a*.



(c)

Fig. 4–37

Replace the force and couple system acting on the member in Fig. 4–38*a* by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment acting at point O.

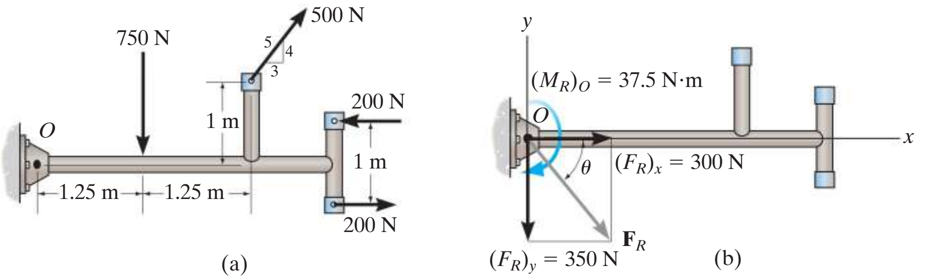


Fig. 4–38

SOLUTION

Force Summation. Since the couple forces of 200 N are equal but opposite, they produce a zero resultant force, and so it is not necessary to consider them in the force summation. The 500-N force is resolved into its x and y components, thus,

$$\overset{+}{\rightarrow} (F_R)_x = \Sigma F_x;\ (F_R)_x = \left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right)(500\text{ N}) = 300\text{ N} \rightarrow$$

$$+\uparrow (F_R)_y = \Sigma F_y;\ (F_R)_y = (500\text{ N})\left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right) - 750\text{ N} = -350\text{ N} = 350\text{ N}\downarrow$$

From Fig. 4–15*b*, the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_R$ is

$$F_R = \sqrt{(F_R)_x^2 + (F_R)_y^2}$$

$$= \sqrt{(300\text{ N})^2 + (350\text{ N})^2} = 461\text{ N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

And the angle θ is

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{(F_R)_y}{(F_R)_x}\right) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{350\text{ N}}{300\text{ N}}\right) = 49.4^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Moment Summation. Since the couple moment is a free vector, it can act at any point on the member. Referring to Fig. 4–38*a*, we have

$$\circlearrowleft + (M_R)_O = \Sigma M_O + \Sigma M$$

$$(M_R)_O = (500\text{ N})\left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right)(2.5\text{ m}) - (500\text{ N})\left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right)(1\text{ m})$$

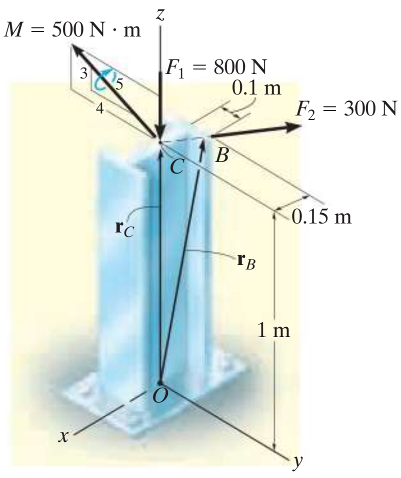
$$- (750\text{ N})(1.25\text{ m}) + 200\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$$

$$= -37.5\text{ N}\cdot\text{m} = 37.5\text{ N}\cdot\text{m} \circlearrowright \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

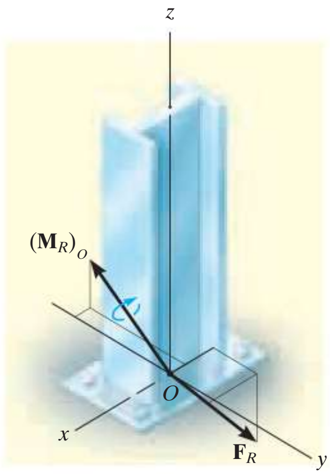
This clockwise moment is shown in Fig. 4–38*b*.

EXAMPLE 44.11 6

The structural member is subjected to a couple moment **M** and forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$ in Fig. 4–39*a*. Replace this system by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment acting at its base, point *O*.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 4–39

SOLUTION *(VECTOR ANALYSIS)*

The three-dimensional aspects of the problem can be simplified by using a Cartesian vector analysis. Expressing the forces and couple moment as Cartesian vectors, we have

$$\mathbf{F}_1 = \{-800\mathbf{k}\}\ \text{N}$$

$$\mathbf{F}_2 = (300\ \text{N})\mathbf{u}_{CB}$$

$$= (300\ \text{N})\left(\frac{\mathbf{r}_{CB}}{r_{CB}}\right)$$

$$= 300\ \text{N}\left[\frac{\{-0.15\mathbf{i} + 0.1\mathbf{j}\}\ \text{m}}{\sqrt{(-0.15\ \text{m})^2 + (0.1\ \text{m})^2}}\right] = \{-249.6\mathbf{i} + 166.4\mathbf{j}\}\ \text{N}$$

$$\mathbf{M} = -500\left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right)\mathbf{j} + 500\left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right)\mathbf{k} = \{-400\mathbf{j} + 300\mathbf{k}\}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}$$

Force Summation.

$$\mathbf{F}_R = \Sigma\mathbf{F}; \qquad \mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{F}_2 = -800\mathbf{k} - 249.6\mathbf{i} + 166.4\mathbf{j}$$

$$= \{-250\mathbf{i} + 166\mathbf{j} - 800\mathbf{k}\}\ \text{N} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Moment Summation.

$$(\mathbf{M}_R)_o = \Sigma\mathbf{M} + \Sigma\mathbf{M}_O$$

$$(\mathbf{M}_R)_o = \mathbf{M} + \mathbf{r}_C \times \mathbf{F}_1 + \mathbf{r}_B \times \mathbf{F}_2$$

$$(\mathbf{M}_R)_o = (-400\mathbf{j} + 300\mathbf{k}) + (1\mathbf{k}) \times (-800\mathbf{k}) + \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ -0.15 & 0.1 & 1 \\ -249.6 & 166.4 & 0 \end{vmatrix}$$

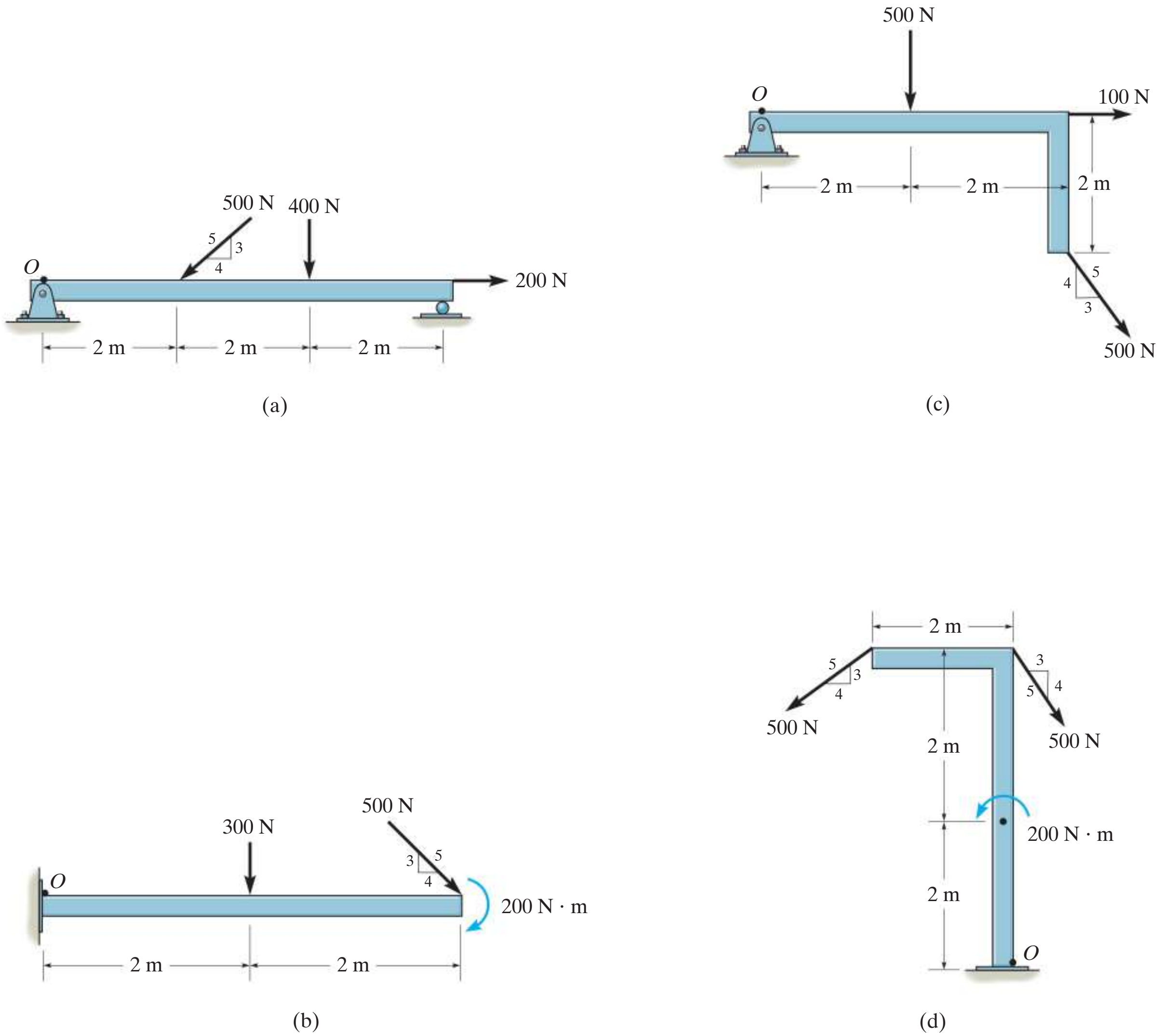
$$= (-400\mathbf{j} + 300\mathbf{k}) + (\mathbf{0}) + (-166.4\mathbf{i} - 249.6\mathbf{j})$$

$$= \{-166\mathbf{i} - 650\mathbf{j} + 300\mathbf{k}\}\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

The results are shown in Fig. 4–39*b*.

PRELIMINARY PROBLEM

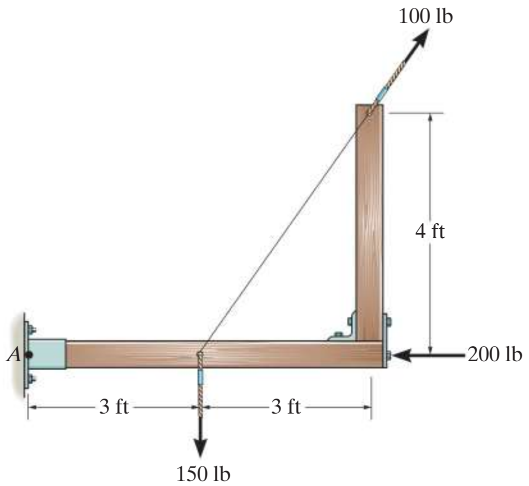
P4–5. In each case, determine the x and y components of the resultant force and the resultant couple moment at point O.



Prob. P4–5

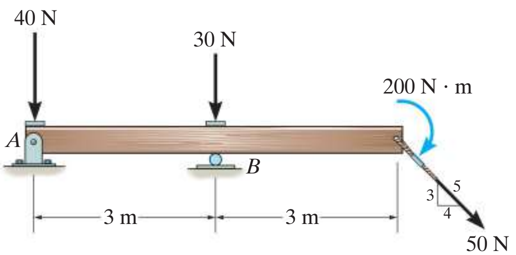
FUNDAMENTAL PROBLEMS

F4–25. Replace the loading system by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment acting at point A.



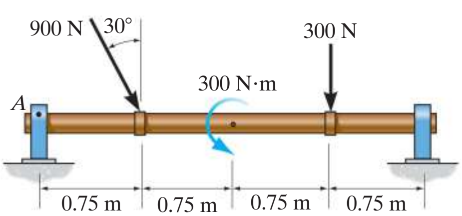
Prob. F4–25

F4–26. Replace the loading system by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment acting at point A.



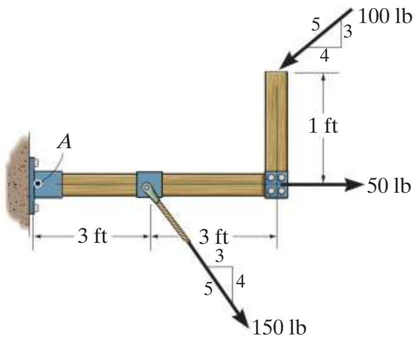
Prob. F4–26

F4–27. Replace the loading system by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment acting at point A.



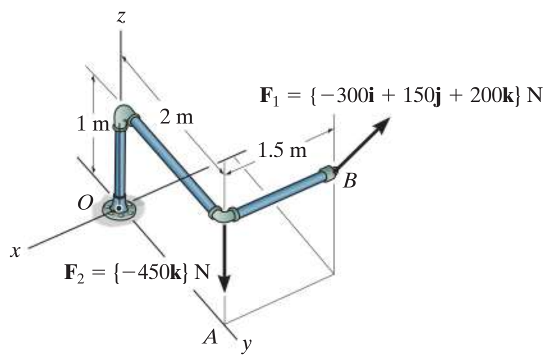
Prob. F4–27

F4–28. Replace the loading system by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment acting at point A.



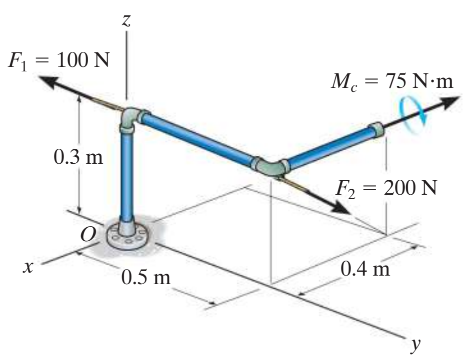
Prob. F4–28

F4–29. Replace the loading system by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment acting at point O.



Prob. F4–29

F4–30. Replace the loading system by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment acting at point O.

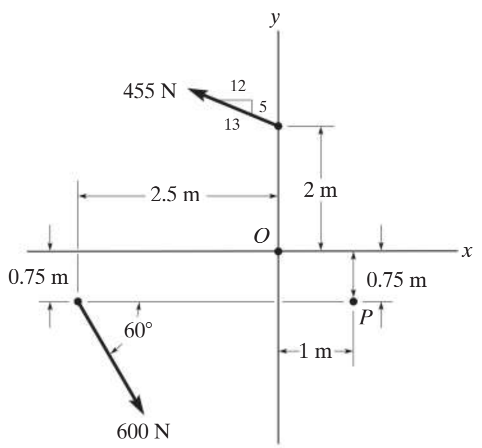


Prob. F4–30

PROBLEMS

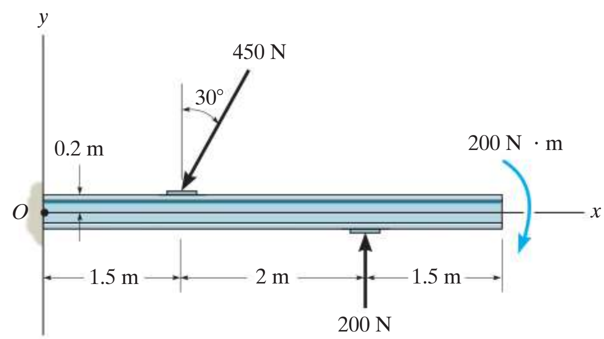
4–97. Replace the force system by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment at point O.

4–98. Replace the force system by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment at point P.



Probs. 4–97/98

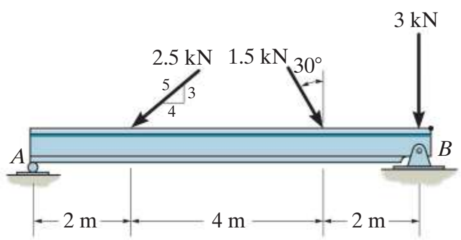
4–101. Replace the loading system acting on the beam by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment at point O.



Prob. 4–101

4–99. Replace the force system acting on the beam by an equivalent force and couple moment at point A.

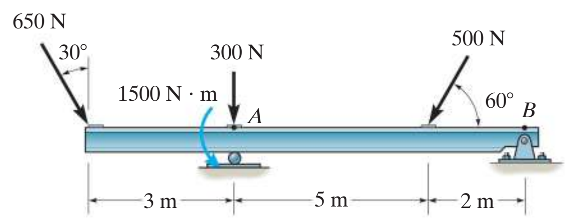
***4–100.** Replace the force system acting on the beam by an equivalent force and couple moment at point B.



Probs. 4–99/100

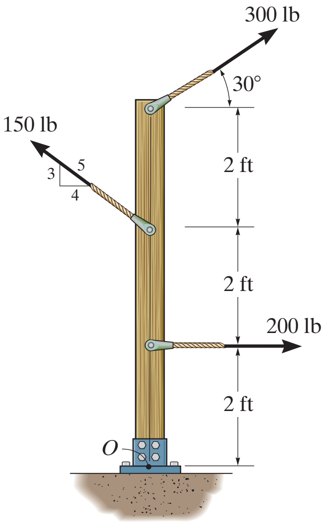
4–102. Replace the loading system acting on the post by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment at point A.

4–103. Replace the loading system acting on the post by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment at point B.



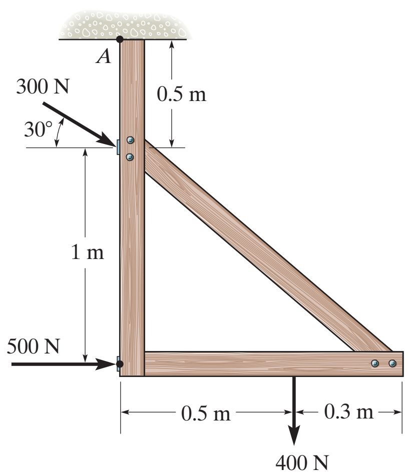
Probs. 4–102/103

***4–104.** Replace the force system acting on the post by a resultant force and couple moment at point O.



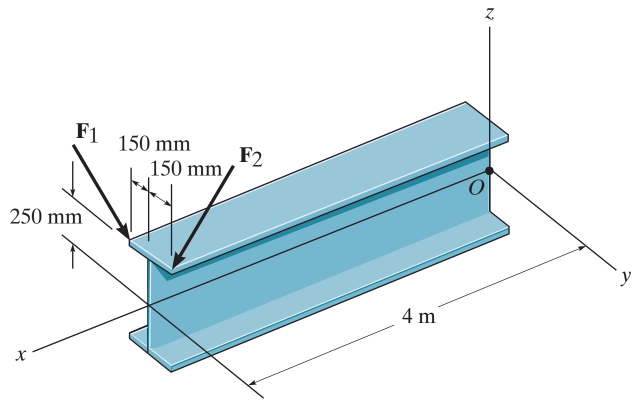
Prob. 4–104

4–105. Replace the force system acting on the frame by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment acting at point A.



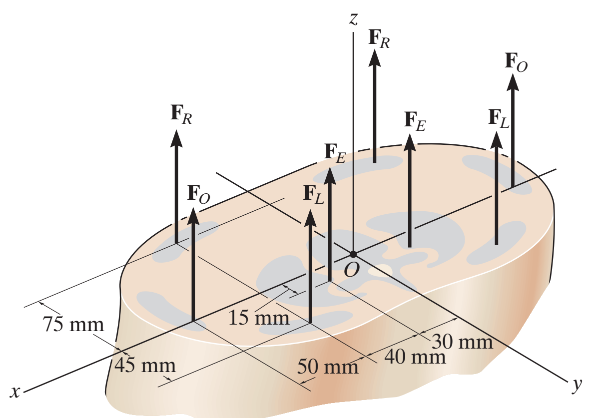
Prob. 4–105

4–106. The forces $\mathbf{F}_1 = \{-4\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}\}$ kN and $\mathbf{F}_2 = \{3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}\}$ kN act on the end of the beam. Replace these forces by an equivalent force and couple moment acting at point O.



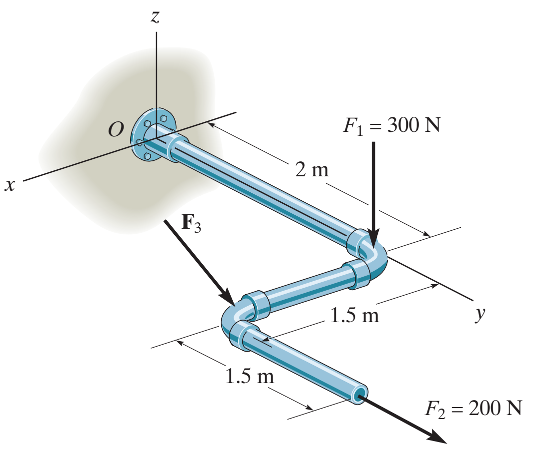
Prob. 4–106

4–107. A biomechanical model of the lumbar region of the human trunk is shown. The forces acting in the four muscle groups consist of $F_R = 35$ N for the rectus, $F_O = 45$ N for the oblique, $F_L = 23$ N for the lumbar latissimus dorsi, and $F_E = 32$ N for the erector spinae. These loadings are symmetric with respect to the y–z plane. Replace this system of parallel forces by an equivalent force and couple moment acting at the spine, point O. Express the results in Cartesian vector form.



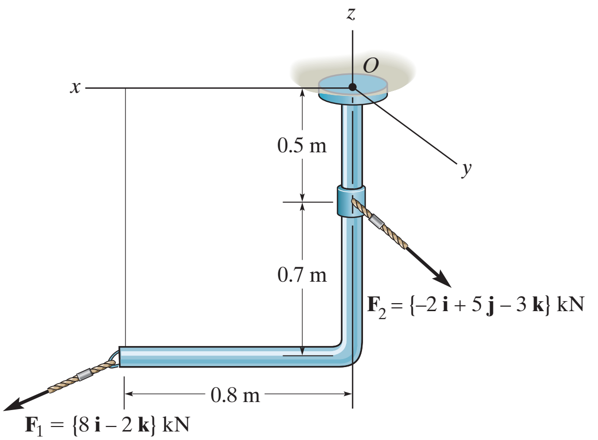
Prob. 4–107

***4–108.** Replace the force system by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment at point O. Take $\mathbf{F}_3 = \{-200\mathbf{i} + 500\mathbf{j} - 300\mathbf{k}\}$ N.



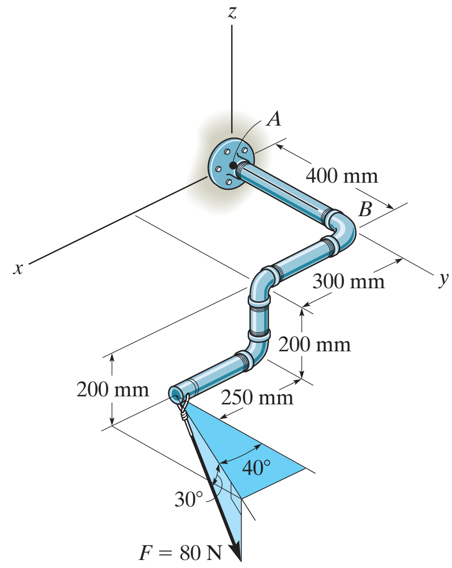
Prob. 4–108

4–109. Replace the loading by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment at point O.



Prob. 4–109

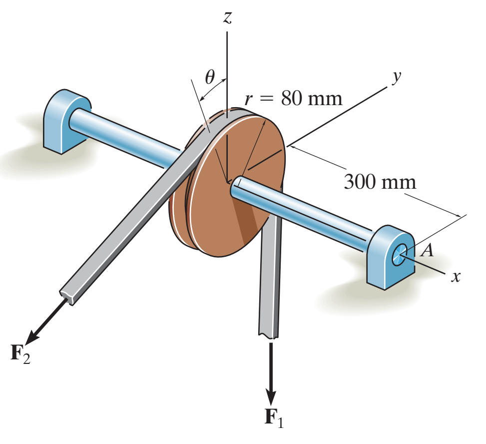
4–110. Replace the force of $F = 80$ N acting on the pipe assembly by an equivalent resultant force and couple moment at point A.



Prob. 4–110

4–111. The belt passing over the pulley is subjected to forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$, each having a magnitude of 40 N. $\mathbf{F}_1$ acts in the $-\mathbf{k}$ direction. Replace these forces by an equivalent force and couple moment at point A. Express the result in Cartesian vector form. Set $\theta = 0°$ so that $\mathbf{F}_2$ acts in the $-\mathbf{j}$ direction.

***4–112.** The belt passing over the pulley is subjected to two forces $\mathbf{F}_1$ and $\mathbf{F}_2$, each having a magnitude of 40 N. $\mathbf{F}_1$ acts in the $-\mathbf{k}$ direction. Replace these forces by an equivalent force and couple moment at point A. Express the result in Cartesian vector form. Take $\theta = 45°$.



Probs. 4–111/112

4.8 Further Simplification of a Force and Couple System

In the preceding section, we developed a way to reduce a force and couple moment system acting on a rigid body into an equivalent resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ acting at a specific point O and a resultant couple moment $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$. The force system can be further reduced to an equivalent single resultant force provided the lines of action of $\mathbf{F}_R$ and $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$ are *perpendicular* to each other. Because of this condition, concurrent, coplanar, and parallel force systems can be further simplified.

Concurrent Force System. Since a ***concurrent force system*** is one in which the lines of action of all the forces intersect at a common point O, Fig. 4–40*a*, then the force system produces no moment about this point. As a result, the equivalent system can be represented by a single resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R = \Sigma\mathbf{F}$ acting at O, Fig. 4–40*b*.

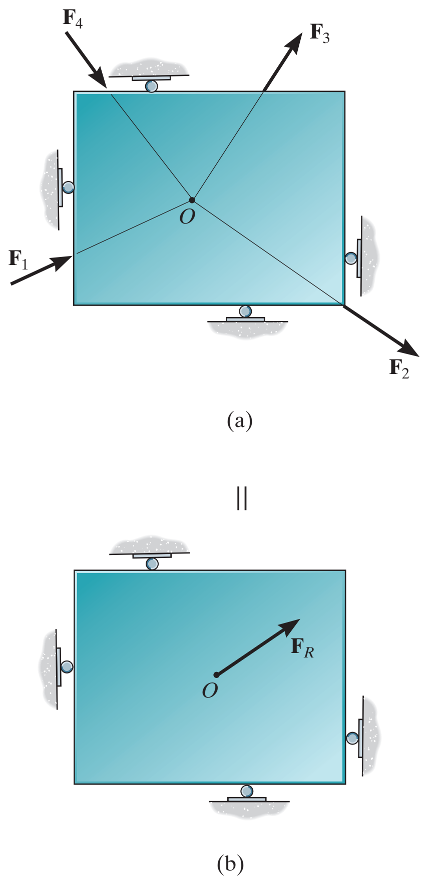


Fig. 4–40

Coplanar Force System. In the case of a ***coplanar force system***, the lines of action of all the forces lie in the same plane, Fig. 4–41*a*, and so the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R = \Sigma\mathbf{F}$ of this system also lies in this plane. Furthermore, the moment of each of the forces about any point O is directed perpendicular to this plane. Thus, the resultant moment $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$ and resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ will be *mutually perpendicular*, Fig. 4–41*b*. The resultant moment can be replaced by moving the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ a perpendicular or moment arm distance d away from point O such that $\mathbf{F}_R$ produces the *same moment* $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$ about point O, Fig. 4–41*c*. This distance d can be determined from the scalar equation $(M_R)_O = F_R d = \Sigma M_O$ or $d = (M_R)_O/F_R$.

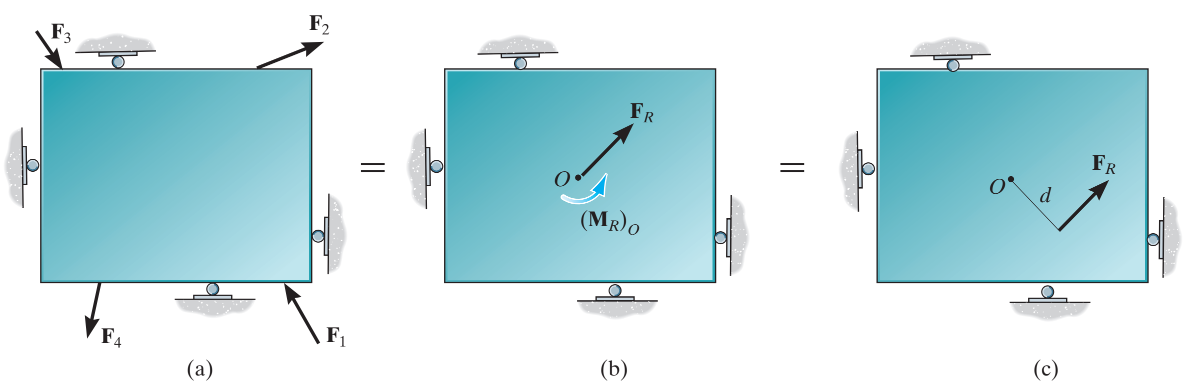


Fig. 4–41

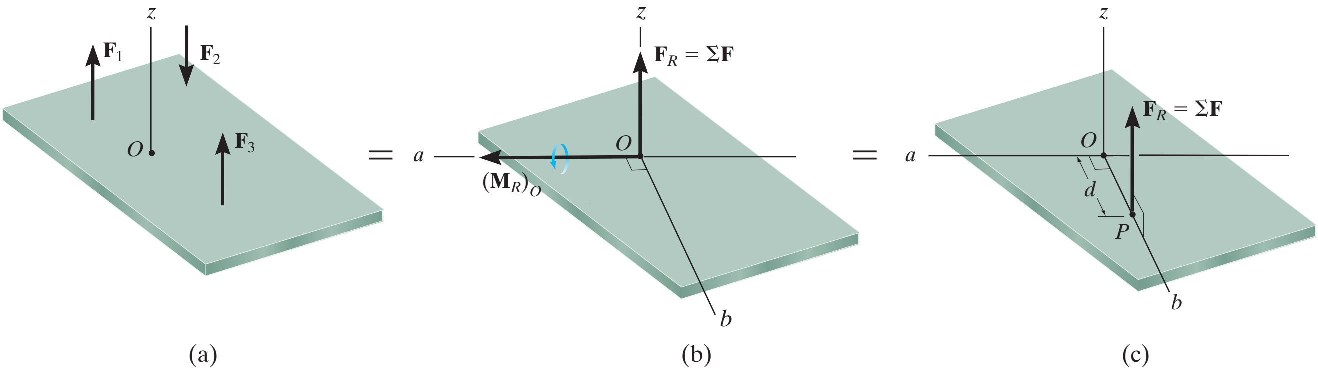
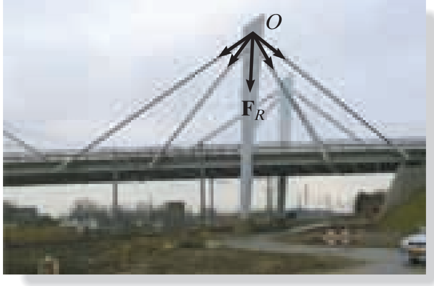


Fig. 4–42

Parallel Force System. The ***parallel force system*** shown in Fig. 4–42*a* consists of forces that are all parallel to the *z* axis. Thus, the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R = \Sigma\mathbf{F}$ at point O must also be parallel to this axis, Fig. 4–42*b*. The moment produced by each force lies in the plane of the plate, and so the resultant couple moment, $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$, will also lie in this plane, along the moment axis *a* since $\mathbf{F}_R$ and $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$ are mutually perpendicular. As a result, the force system can be further reduced to an equivalent single resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$, acting through point P located on the perpendicular *b* axis, Fig. 4–42*c*. The distance *d* along this axis from point O requires $(M_R)_O = F_R d = \Sigma M_O$ or $d = \Sigma M_O / F_R$.



The four cable forces are all concurrent at point O on this bridge tower. Consequently they produce no resultant moment there, only a resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$. Note that the designers have positioned the cables so that $\mathbf{F}_R$ is directed *along* the bridge tower directly to the support, so that it does not cause any bending of the tower. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

Procedure for Analysis

The technique used to reduce a coplanar or parallel force system to a single resultant force follows a similar procedure outlined in the previous section.

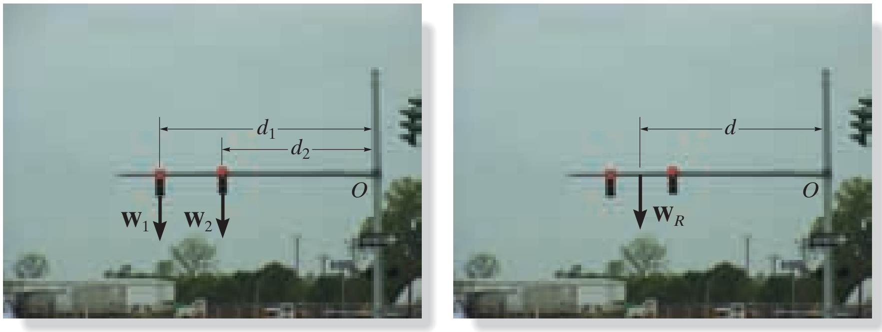
- Establish the x, y, z, axes and locate the resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ an arbitrary distance away from the origin of the coordinates.

Force Summation.

- The resultant force is equal to the sum of all the forces in the system.
- For a coplanar force system, resolve each force into its x and y components. Positive components are directed along the positive x and y axes, and negative components are directed along the negative x and y axes.

Moment Summation.

- The moment of the resultant force about point O is equal to the sum of all the couple moments in the system plus the moments of all the forces in the system about O.
- This moment condition is used to find the location of the resultant force from point O.



Here the weights of the traffic lights are replaced by their resultant force $W_R = W_1 + W_2$ which acts at a distance $d = (W_1 d_1 + W_2 d_2)/\,W_R$ from O. Both systems are equivalent. (© Russell C. Hibbeler)

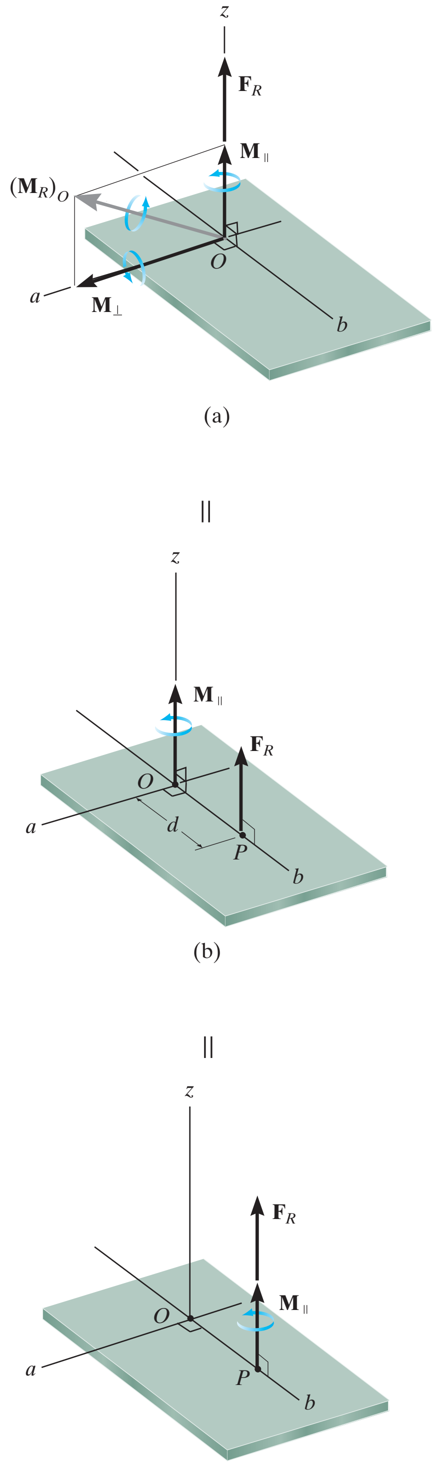


Fig. 4–43

Reduction to a Wrench. In general, a three-dimensional force and couple moment system will have an equivalent resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ acting at point O and a resultant couple moment $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$ that are *not perpendicular* to one another, as shown in Fig. 4–43*a*. Although a force system such as this cannot be further reduced to an equivalent single resultant force, the resultant couple moment $(\mathbf{M}_R)_O$ can be resolved into components parallel and perpendicular to the line of action of $\mathbf{F}_R$, Fig. 4–43*a*. If this appears difficult to do in three dimensions, use the dot product to get $\mathbf{M}_{\parallel} = (\mathbf{M}_R) \cdot \mathbf{u}_{F_R}$ and then $\mathbf{M}_{\perp} = \mathbf{M}_R - \mathbf{M}_{\parallel}$. The perpendicular component $\mathbf{M}_{\perp}$ can be replaced if we move $\mathbf{F}_R$ to point P, a distance d from point O along the b axis, Fig. 4–43*b*. As shown, this axis is perpendicular to both the a axis and the line of action of $\mathbf{F}_R$. The location of P can be determined from $d = M_{\perp}/F_R$. Finally, because $\mathbf{M}_{\parallel}$ is a free vector, it can be moved to point P, Fig. 4–43*c*. This combination of a resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ and collinear couple moment $\mathbf{M}_{\parallel}$ will tend to translate and rotate the body about its axis and is referred to as a ***wrench*** or ***screw***. A wrench is the simplest system that can represent any general force and couple moment system acting on a body.

Important Point

- A concurrent, coplanar, or parallel force system can always be reduced to a single resultant force acting at a specific point P. For any other type of force system, the simplest reduction is a wrench, which consists of resultant force and collinear couple moment acting at a specific point P.

EXAMPLE 4.17

Replace the force and couple moment system acting on the beam in Fig. 4–44*a* by an equivalent resultant force, and find where its line of action intersects the beam, measured from point *O*.

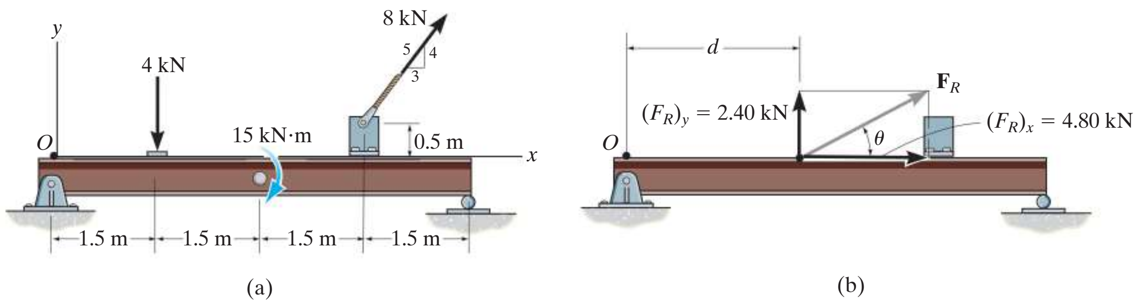


Fig. 4–44

SOLUTION

Force Summation. Summing the force components,

$$\overset{+}{\rightarrow}(F_R)_x = \Sigma F_x; \qquad (F_R)_x = 8\text{ kN}\left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right) = 4.80\text{ kN} \rightarrow$$

$$+\uparrow (F_R)_y = \Sigma F_y; \qquad (F_R)_y = -4\text{ kN} + 8\text{ kN}\left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right) = 2.40\text{ kN}\uparrow$$

From Fig. 4–44*b*, the magnitude of $\mathbf{F}_R$ is

$$F_R = \sqrt{(4.80\text{ kN})^2 + (2.40\text{ kN})^2} = 5.37\text{ kN} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

The angle θ is

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{2.40\text{ kN}}{4.80\text{ kN}}\right) = 26.6^\circ \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Moment Summation. We must equate the moment of $\mathbf{F}_R$ about point *O* in Fig. 4–44*b* to the sum of the moments of the force and couple moment system about point *O* in Fig. 4–44*a*. Since the line of action of $(\mathbf{F}_R)_x$ acts through point *O*, *only* $(\mathbf{F}_R)_y$ *produces a moment* about this point. Thus,

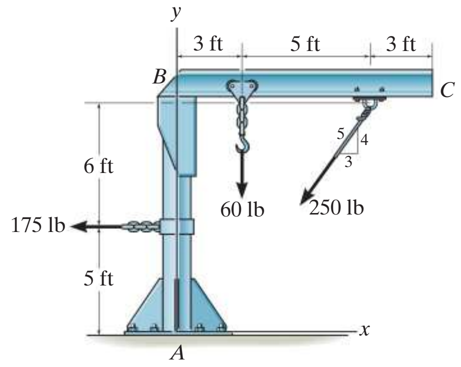
$$\circlearrowleft + (M_R)_O = \Sigma M_O; \qquad 2.40\text{ kN}(d) = -(4\text{ kN})(1.5\text{ m}) - 15\text{ kN}\cdot\text{m}$$

$$-\left[8\text{ kN}\left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right)\right](0.5\text{ m}) + \left[8\text{ kN}\left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right)\right](4.5\text{ m})$$

$$d = 2.25\text{ m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

EXAMPLE 4.18

The jib crane shown in Fig. 4–45*a* is subjected to three coplanar forces. Replace this loading by an equivalent resultant force and specify where the resultant's line of action intersects the column *AB* and boom *BC*.



(a)

SOLUTION

Force Summation. Resolving the 250-lb force into x and y components and summing the force components yields

$$\overset{+}{\rightarrow}(F_R)_x = \Sigma F_x; \quad (F_R)_x = -250\text{ lb}\left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right) - 175\text{ lb} = -325\text{ lb} = 325\text{ lb} \leftarrow$$

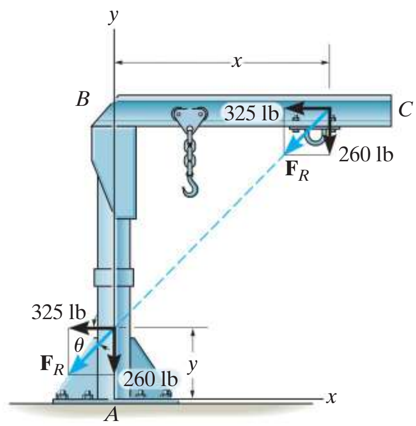
$$+\uparrow(F_R)_y = \Sigma F_y; \quad (F_R)_y = -250\text{ lb}\left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right) - 60\text{ lb} = -260\text{ lb} = 260\text{ lb}\downarrow$$

As shown by the vector addition in Fig. 4–45*b*,

$$F_R = \sqrt{(325\text{ lb})^2 + (260\text{ lb})^2} = 416\text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{260\text{ lb}}{325\text{ lb}}\right) = 38.7° \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Moment Summation. Moments will be summed about point A. Assuming the line of action of $\mathbf{F}_R$ *intersects AB* at a distance y from A, Fig. 4–45*b*, we have



(b)

Fig. 4–45

$$\circlearrowleft + (M_R)_A = \Sigma M_A; \qquad 325\text{ lb }(y) + 260\text{ lb }(0)$$

$$= 175\text{ lb }(5\text{ ft}) - 60\text{ lb }(3\text{ ft}) + 250\text{ lb}\left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right)(11\text{ ft}) - 250\text{ lb}\left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right)(8\text{ ft})$$

$$y = 2.29\text{ ft} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

By the principle of transmissibility, $\mathbf{F}_R$ can be placed at a distance x where it intersects *BC*, Fig. 4–45*b*. In this case we have

$$\circlearrowleft + (M_R)_A = \Sigma M_A; \qquad 325\text{ lb }(11\text{ ft}) - 260\text{ lb }(x)$$

$$= 175\text{ lb }(5\text{ ft}) - 60\text{ lb }(3\text{ ft}) + 250\text{ lb}\left(\tfrac{3}{5}\right)(11\text{ ft}) - 250\text{ lb}\left(\tfrac{4}{5}\right)(8\text{ ft})$$

$$x = 10.9\text{ ft} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

EXAMPLE 4.19

The slab in Fig. 4–46*a* is subjected to four parallel forces. Determine the magnitude and direction of a resultant force equivalent to the given force system, and locate its point of application on the slab.

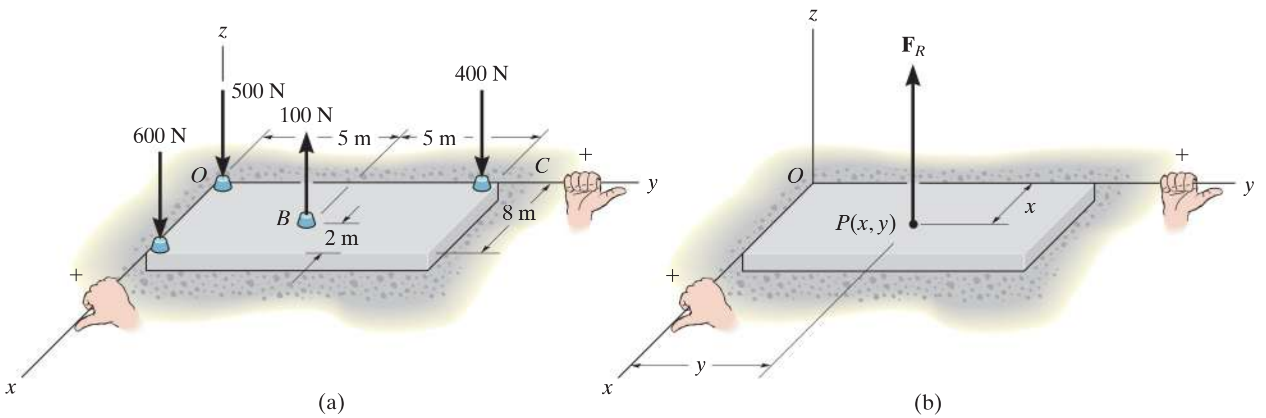


Fig. 4–46

SOLUTION *(SCALAR ANALYSIS)*

Force Summation. From Fig. 4–46*a*, the resultant force is

$$+\uparrow F_R = \Sigma F; \qquad F_R = -600\text{ N} + 100\text{ N} - 400\text{ N} - 500\text{ N}$$
$$= -1400\text{ N} = 1400\text{ N}\downarrow \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Moment Summation. We require the moment about the x axis of the resultant force, Fig. 4–46*b*, to be equal to the sum of the moments about the x axis of all the forces in the system, Fig. 4–46*a*. The moment arms are determined from the y coordinates, since these coordinates represent the *perpendicular distances* from the x axis to the lines of action of the forces. Using the right-hand rule, we have

$$(M_R)_x = \Sigma M_x;$$
$$-(1400\text{ N})y = 600\text{ N}(0) + 100\text{ N}(5\text{ m}) - 400\text{ N}(10\text{ m}) + 500\text{ N}(0)$$
$$-1400y = -3500 \qquad y = 2.50\text{ m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

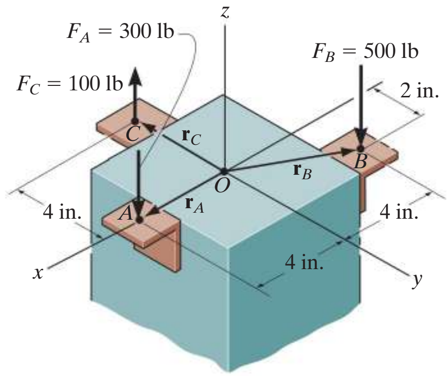
In a similar manner, a moment equation can be written about the y axis using moment arms defined by the x coordinates of each force.

$$(M_R)_y = \Sigma M_y;$$
$$(1400\text{ N})x = 600\text{ N}(8\text{ m}) - 100\text{ N}(6\text{ m}) + 400\text{ N}(0) + 500\text{ N}(0)$$
$$1400x = 4200$$
$$x = 3\text{ m} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

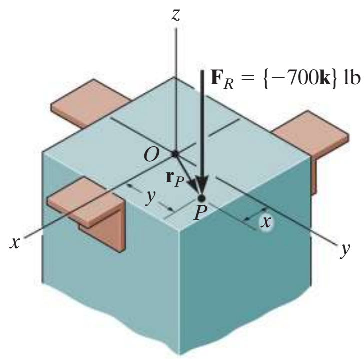
NOTE: A force of $F_R = 1400$ N placed at point $P(3.00\text{ m}, 2.50\text{ m})$ on the slab, Fig. 4–46*b*, is therefore equivalent to the parallel force system acting on the slab in Fig. 4–46*a*.

EXAMPLE 4.12

Replace the force system in Fig. 4–47*a* by an equivalent resultant force and specify its point of application on the pedestal.



(a)



(b)

Fig. 4–47

SOLUTION

Force Summation. Here we will demonstrate a vector analysis. Summing forces,

$$\mathbf{F}_R = \Sigma\mathbf{F};\ \mathbf{F}_R = \mathbf{F}_A + \mathbf{F}_B + \mathbf{F}_C$$
$$= \{-300\mathbf{k}\}\text{ lb} + \{-500\mathbf{k}\}\text{ lb} + \{100\mathbf{k}\}\text{ lb}$$
$$= \{-700\mathbf{k}\}\text{ lb} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

Location. Moments will be summed about point O. The resultant force $\mathbf{F}_R$ is assumed to act through point P $(x, y, 0)$, Fig. 4–47*b*. Thus

$$(\mathbf{M}_R)_O = \Sigma\mathbf{M}_O;$$
$$\mathbf{r}_P \times \mathbf{F}_R = (\mathbf{r}_A \times \mathbf{F}_A) + (\mathbf{r}_B \times \mathbf{F}_B) + (\mathbf{r}_C \times \mathbf{F}_C)$$
$$(x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j}) \times (-700\mathbf{k}) = [(4\mathbf{i}) \times (-300\mathbf{k})]$$
$$+ [(-4\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}) \times (-500\mathbf{k})] + [(-4\mathbf{j}) \times (100\mathbf{k})]$$
$$-700x(\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k}) - 700y(\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k}) = -1200(\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k}) + 2000(\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k})$$
$$- 1000(\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k}) - 400(\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k})$$
$$700x\mathbf{j} - 700y\mathbf{i} = 1200\mathbf{j} - 2000\mathbf{j} - 1000\mathbf{i} - 400\mathbf{i}$$

Equating the **i** and **j** components,

$$-700y = -1400 \qquad (1)$$
$$y = 2\text{ in.} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$
$$700x = -800 \qquad (2)$$
$$x = -1.14\text{ in.} \qquad \textit{Ans.}$$

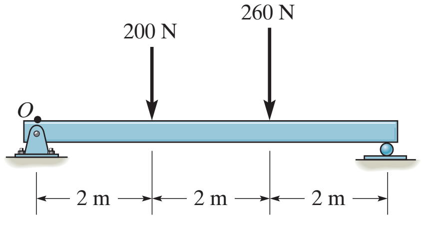
The negative sign indicates that the x coordinate of point P is negative.

NOTE: It is also possible to establish Eq. 1 and 2 directly by summing moments about the x and y axes. Using the right-hand rule, we have

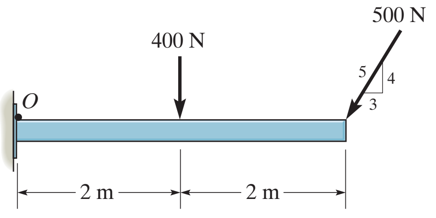
$$(M_R)_x = \Sigma M_x; \qquad -700y = -100\text{ lb}(4\text{ in.}) - 500\text{ lb}(2\text{ in.})$$
$$(M_R)_y = \Sigma M_y; \qquad 700x = 300\text{ lb}(4\text{ in.}) - 500\text{ lb}(4\text{ in.})$$

PRELIMINARY PROBLEMS

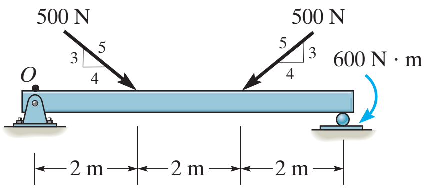
P4–6. In each case, determine the x and y components of the resultant force and specify the distance where this force acts from point O.



(a)



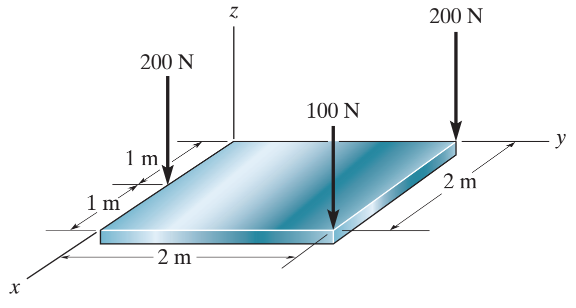
(b)



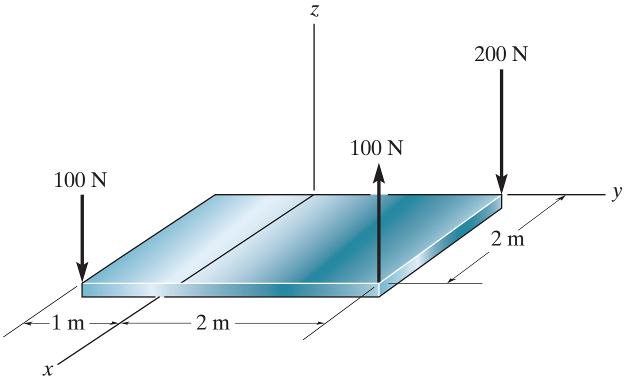
(c)

Prob. P4–6

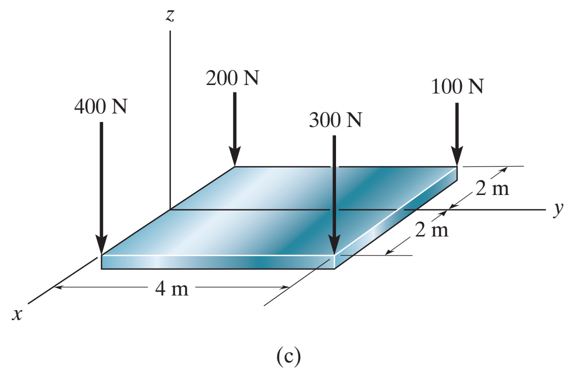
P4–7. In each case, determine the resultant force and specify its coordinates x and y where it acts on the x–y plane.



(a)



(b)



(c)

Prob. P4–7